

470.045

Hay

2nd ed.

110063

अवाप्ति सं०

ACC. No. ~~19291~~

वर्ग सं.

पुस्तक सं.

Class No. Book No.

लेखक

Author.... Hayes... B... J... ..

शीर्षक

Title.... Junior.. Lat.in.. course,....

470.045

~~19291~~

Hay

2nd ed.

LIBRARY

LAL BAHADUR SHASTRI

National Academy of Administration

MUSSOORIE

Accession No.

110063

1. Books are issued for 15 days only but may have to be recalled earlier if urgently required.
2. An over-due charge of 25 Paise per day per volume will be charged.
3. Books may be renewed on request, at the discretion of the Librarian.
4. Periodicals, Rare and Reference books may not be issued and may be consulted only in the Library.
5. Books lost, defaced or injured in any way shall have to be replaced or its double price shall be paid by the borrower.

Help to keep this book fresh, clean & moving

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

For Junior Forms in Schools.

- A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. *Third Edition*. 2s. 6d.
- A JUNIOR COURSE OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By E. W. EDMUNDS, M.A., B.Sc. *Second Edition*. 2s. 6d.
- A FIRST ENGLISH COURSE (formerly entitled *Preliminary English Course*). By A. M. WALMSLEY, M.A. *Second Edition*. 2s. 6d.
- JUNIOR GEOGRAPHY. By G. C. FRY, M.Sc. *Fifth Edition*. 4s.
- JUNIOR ARITHMETIC. By R. H. CHOPE, B.A. *Fifth Edition*. 4s. With Answers. 4s. 6d.
- JUNIOR ALGEBRA. By A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P., and AUGUSTUS BARRACLOUGH, M.A. 3s. 6d. With Answers. 4s.
- JUNIOR GEOMETRY. By A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR LATIN COURSE. By B. J. HAVES, M.A. *Second Edition*. 4s.
- NEW JUNIOR LATIN READER. By A. J. TATE, M.A. 3s. 6d.
- NEW JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By G. A. ROBERTS, M.A. 4s.
- JUNIOR FRENCH COURSE. By Professor ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A., and M. A. LEBONNOIS, B.-ès-L. *Third Edition*. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR FRENCH READER. By Professor ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. *Second Edition*. 2s.
- JUNIOR MECHANICS. By F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. 4s.
- JUNIOR EXPERIMENTAL SCIENCE. By W. M. HOOTON, M.A., M.Sc., F.I.C. *Second Edition*. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR HEAT. By Professor JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc., M.A. *Second Edition*. 2s. 6d.
- JUNIOR SOUND AND LIGHT. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc., and Professor JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc. M.A. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. By R. H. JUDE, D.Sc., M.A., and Professor JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc., M.A. *Second Edition*. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR CHEMISTRY. By R. H. ADIE, M.A., B.Sc. *Third Edition*, Revised by J. E. T. GILBERT, B.Sc., A.I.C. 3s. 6d.
- JUNIOR BOTANY. By FRANCIS CAVERS, D.Sc. 3s. 6d.

LONDON : W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE

BY

B. J. HAYES, M.A. CAMB. AND LOND.

LATE SCHOLAR OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, GOLD MEDALLIST IN CLASSICS
AUTHOR OF "THE TUTORIAL LATIN GRAMMAR"

Second Edition (Fourteenth Impression)



LONDON : W. B. CLIVE

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

HIGH ST., NEW OXFORD ST., W.C.

1931

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL PRESS LD. AT THE
BURLINGTON PRESS, FOXTON, NEAR CAMBRIDGE.

PREFACE.

A GLANCE at the table of contents will make the plan of this book clear : it follows the traditional order of the parts of speech, except that for the sake of the Exercises considerable portions of the conjugations of *sum* and of *amo* (active and passive) are introduced at an early stage ; moreover provision has been made for the postponement of some of the lessons on the comparison of adjectives and on pronouns.

The rules relating to dependent statements, ablative absolute, and various uses of the subjunctive have been given at greater length and with fuller explanation than is customary in books intended for beginners, for it is now generally acknowledged that the chief, if not the only, benefit which the majority of such learners can derive from the study of Latin is a training in the accurate use of language, and for this purpose syntactical rules are of much greater value than irregularities of accidence and of genders, which for only too many of us are our only recollection of the Latin we learnt at school.

It is assumed that those who use this book will already know the meaning of common grammatical terms such as *subject*, *object*, *active*, *passive*, *indicative*, and that it would be a waste of space to insert definitions of them ; but terms peculiar to Latin grammar are duly explained. In the vocabularies English derivatives are given where possible

as a help to the memory, but it must be understood that the words so given are not in all cases derived *directly* from the Latin words opposite which they stand.

By the time the learner has reached Lesson 72, or even earlier, he should take up some Latin construing beyond that provided in the Exercises: for this purpose the *New Junior Latin Reader*, in this series, may be used.

The Exercises and Vocabularies were written by Miss F. L. D. Richardson (Mrs. A. J. Herbertson), B.A. Lond., who also rendered assistance with other parts of the book. For a careful revision of the proof sheets thanks are due to Mr. T. R. Mills, M.A., Wadham College, Oxford, late Lecturer in Greek at Aberdeen University, and to Mr. J. V. Thompson, M.A., also of Wadham College, Oxford.

In the second edition printers' and other errors have been corrected, but the differences between the two editions are not sufficient to make their use together in class inconvenient.

CONTENTS.

The Lessons may be taken in the following order : 1-24, 26, 30, 31 36-64, 32-35, 65-67, 27-29, 68-73, 75, 76, 25, 77-80, 74. The Appendix should be learnt with the Lessons in the second half of the Course.

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY	I
1-3. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION, ACTIVE VOICE ..	4
4, 5. SUBSTANTIVES : FIRST DECLENSION	7
6. PART OF THE CONJUGATION OF <i>SUM</i>	11
7-9. SUBSTANTIVES : SECOND DECLENSION	12
10, 11. ADJECTIVES : FIRST CLASS	16
12, 13. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PASSIVE VOICE ..	20
14-19. SUBSTANTIVES : THIRD DECLENSION	23
15. "Place Where" (Town-names, etc.)	24
20-22. ADJECTIVES : SECOND CLASS	33
22. Ablative of the standard of comparison	37
23. SUBSTANTIVES : FOURTH DECLENSION	38
24. SUBSTANTIVES : FIFTH DECLENSION	40
25. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES	41
26-29. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	43
30. PERSONAL PRONOUNS	49
31. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	51
32-35. PRONOUNS : DEMONSTRATIVE, RELATIVE, INTERRO- GATIVE, AND INDEFINITE	52
36. THE CONJUGATION OF <i>SUM</i>	59, 62
36. Wishes, Exhortations, and Commands	59
37-64. THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND <i>CAPIO</i> , ACTIVE VOICE	60
37. Questions	86
38, 39. Dependent Questions	87
40. The Infinitive, and Dependent Statements ..	91
41. The Gerund	95

LESSON		PAGE
42.	Active Participles	96
43-46.	Conditional Sentences	97
47.	<i>Se, suus.</i> Expressions of "Hoping"	102
48-51.	"Place Whither," "Place Whence," and "Place Where"	104
50.	Final Clauses	106
52.	Consecutive Clauses	108
54-64.	THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND <i>CAPIO</i> , PAS- SIVE VOICE	110
54.	Double Questions	110
55.	Dependent Double Questions	111
56.	The Ablative Absolute	112
57.	The Gerundive	114
58, 59.	Temporal Clauses	116
60, 61.	Causal Clauses	119
62, 63.	Concessive Clauses	121
64.	Expressions of "Fearing"	123
65-67.	DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS	124
68, 69.	<i>POSSUM</i> AND OTHER COMPOUNDS OF <i>SUM</i>	129
69-71.	Temporal Clauses— <i>continued</i>	131
70-72.	<i>VOLO, NOLO, MALO, FERO, EO, FIO, DO</i>	132
73, 74.	IMPERSONAL AND DEFECTIVE VERBS	140
75.	ADVERBS	144
76.	COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	149
77.	NUMERALS	151
78-80.	PREPOSITIONS	155
80.	CONJUNCTIONS	158
	HINTS ON TRANSLATING	160
	EXERCISES	161
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	206
	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	225
	APPENDIX	
	Some Irregular Substantives	244
	Alternative Forms of Verbs	245
	Compound Verbs	246
	Principal Parts of Verbs	246
	Irregularities of Verbs.. .. .	260
	INDEX	261

JUNIOR LATIN COURSE.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.

1. **Classical Latin**, *i.e.* Latin of the best period, is the language of Roman literature during the century preceding the death of the Emperor Augustus (A.D. 14). This book deals only with classical Latin.

2. The **Latin alphabet** is the same as that now in use for writing English, except that it has no **J** and no **W**.

3. Vowels are said to be of **long** or **short quantity**, according to the time occupied by their pronunciation. Thus in the English word *fumigated* *u* and *a* are of long quantity, *i* and *e* of short quantity.

The sign (-) denotes that the quantity of the vowel over which it is placed is long, the sign (^) denotes that the quantity of the vowel is short.

Obs. These marks are not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin. In this book long vowels not followed by two consonants are marked as long ; see § 5, Note 3.

4. Latin words of two syllables are **accentuated** on the first syllable (*e.g.* **pa'ter**, *father* ; **mā'ter**, *mother*), *i.e.* the first syllable is pronounced with more stress than the second, though the stress is not so marked as in the English words *fáther*, *móther*.

Latin words of more than two syllables are accentuated on the last syllable but one if that syllable is long, *e.g.* **sorō'res**, *sisters* ; but otherwise on the last syllable but two, *e.g.* **do'minus**, *lord* ; **fami'lia**, *household*.

A syllable is long if (1) it contains a long vowel or diphthong, or (2) if its vowel is followed by **x** or **z** or by two consonants.

NOTE.—If of two consonants the first is *b, c, d, f, g, p, or t*, and the second *l or r*, the syllable preceding may be long or short, provided that its vowel is short. For the purpose of accentuation such syllables are usually regarded as short, *e.g. im'petrō*.

Obs. The mark of accentuation is not used in the ordinary writing or printing of Latin.

5. How the Romans pronounced Latin in the Classical Period has been ascertained with fair certainty, and learners are expected to follow the main rules laid down by modern scholars, which are roughly as follows.

CONSONANTS :—

- c*, always as in *can*, not as in *city*.
- g*, always as in *go*, not as in *general*.
- i* (in some books printed *j*), as *y* in *ye*.
- r*, always rolled, as *rr* in *furrier*.
- s*, always unvoiced, as in *hiss* (not voiced as in *his*).
- v* (in some books printed *u*), as *w* in *we*.
- x*, always as *cs*, not *gs*.

COMBINATIONS :—

- bs*, as *ps* ; *e.g. trabs*, beam, is pronounced *traps*.
- gu* (before a vowel), as *gu* in *language*.
- qu*, as *qu* in *queen*. *su*, as *sw* in *sweet*.

The other consonants have their normal English value ; *t* is never to be pronounced *sh* as in *diction*.

§ 8. VOWELS :—

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>ā</i> , as second <i>a</i> in <i>papa</i> . | <i>a</i> , as first <i>a</i> in <i>papa</i> . |
| <i>ē</i> , as <i>e</i> in <i>prey</i> (Fr. <i>é</i> in <i>blé</i>),
not <i>eⁱ</i> . | <i>e</i> , as <i>e</i> in <i>set</i> . |
| <i>ī</i> , as <i>i</i> in the second syllable
of <i>quinine</i> , <i>machine</i> . | <i>i</i> , as first <i>i</i> in <i>quinine</i> . |
| <i>ō</i> , as second <i>o</i> in <i>follow</i> , not <i>o^u</i> . | <i>o</i> , as first <i>o</i> in <i>follow</i> . |
| <i>ū</i> , as <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> . | <i>u</i> , as <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> . |
| <i>y</i> , like Latin <i>i</i> uttered with
rounded lips, or like <i>u</i> in
French <i>pure</i> . | <i>y</i> , like Latin <i>i</i> uttered with
rounded lips, or like <i>u</i> in
French <i>pu</i> . |

Obs. The sounds indicated above by *eⁱ* and *o^u* are those heard, especially in Southern English, in such words as *way*, *so*. The Latin vowel is a single sound, not diphthongal.

DIPHTHONGS :—

- ae*, nearly as *ai* in *Isaiah* (broadly pronounced).
- au*, as *ou* in *house*. *eu*, as *eu* in *feud*.
- ei*, as *ei* in *eight*. *ui*, as French *oui*.
- oe*, as *oi* in *boil*.

NOTE 1.—The true pronunciation of the diphthongs is best ascertained by pronouncing the vowels of which they are composed quickly one after the other; the sounds indicated above are only approximations.

NOTE 2.—The symbol *i* serves both as a consonant and as a vowel. When *i* is followed by a consonant it must be a vowel; so also when it is long in quantity. Whether a short *i* followed by a vowel is a vowel or a consonant will not greatly concern the beginner, as the difference in pronunciation is but slight. Final *i* is always a vowel.

NOTE 3.—The quantity of a vowel followed by *x* or *z* or by two consonants cannot always be ascertained; such vowels are commonly pronounced as if they were short and are left unmarked in this book. The same applies to vowels before final *m*, *e.g.* in *portam*.

Obs.—Distinguish carefully between the length of a vowel and the length of the syllable which the vowel helps to form; *e.g.* *trabs* has a short vowel, but as the vowel is followed by two consonants the syllable is long. The pronunciation of a vowel depends, of course, on the length of that vowel, not on the length of the syllable.

PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.

1. Repeat several times the vowels *ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, ŷ*, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2, and continuing the enunciation for about a second.

2. Repeat several times the vowels *a, e, i, o, u, y*, giving each the sound indicated on p. 2 and making no effort to prolong the enunciation.

Pronounce carefully, referring frequently to the tables on p. 2 and to Notes 1-3 above:—

3. *ibat, ibit, ibō, ibant, ab, sub, ob.*
4. *āc, cum, coēunt, cicūta, biceps, ecce, cieō, Cynicus.*
5. *dum, ad, id, idem, idem, dabō, dō.*
6. *fēlix, fēlicem, fulciō, folium, efficiō.*
7. *gignō, genū, gula, gustō, age, gestāmen, gymnīcus.*
8. *iam, iaciō, iēcistī, iocī, iambī, iūdex.*
9. *palam, pāgi, pedem, appōnō, supplex, Pygmalion.*
10. *quā, quī, quō, equus, colloquium, inquam.*
11. *rē, arō, currit, ācer, parum, pāret, parra, iēcēre.*
12. *sī, sīs, iūs, essēs, ursās, rēs, fers, tyrannus, Byrsa.*
13. *tē, ratiō, attamen, adiēcit, ambitiō, satis, Tyrus.*
14. *iuvenis, vātis, vēr, vir, virēs, vōcēs, avē.*
15. *xystus, lex, Xerxēs, neglexī, vervex.*
16. *zōna, Zēnō, Zama, mazonōmus, gaza.*
17. *aes, aera, āera, aequus, portae, aēneus, vae, faex.*
18. *plaustrum, faucēs, adelphoe, suāvius, Oeneus, Oedipūs.*
19. *abs, urbs, chalybs, āchō, Sapphō, philosophus, Hyacintha, Tēthys, Corinthus, Euphrātēs, Thūcŷdidēs.*
20. *distinguō, assuēfacere, cui, persuāsi, pinguis.*

6. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(ACTIVE VOICE).

Nearly all Latin verbs belong to one of the four "conjugations," i.e. they are conjugated like one or other of the four model verbs shown on pp. 64-79.

The part of the first conjugation printed on this page is to be learnt with Lessons 1-3, according to the directions there given.

MODEL : **amō**, *I love, I like.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō ,	<i>I love or am loving</i>	am-āmus ,	<i>we love or are loving</i>
am-ās ,	<i>thou lovest or art loving</i>	am-ātis ,	<i>ye love or are loving</i>
am-at ,	<i>he loves or is loving</i>	am-ant ,	<i>they love or are loving</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam ,	<i>I was loving</i>	am-ābāmus ,	<i>we were loving</i>
am-ābās ,	<i>thou wast loving</i>	am-ābātis ,	<i>ye were loving</i>
am-ābat ,	<i>he was loving</i>	am-ābant ,	<i>they were loving</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābō ,	<i>I shall love</i>	am-ābimus ,	<i>we shall love</i>
am-ābis ,	<i>thou wilt love</i>	am-ābitis ,	<i>ye will love</i>
am-ābit ,	<i>he will love</i>	am-ābunt ,	<i>they will love</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

am-āv-i ,	<i>I loved or have loved</i>	am-āv-imus ,	<i>we loved or have loved</i>
am-āv-istī ,	<i>thou lovedst or hast loved</i>	am-āv-istis ,	<i>ye loved or have loved</i>
am-āv-it ,	<i>he loved or has loved</i>	am-āv-ērunt } <i>they loved or have loved</i>	am-āv-ēre , }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā ,	<i>love (thou)</i>	am-āte ,	<i>love (ye)</i>
---------------	--------------------	-----------------	------------------

LESSON 1.

Learn the **present** indicative active of **amō** (p. 4).

7. It will be seen that, just as an English verb has different terminations for the different persons in the singular (*love, lovest, loves or loveth*), so a Latin verb varies (**amō, amās, amat**) ; but in Latin there are different terminations also for each person in the plural.

In Latin, however, these terminations are not merely characteristic of the several persons, but their use renders unnecessary that of the personal pronouns ; e.g. **amās** stands not merely for *lovest*, but for *thou lovest*. Hence a Latin verb can by itself form a complete sentence.

8. After learning the present indicative active of **amō**, learn the verbs in Vocabulary I (below) and conjugate the present indicative active of each. In order to do this :— cut off from each verb given in the Vocabulary its final **-ō** ; the *base* then remains. To the base add the several terminations **-ās, -at**, etc. Thus, the base of **cantō** is **cant-** ; the second person singular is therefore **cant-ās**, the third person singular **cant-at**, and so on.

9. In doing the Exercises (pp. 161-205) it is best to use *you* in translating the Latin second person singular and plural into English ; e.g. **amās** or **amātis**, *you love* or *you like*. In the English sentences *you* is to be rendered by the Latin second person *singular*, unless there is any reason to suppose that more persons than one are addressed ; then, and then only, the Latin second person plural is to be used.

VOCABULARY I.

ambul-ō (amble), *I walk*.

cant-ō (chant), *I sing*.

clām-ō (clamour), *I shout*.

curs-ō (course), *I run to and fro*.

err-ō (err), *I go astray, I am mistaken*.

salt-ō (somer-sault), *I dance*.

voc-ō (vocal), *I call*.

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 2.

Learn the **imperfect** and **future** indicative active of **amō** (p. 4).

10. In English two tenses only, viz., the present simple and the past simple, consist of a single word, in which the verb exhibits various changes; e.g. *love—loved, come—came*. In Latin many tenses are so formed, and among these are the imperfect and future, both of which tenses are in English made up by the help of auxiliary verbs.

11. Learn Vocabulary 2 (below), and conjugate in the imperfect and future each of the verbs there given. To do this, cut off the final **-ō** and add the terminations **-abam, -ābās**, etc., for the imperfect, and **-ābō, -ābis**, etc., for the future.

VOCABULARY 2.

ar-ō (arable), *I plough.*

festin-ō, *I hasten.*

imper-ō (imperative), *I command.*

labōr-ō (labour), *I labour, take pains.*

pecc-ō, *I sin.*

vigil-ō (vigil), *I watch.*

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 3.

Learn the **perfect indicative** active and the **present imperative** active of **amō** (p. 4).

NOTE.—In the perfect indicative the third person plural termination **-ēre** is chiefly used in poetry.

12. In the table of the imperative the pronouns *thou* and *ye* are added to distinguish singular from plural; no pronouns need, however, be used in translating a Latin imperative, so that in this mood a single English word may form a complete sentence.

Learn Vocabulary 3 (p. 7), and conjugate in the perfect indicative and present imperative each of the verbs there given, cutting off the final **-ō** and adding the terminations **-āv-ī, -āv-istī**, etc.

VOCABULARY 3.

dubit-ō (dubitative), <i>I doubt, I hesitate.</i>	pugn-ō (pugnacious), <i>I fight.</i>
laud-ō (laud), <i>I praise.</i>	super-ō (insuperable), <i>I overcome.</i>
	vulner-ō (vulnerable), <i>I wound.</i>

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation

LESSON 4.

13. FIRST (OR A*) DECLENSION.

MODEL : **porta**, (f.), *gate*. Base, **port-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative.	port-a , <i>a gate.</i>	port-ae , <i>gates.</i>
Vocative.	port-a , <i>gate !</i>	port-ae , <i>gates !</i>
Accusative.	port-am , <i>a gate.</i>	port-ās , <i>gates.</i>
✓ Genitive.	port-ae , <i>of a gate.</i>	port-ārum , <i>of gates.</i>
Dative.	port-ae , <i>to a gate.</i>	port-is , <i>to gates.</i>
Ablative.	port-ā , <i>in, with, or from a gate.</i>	port-is , <i>in, with, or from gates.</i>

Obs.—*A* and *the* are not, as a rule, expressed in Latin. Thus **porta** means *gate*, or *a gate*, or *the gate*.

CAUTION.—“*To*” in the translation of the dative **portae** does not imply motion (see § 22). A preposition denoting *in*, *with*, or *from*, is often required with the ablative.

Learn the nominative, vocative, accusative, and genitive cases of **porta**, singular and plural.

* The declensions are also known according to the characteristic vowel of the genitive plural, as follows :—

	Gen. Sing. Ending.	Gen. Pl. Ending.	Characteristic.
First Declension	ae	ārum	A
Second „	i	ōrum	O
Third „	is	ium or um	I or Consonant
Fourth „	ūs	uum	U
Fifth „	ēi or ei	ērūm	E

14. Latin substantives are of **three genders**—masculine, feminine, and neuter. As in English, substantives denoting persons of the male sex are masculine, and those denoting persons of the female sex are feminine; but other substantives, instead of being all neuter, are in Latin some masculine, some feminine, some neuter.

Substantives of the first declension are feminine, unless they denote male persons.

(In this book, m. = masculine, f. = feminine, c. = common, *i.e.* either masculine or feminine, n. = neuter.)

15. The two **numbers**, singular and plural, are distinguished in Latin, as in English, by terminations; *e.g.* **port-a**, *gate*, **port-ae**, *gates*.

16. **Cases** are more numerous in Latin than in English, where the objective (which corresponds to the Latin accusative) does not differ in form from the nominative, except in some pronouns, *e.g.* *who* (nominative), *who-m* (objective), *who-se* (possessive).

17. **RULE.**—The **nominative**, as in English, expresses the **subject** of the sentence, and the verb must be of the same number and person as its subject.

puella cantat	<i>the girl sings</i>
puellae cantant	<i>the girls sing</i>

Obs.—This rule is known as the “first concord.”

18. **RULE.**—The **vocative** denotes the person addressed.

cantā, puella	<i>sing. girl</i>
cantāte, puellae	<i>sing. girls</i>

19. **RULE.**—The **accusative**, like the objective case in English, denotes the direct object of a transitive verb.

rēgina puellam amat	<i>the queen loves the girl</i>
rēgina puellās amat	<i>the queen likes girls</i>

NOTE.—In Latin the verb usually stands at the end of the clause.

20. RULE.—The **genitive** case answers to the English possessive case and also expresses nearly all the other meanings of the preposition *of*.

rēginae filia	<i>the queen's daughter or the daughter of the queen</i>
rēgina insulae	<i>the queen of the island</i>
turba nautārum	<i>a crowd of sailors</i>

NOTE.—In Latin, a genitive sometimes precedes, but more often follows, the substantive on which it depends.

21. Learn Vocabulary 4 (below), and form the nominative, accusative, and genitive (singular and plural) of six of the substantives there given. In order to do this :—cut off from each substantive in the Vocabulary its final **-a** ; the base then remains. To the base add the several terminations **-am**, **-ae**, **-ās**, **-arum**, as shewn in the table. Thus, the base of **filia** is **fili-** ; the accusative singular is therefore **fili-am**, the genitive singular **fili-ae**, etc.

Obs.—In this declension the vocative has the same form as the nominative.

VOCABULARY 4.

audāci-a , -ae, f. (audacity), <i>boldness.</i>	pugn-a , ae, f. (pugnacious), <i>battle.</i>
fēmin-a , -ae, f. (feminine), <i>woman.</i>	rēgin-a , -ae, f., <i>queen.</i>
fili-a , -ae, f. (filial), <i>daughter.</i>	ros-a , -ae, f., <i>rose.</i>
naut-a , -ae, m. (nautical), <i>sailor.</i>	sapienti-a , -ae, f. (sapient), <i>wis- dom.</i>
poēt-a , -ae, m., <i>poet.</i>	silv-a , -ae, f. (silvan), <i>wood.</i>
procell-a , -ae, f., <i>storm.</i>	turb-a , -ae, f. (turbulent), <i>crowd.</i>
puell-a , -ae, f., <i>girl.</i>	

Obs.—After each substantive in these vocabularies the termination of the genitive singular is given, in order to show to which of the five declensions the substantive belongs.

LESSON 5.

Learn the whole of the declension of **porta** (p. 7).

22. RULE.—The **dative** is used with verbs of *showing, telling, and giving* to express the **indirect object**, *i.e.* the person or thing to *whom* something is shown, told, or given.

rēginam nautae indicāvi *I pointed the queen out to the sailor*
nautis hastās dōnāte *give the sailors spears*
(or give spears to the sailors)

NOTE.—In Latin the indirect object usually precedes the direct object, as it always does in English if no preposition is used.

23. The ablative answers the questions *Where? When? Wherewith?* and *Whence?* Rules for the first, second, and fourth of these usages will be given later on.

Obs.—The ablative does duty for some lost cases: hence the variety of its usages.

24. RULE.—The ablative answering the question *Wherewith?* is called the **ablative of the instrument**, and denotes the thing *by means of which* (*i.e.* *wherewith*) a thing is done.

nautae hastis pugnābant *the sailors were fighting with spears*
rēginaturbam sapientiā *the queen overcame the crowd*
superāvit *by wisdom*

NOTE.—The ablative is usually placed just before the verb.

Learn Vocabulary 5, and decline **agricola**, **insula**, and **vita** throughout like **porta**.

VOCABULARY 5.

agricol-a, -ae, m. (agriculture), <i>farmer.</i>	hast-a, -ae, f., <i>spear.</i>
culp-ō (culpable), <i>I blame.</i>	indicō (indicate), <i>I point out.</i>
dēlect-ō (delectable), <i>I delight.</i>	insul-a, -ae, f. (insular), <i>island.</i>
dōn-ō (donor), <i>I give</i> (as a present).	patri-a, -ae, f. (patriot), <i>native</i> <i>land, country.</i>
fer-a, -ae, f., <i>wild beast.</i>	pecūni-a, -ae, f. (pecuniary), <i>money, sum of money.</i>
habit-ō (inhabit), <i>I inhabit.</i>	vīt-a, -ae, f. (vital), <i>life.</i>

All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.

LESSON 6.

25. PART OF THE CONJUGATION OF *SUM*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	<i>I am</i>	sumus,	<i>we are</i>
es,	<i>thou art</i>	estis,	<i>ye are</i>
est,	<i>he is</i>	sunt,	<i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

eram,	<i>I was</i>	erāmus,	<i>we were</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast</i>	erātis,	<i>ye were</i>
erat,	<i>he was</i>	erant,	<i>they were</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

erō,	<i>I shall be</i>	erimus,	<i>we shall be</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>	eritis,	<i>ye will be</i>
erit,	<i>he will be</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-i,	<i>I was or I have been</i>	fu-imus,	<i>we were or we have been</i>
fu-istī,	<i>thou wast or thou hast been</i>	fu-istis,	<i>ye were or ye have been</i>
fu-it,	<i>he was or he has been</i>	fu-ērunt or fu-ēre	<i>they were or they have been</i>

Learn the above four tenses of *sum* ; also Vocabulary 6 (p. 12).

26. RULE.—With the verb *sum* the completion of the predicate stands in the same case as the subject.

poëtae filia rēgīna erit *the poet's daughter will be queen*

Here *erit* forms an incomplete predicate, and *rēgīna* completes the predicate : hence *rēgīna* is in the same case as *filia*, the subject. Compare in English "*I am he.*"

NOTE.—If the subject is contained in the verb, the completion of the predicate is in the case in which the subject would be if separately expressed, namely the nominative ; e.g. *Nautae sumus*, *We are sailors.*

27. RULE.—The ablative answering the question *Where?* is preceded by the preposition *in*, *in*.

in silvis sumus

we are in the woods

For an important exception to this rule, see § 55, p. 24.

VOCABULARY 6.

aquil-a, -ae, *f.* (aquiline), *eagle*.

caus-a, -ae, *f.*, *cause*.

columb-a, -ae, *f.*, *dove*.

Galli-a, -ae, *f.*, *Gaul* (now *France*).

in, in, on.

Itali-a, -ae, *f.*, *Italy*.

ōr-a, -ae, *f.*, *shore*.

stultiti-a, -ae, *f.* (stultify), *folly*.

vi-a, -ae, *f.*, *way, street*.

victōri-a, -ae, *f.*, *victory*.

LESSON 7.

Learn the declension of **dominus** (p. 13).

28. RULE.—An adverb immediately precedes the word it modifies.

rēginam nōn amāmus

we do not like the queen

29. Learn Vocabulary 7 (below), and decline **amicus**, **equus**, **fluvius**, **servus**, cutting off from each the final **-us**, and adding the terminations **-e**, **-um**, **-i**, etc.

Obs.—This is the only declension of Latin substantives in which the vocative differs in form from the nominative.

VOCABULARY 7.

amic-us, -i, *m.* (amicable), *friend*.

av-us, -i, *m.*, *grandfather*.

domin-us, -i, *m.* (dominate),
master, lord.

equ-us, -i, *m.* (equine), *horse*.

fili-us, -i, *m.* (filial), *son*.

fluvi-us, -i, *m.*, *river*.

gladi-us, -i, *m.* (gladiator), *sword*.

hort-us, -i, *m.* (horticulture),
garden.

inimic-us, -i, *m.* (inimical), *enemy*.

medic-us, -i, *m.* (medical), *sur-*
geon, physician, doctor.

morb-us, -i, *m.* (morbid), *dis-*
ease.

nec-ō, 1st conjugation (inter-
necine), *I kill, I slay*.

nōn, adverb, *not*.

serv-us, -i, *m.* (servile), *slave*.

taur-us, -i, *m.*, *bull*.

30. SECOND (OR O) DECLENSION.

Substantives of this declension are classed as follows :—

(1) Masculines (and a few feminines) with nominative singular ending in **-us** ;

(2) Masculines with nominative singular ending in **-er** ;

(3) Neuters with nominative singular ending in **-um**.

(1) Example : **dominus** (m.), *lord*. Base, **domin-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i>	domin-us	domin-i
<i>Voc.</i>	domin-e	domin-i
<i>Acc.</i>	domin-um	domin-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	domin-i	domin-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	domin-ō	domin-is
<i>Abl.</i>	domin-ō	domin-is

(2) Example : **magister** (m.), *master*. Base, **magistr-**.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i>	magister	magistr-i
<i>Acc.</i>	magistr-um	magistr-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	magistr-i	magistr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	magistr-ō	magistr-is
<i>Abl.</i>	magistr-ō	magistr-is

Obs.—The vocative singular has the same form as the nominative. In the other cases **e** is dropped before **r**.

A few substantives, however, retain **e** before **r** throughout. Example : **puer** (m.), *boy*. Base, **puer-**.

Singular.	Plural.	So too, vir (m.), <i>man</i> .
<i>N. V.</i> puer	puer-i	Singular. Plural.
<i>Acc.</i> puer-um	puer-ōs	<i>N. V.</i> vir vir-i
<i>Gen.</i> puer-i	puer-ōrum	<i>Acc.</i> virum vir-ōs
<i>Dat.</i> puer-ō	puer-is	<i>Gen.</i> vir-i vir-ōrum
<i>Abl.</i> puer-ō	puer-is	<i>D. Abl.</i> vir-ō vir-is

(3) Example : **regnum** (n.), *kingdom*. Base, **regn-**.

	Singular	Plural.
<i>N. V. A.</i>	regn-um	regn-a
<i>Gen.</i>	regn-i	regn-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	regn-ō	regn-is
<i>Abl.</i>	regn-ō	regn-is

LESSON 8.

Learn the declension of **magister** and **puer** (p. 13).

31. Substantives of the second declension in **-er** are *nearly all* declined like **magister**, *i.e.* the **e** is dropped before the **r** in all cases except the nominative and vocative singular. Like **puer** are declined **socer**, *father-in-law*, **gener**, *son-in-law*, and **liberī** (plural only), *children*; also **vir**, *man*.

32. Learn Vocabulary 8 (below), and decline **ager**, **aper**, **faber**, **liber** like **magister**, and **gener**, **socer**, **vir**, like **puer**. The terminations must be added to the base, not to the nominative singular: the base is found by cutting off the termination (**i**) of the genitive singular, which is given in the vocabulary after the nominative of each word.

33. RULE.—In Latin a verb common to two clauses of the same sentence is usually expressed in the second clause only, and the conjunction (meaning *and* or *but*) is frequently omitted in such sentences.

puellae rosās, puerī equōs amant *girls like roses, and boys like horses*

Obs.—**Puellae rosās amant et puerī equōs amant** would be very awkward Latin.

VOCABULARY 8.

ager , agr-i , <i>m.</i> (agriculture), <i>field</i> .	magister , magistr-i , <i>m.</i> (magistrate), <i>master</i> .
aper , apr-i , <i>m.</i> , <i>wild boar</i> .	minister , ministr-i , <i>m.</i> , <i>servant</i> .
et , conj., <i>and</i> .	puer , puer-i , <i>m.</i> (puerile), <i>boy</i> .
faber , fabr-i , <i>m.</i> (fabric), <i>carpenter</i> .	-que , conj., <i>and</i> .
Gall-us , -i , <i>m.</i> , <i>a Gaul</i> .	semper , adverb, <i>always</i> .
gener , gener-i , <i>m.</i> , <i>son-in-law</i> .	socer , socer-i , <i>m.</i> , <i>father-in-law</i> .
liber , libr-i , <i>m.</i> (library), <i>book</i> .	vir , vir-i , <i>m.</i> (virile), <i>man</i> .
liber-i , -ōrum , <i>m. pl.</i> , <i>children</i> .	

Obs.—**-que** is added to the second of the two words which it connects; *e.g.* **ministri servīque**, *servants and slaves*. For the purpose of accentuation (§ 4) **-que** forms part of the word to which it is appended; *e.g.* **servīque**. **-que** connects more closely than **et**.

LESSON 9.

Learn the declension of **regnum** (p. 13), and revise the conjugations and declensions in Lesson 1-8, viz. the conjugation of **amō** (p. 4) and **sum** (p. 11) and the declension of **porta** (p. 7), **dominus**, **magister**, and **puer** (p. 13).

34. Learn Vocabulary 9 (below), and decline like **regnum** any five substantives ending in **-um**. This may be done by cutting off the **-um** and replacing it by **-ī**, **-ō**, etc., e.g. **proeli-um**, **proeli-ī**, **proeli-ō**.

35. The vocative and accusative of all neuter substantives are the same in form as the nominative, both in the singular and in the plural. In the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural neuter substantives of any declension end in **-a**.

VOCABULARY 9.

aedific-ō , 1st conjugation (edifice), <i>I build</i> .	oppid-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , town.
aqu-a , -ae , <i>f.</i> (aquatic), water.	praemi-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , reward.
argent-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , silver.	proeli-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , battle.
aur-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (aureole), gold.	Rōmān-us , -ī , <i>m.</i> , a Roman.
bell-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (bellicose), war.	saepe , adverb, often.
cael-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (celestial), heaven.	scūt-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , shield.
dēdic-ō , 1st conjugation, <i>I dedicate</i> .	spoli-ō , 1st conjugation (spoil), <i>I pillage</i> .
de-us , -ī , <i>m.</i> (deity), god.	templ-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , temple.
dōn-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (donor), gift.	terr-a , -ae , <i>f.</i> (terrestrial), earth.
gaudi-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (gaudy), joy.	tract-ō , 1st conjugation (tractable), <i>I handle</i> .
initi-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (initial), beginning.	venēn-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> , poison, drug.
narr-ō , 1st conjugation, <i>I narrate</i> , <i>I relate</i> .	vin-um , -ī , <i>n.</i> (vine), wine.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

36. This class consists of adjectives with nominative singular ending in the masculine in **-us** or **-er**, in the feminine in **-a**, and in the neuter in **-um**.

In the masculine and neuter these adjectives are declined like substantives of the second declension, and in the feminine like substantives of the first declension.

			ma, bonum, <i>good</i> . Base, bon-.			ra, nigrum, <i>black</i> . Base, nigr-.		
Singular.						Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		
Nom.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-a		
Voc.	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-a		
Acc.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a		
Gen.	bon-i	bon-ae	bon-i	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum		
Dat.	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō	bon-is	bon-is	bon-is		
Abl.	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	bon-is	bon-is	bon-is		

Obs.—In committing the above table to memory, the learner should repeat the form for each of the three genders in the nominative singular, then the three forms for the vocative singular, and so on for each case in the singular, and afterwards similarly for each case in the plural.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i>	niger	nigr-a	nigr-um	nigr-i	nigr-ae	nigr-a
<i>Acc.</i>	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-a
<i>Gen.</i>	nigr-i	nigr-ae	nigr-i	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is
<i>Abl.</i>	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is

NOTE.—Some few adjectives of this class with nominative singular masculine in **-er** retain **e** before **r** in the base.

Example : tener, tenera, tenerum, tender. Base, tener-.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N. V.</i> tener	tener-a	tener-um	tener-i	tener-ae	tener-a
<i>Acc.</i> tener-um	tener-am	tener-um	tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-a
<i>Gen.</i> tener-i	tener-ae	tener-i	tener- ōrum	tener- ārum	tener- ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> tener-ō	tener-ae	tener-ō	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is
<i>Abl.</i> tener-ō	tener-ā	tener-ō	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is

LESSON 10.

Learn the declension of **bonus** (p. 16), repeating forms for each gender separately, *i.e.* learn the columns downwards ; afterwards repeat the masculine, feminine, and neuter forms for each case together, thus—**bonus, bona, bonum, bone, bona, bonum.**

37. The form of a Latin adjective varies in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it refers. Thus we may write **timidus nauta**, *a timid sailor*, or **nauta est timidus**, *the sailor is timid* ; but if we wish to express in Latin *a timid girl* or *the girl is timid*, **timidus**, the masculine form of the adjective is inadmissible, and we must write **timida puella**, **puella est timida**, because the feminine substantive **puella** requires a feminine form of the adjective. The same holds good with regard to number and case : we say **timidī nautae**, *timid sailors*, **timide nauta** (vocative), *timid sailor !* in each instance changing the ending of the adjective in accordance with the gender, number, and case of the substantive to which it is applied.

NOTE.—Substantives denoting males are masculine and those denoting females are feminine. Substantives of the first declension (except those which denote males) are feminine ; in the second declension those ending in **-um** in the nominative singular are neuter, the rest (except some ending in **-us**) are masculine.

38. RULE.—An adjective, participle, or adjectival pronoun must be in the **same gender, number, and case as the substantive** to which it refers.

nauta malus poētam doctum	<i>the wicked sailor slew the clever</i>
gladiō longō necāvit	<i>poet with a long sword.</i>
insula est magna	<i>the island is large</i>
poētæ verba stulta erant	<i>the poet's words were foolish</i>

Obs. 1.—This rule is known as the "second concord."

Obs. 2.—This rule applies whether the adjective is an attribute, as in the first example, or the completion of the predicate, as in the second example.

NOTE.—A qualifying adjective used as an attribute usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but an adjective of quantity or number (*e.g.* *multus*) usually precedes.

39. The declension of *ager lātus* (m.), *a wide field*, is given in full as an illustration of the “second concord” :—

	Singular.		Plural.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>lāti</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>lāte</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>lāti</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>lātum</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>lātōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>lāti</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>lātōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>lātis</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>lātō</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>lātis</i>

40. RULE.—The **dative** is used with many Latin adjectives which correspond to English adjectives commonly followed by *to* or *for*.

puerī verba a vō grāta erant *the boy's words were pleasing to his grandfather*

gladii longī bellō sunt idōnei *long swords are suitable for war*

Learn Vocabulary 10 (below), and decline throughout *nauta timidus* (together), *insula magna* (together), *grātum verbum* (together).

VOCABULARY 10.

<i>amoen-us, -a, -um</i> (amenity), <i>pleasant.</i>	<i>mult-us, -a, -um</i> (multiply), <i>much, many.</i>
<i>bon-us, -a, -um</i> (boon), <i>good.</i>	<i>noxi-us, -a, -um</i> (noxious), <i>hurtful.</i>
<i>confirm-ō</i> , 1st conjugation (confirm), <i>strengthen, cheer.</i>	<i>perfid-us, -a, -um</i> , <i>perfidious, treacherous.</i>
<i>doct-us, -a, -um</i> (doctor), <i>learned, skilled.</i>	<i>pericul-um, -i, n.</i> , <i>danger.</i>
<i>fact-um, -i, n.</i> (fact), <i>deed.</i>	<i>splendid-us, -a, -um</i> , <i>splendid.</i>
<i>grāt-us, -a, -um</i> (grateful), <i>pleasing, welcome.</i>	<i>stult-us, -a, -um</i> (stultify), <i>foolish.</i>
<i>long-us, -a, -um</i> , <i>long.</i>	<i>timid-us, -a, -um</i> , <i>timid.</i>
<i>magn-us, -a, -um</i> (magnify), <i>great, large.</i>	<i>verb-um, -i, n.</i> (verb), <i>word.</i>
<i>mal-us, -a, -um</i> , <i>bad, wicked.</i>	<i>viti-um, -i, n.</i> (vitiate), <i>vice.</i>

LESSON 11.

Learn the declension of **niger** and **tener** (p. 16), repeating each according to the directions given on p. 17 for **bonus**.

41. The following adjectives are declined like **tener** :

(1) Adjectives ending in **-fer**, denoting *bearing* (cp. **ferō**, *I bear*), or **-ger**, denoting *carrying* (cp. **gerō**, *I carry*) ; e.g. **frūgifer**, **frūgifera**, **frūgiferum**, *fruit-bearing* ; **armiger**, **armigera**, **armigerum**, *carrying arms*.

(2) **asper**, **aspera**, **asperum**, *rough*. **liber**, **libera**, **liberum**, *free*.
lacer, **lacera**, **lacerum**, *torn*. **miser**, **misera**, **miserum**, *wretched*.

Rhyme :—Like **tener** compound words in **-fer**

Retain the **e** ; so those in **-ger** ;

Add **asper**, *rough*, and **lacer**, *torn*.

With **liber**, *free*, and **miser**, *wretched*.

42. The declension of **impiger**, *active*, qualifying **nauta**, *a sailor* (a masculine substantive), is here given in illustration of the second concord.

	Singular.		Plural.
<i>N.V.</i>	nauta impiger	nautae impigri	
<i>Acc.</i>	nautam impigrum	nautās impigrōs	
<i>Gen.</i>	nautae impigri	nautārum impigrōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	nautae impigrō	nautis impigris	
<i>Abl.</i>	nautā impigrō	nautis impigris	

Learn Vocabulary II (below), and decline throughout (a) **puer aeger**, (b) **puella misera**, (c) **lilium pulchrum**.

VOCABULARY II.

aeger , aegr-a , aegr-um , <i>sick</i> , <i>ill</i> .	niger , nigr-a , nigr-um (<i>nigger</i>), <i>black</i> .
agn-us , -i , <i>m.</i> , <i>lamb</i> .	ocul-us , -i , <i>m.</i> (<i>oculist</i>), <i>eye</i> .
alb-us , -a , -um (<i>alb</i>), <i>white</i> .	parv-us , -a , -um , <i>small</i> , <i>little</i> .
asper , asper-a , asper-um (<i>asperity</i>), <i>rough</i> , <i>harsh</i> .	pulcher , pulchr-a , pulchr-um , <i>beautiful</i> .
de-a , -ae , <i>f.</i> (<i>deity</i>), <i>goddess</i> .	ruber , rubr-a , rubr-um (<i>rubric</i>), <i>red</i> .
frigid-us , -a , -um (<i>frigid</i>), <i>cold</i> .	sacer , sacr-a , sacr-um , <i>sacred</i> .
immolō , 1st conjugation (<i>immolate</i>), <i>I sacrifice</i> .	tener , tener-a , tener-um , <i>tender</i> , <i>delicate</i> .
lili-um , -i , <i>n.</i> , <i>lily</i> .	vast-ō , 1st conjugation, <i>I lay waste</i> .
miser , miser-a , miser-um (<i>miserable</i>), <i>wretched</i> , <i>unhappy</i> .	vent-us , -i , <i>m.</i> , <i>wind</i> .

43. PART OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

(PASSIVE VOICE).

MODEL : **amō**, *I love, I like.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-or ,	<i>I am loved or am being loved</i>	am-āmur ,	<i>we are loved or are being loved</i>
am-āris ,	<i>thou art loved or art being loved</i>	am-āmini ,	<i>ye are loved or are being loved</i>
am-ātur ,	<i>he is loved or is being loved</i>	am-antur ,	<i>they are loved or are being loved</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābar ,	<i>I was being loved</i>	am-ābāmur ,	<i>we were being loved</i>
am-ābāris or am-ābāre ,	<i>thou wast being loved</i>	am-ābāmini ,	<i>ye were being loved</i>
am-ābātur ,	<i>he was being loved</i>	am-ābantur ,	<i>they were lov</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābor ,	<i>I shall be loved</i>	am-ābimur ,	<i>we shall be loved</i>
am-āberis or am-ābere ,	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>	am-ābimini ,	<i>ye will be loved</i>
am-ābitur ,	<i>he will be loved</i>	am-ābuntur ,	<i>they will be loved</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

am-āt-us*sum ,	<i>I was loved or have been loved</i>	am-āt-i*sumus ,	<i>we were loved or have been loved</i>
am-āt-us* es ,	<i>thou wast loved or hast been loved</i>	am-āt-i*estis ,	<i>ye were loved or have been loved</i>
am-āt-us* est ,	<i>he was loved or has been loved</i>	am-āt-i*sunt	<i>they were loved or have been loved</i>

* The forms given in the table are masculine, and are to be used only if the subject is masculine ; see § 50.

With a feminine singular subject use **amāta** instead of **amātus**.

„ neuter	„	„	„	amātum	„	„
„ feminine plural	„	„	„	amātae	„	amāti.
„ neuter	„	„	„	amāta	„	„

LESSON 12.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of **amō** from the table on p. 20.

44. In learning these two tenses notice that :—

(1) The passive terminations correspond to a certain extent with the active ; *e.g.* **am-at** (active), **am-āt-ur** (passive) ; **am-ābam** (active), **am-ābar** (passive).

(2) In the passive the terminations of the imperfect indicative are (except in the first person singular) the same as those of the present preceded by **-āb-**.

45. RULE.—The **agent**, *i.e.* the **person by whom** an action is performed, is expressed by the ablative preceded by the preposition **ā** or **ab**.

apri ab agricolis necantur	<i>wild boars are slain by the farmers</i>
apri hastis ā nautis necābantur	<i>wild boars were being slain with spears by the sailors</i>

Obs. 1.—The form **ā** is generally used before a consonant other than **h**, **ab** before **h** or a vowel.

Obs. 2.—The ablative of the agent (with **ā** or **ab**) answering the question *By whom?* must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of the instrument (without a preposition) answering the question *Wherewith?* (§ 24).

46. RULE.—The masculine and neuter of adjectives are often used in a general sense without a substantive, if the meaning is clear. This usage is common in the plural ; it is not found in the nominative singular masculine.

boni laudantur	<i>good men are praised</i>
multa dēsiderāmus	<i>we feel the want of many things.</i>

Learn Vocabulary 12 (p. 22), and conjugate throughout the present indicative passive of **honōrō**, and the imperfect indicative passive of **dēsiderō**.

VOCABULARY 12.

castig-ō, *I chastise.***cib-us**, -i, *m.*, food.**dēfatig-ō**, *I fatigue.***dēsider-ō**, *I desire, I long for.***dīviti-ae**, -ārum, *f.pl.*, riches.**honōr-ō**, *I honour.***Marc-us**, -i, *m.*, Marcus (a Roman name).**recre-ō** (recreation), *I refresh.***somn-us**, -i, *m.* (somnolent), sleep*All the above verbs belong to the first conjugation.*

LESSON 13.

Learn the future and perfect indicative passive of **amō** (p. 20).

47. In learning the future indicative passive compare the terminations with those of the future indicative active (p. 4).

48. In the perfect indicative passive **amātus** is the perfect participle passive and means *having been loved*. It is declined like **bonus** (p. 16), and varies according to the number and gender of the subject, e.g. in addressing a man say **amātus es**, in addressing a woman **amāta es**; so too *the towns have been pillaged* = **oppida spōliāta sunt**.

Learn Vocabulary 13 (below), and conjugate throughout the future indicative passive of **castigō**, and the perfect indicative passive of **honōrō**.

VOCABULARY 13.

amiciti-a, -ae, *f.*, friendship.**benevolenti-a**, -ae, *f.* (benevolence), good-will.**incit-ō**, -āre (incite), drive forwards, excite.**lacrim-a**, -ae, *f.*, tear.**numquam**, never.**perit-us**, -a, -um, *skilful*.**rustic-us**, -a, -um (rustic), country (*adj.*).**urbān-us**, -a -um, (suburban), city, town (*adj.*).

The insertion of the infinitive termination after a verb in the vocabulary indicates to which conjugation the verb belongs; e.g. -āre signifies "first conjugation."

LESSON 14.**THIRD (OR I AND CONSONANT) DECLENSION.**

49. Substantives of this declension fall into two classes :—

- (1) those which have genitive plural ending in **-ium** (**I-substantives**),
- (2) those which have genitive plural ending in **-um** preceded by a consonant (**consonant-substantives**).

50. The endings in this declension also vary according as the substantive is (*a*) masculine or feminine, or (*b*) neuter.

51. On looking out a substantive of the third declension in a vocabulary or dictionary, the student will find (1) the nominative singular, (2) the genitive singular (whence, by taking off the suffix **-is**, the base may be ascertained); (3) the gender. In order to decline the word fully it is necessary also to know whether it is an **I-substantive** or a **consonant-substantive**, or (in other words) whether the genitive plural ends in **-ium** or in **-um**.

52. This last point may be decided thus in the case of **masculine and feminine words** :—

parisyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nominative singular and genitive singular respectively is equal), **and substantives with base ending in two consonants**, are **I-substantives** (genitive plural **-ium**) ;

imparisyllabic substantives (*i.e.* those in which the number of syllables in the nominative singular and genitive singular respectively is unequal) **with base ending in a single consonant** are **consonant-substantives** (genitive plural **-um**).

53. Of **neuters** of the third declension those with **bases ending in -āl-, -īl-, or -ār-** are **I-substantives** ; the rest are **consonant-substantives**.

Learn the declensions on p. 26.

Learn Vocabulary 14 (p. 24).

3rd decl. singular : **Praeneste**, *Praeneste* ; **Praenestī**, *at Praeneste*.
 " " " **Carthāgō**, *Carthage* ; **Carthāginī**, *at Carthage*.
 " " plural : **Trallēs**, *Tralles* ; **Trallibus**, *at Tralles*.

NOTE.—The above rule applies also to the name of any island small enough to be regarded as one place. With words other than names of towns and small islands a preposition is required ; e.g. *in the garden* = **in hortō** ; *in Gaul* = **in Galliā**.

VOCABULARY 15.

Athēn-ae , -ārum, <i>f.pl., Athens</i> .	incol-a , -ae, <i>m., inhabitant</i> .
Corinth-us , -ī, <i>f., Corinth</i> .	mons , mont-is , <i>m. (mount),</i>
dens , dent-is , <i>m. (dentist), tooth</i> .	<i>mountain</i> .
ēduc-ō , -āre, <i>educate</i> .	pons , pont-is , <i>m. (pontoon), bridge</i>
fons , font-is , <i>m. (fount), fountain</i> .	Rōmul-us , -ī, <i>m., Romulus</i> .
Gabi-ī , -ōrum, <i>m.pl., Gabii (a</i>	Tarent-um , -ī, <i>n., Tarentum</i> .
<i>town)</i> .	urbs , urb-is , <i>f. (urban), city</i> .
Gād-ēs , -ium, <i>f.pl., Gades (Cadiz)</i> .	vor-ō , -āre (<i>voracious</i>), <i>devour</i> .
glands , gland-is , <i>f. (gland), acorn</i> .	vulp-ēs , -is, <i>f., fox</i> .

LESSON 16.

Learn the declension of **cubīle** and **animal** (p. 27). Decline throughout **sedīle** and **calcar** ; also in the singular only **mare** and in the plural only **rēte**.

Learn Vocabulary 16 (below).

56. There are some exceptions to the rule given in § 52 to the effect that imparisyllabic words with base ending in a single consonant are consonant-substantives ; the most important are—

mās (base mar-), <i>m., male</i> , genitive plural marium .
nix („ niv-), <i>f., snow</i> , „ nivium .
vis („ vīr-), <i>f., force</i> , „ virium .

Vīs has in the singular acc. **vim**, abl. **vī**, and no gen. or dat.

VOCABULARY 16.

acūt-us , -a, -um (<i>acute</i>), <i>sharp</i> .	n-ō , -āre (<i>natation</i>), <i>swim</i> .
animal , animāl-is , <i>n., animal</i> .	rēt-e -is, <i>n. (reticule)</i> , <i>net</i> .
calcar , calcār-is , <i>n., spur</i> .	sedīl-e , -is, <i>n., seat</i> .
cubīl-e , -is, <i>n. (cubicle)</i> , <i>bed, lair</i> .	vectīgal , vectīgāl-is , <i>n., tax, tri-</i>
fess-us , -a, -um, <i>tired, weary</i> .	<i>bute</i> .
mar-e , -is, <i>n. (marine)</i> , <i>sea</i> .	violenti-a , -ae, <i>f., violence</i> .

THIRD DECLENSION : I-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

57. First Example : *nūbēs* (f.), *cloud*. Base, *nūb-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>nūb-ēs</i>	<i>nūb-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>nūb-em</i>	<i>nūb-ēs</i> or <i>-īs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>nūb-is</i>	<i>nūb-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>nūb-ī</i>	<i>nūb-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>nūb-e</i>	<i>nūb-ibus</i>

Decline also :—

caedēs, f., *slaughter*.
clādēs, f., *disaster*.
vulpēs, f., *fox*.

Second Example : *hostis* (c.), *enemy*. Base, *host-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>host-is</i>	<i>host-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>host-em</i>	<i>host-ēs</i> or <i>-īs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>host-is</i>	<i>host-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>host-ī</i>	<i>host-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>host-e</i>	<i>host-ibus</i>

Decline also :—

auris, f., *ear*.
collis, m., *hill*.
crīnis, m., *hair*.
ovis, f., *sheep*.
piscis, m., *fish*.
vallis, f., *valley*.

Obs.—The accusative plural of masculine and feminine I-substantives is generally printed with the ending *-ēs*, but the older and more correct ending *-īs* is frequently used in editions of the poets.

58. Of the I-substantives ending in *-is* in the nominative singular, a few end in *-im* in the accusative singular and in *-ī* in the ablative singular. In some words these terminations are the only forms, in others usage varies.

Example : *clāvis* (f.), *key*. Base, *clāv-*.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> <i>clāv-is</i>	<i>clāv-ēs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>clāv-em</i> or <i>-im</i>	<i>clāv-ēs</i> or <i>-īs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>clāv-is</i>	<i>clāv-ium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>clāv-ī</i>	<i>clāv-ibus</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>clāv-e</i> or <i>-ī</i>	<i>clāv-ibus</i>

Decline also :—

messis, f., *harvest*.
nāvis, f., *ship*.
puppis, f., *stern*.
turris, f., *tower*.

NOTE.—*Sitis*, f., *thirst*, and *tussis*, f., *cough*, always have acc. sing. ending in *-im* and abl. sing. ending in *-ī*; *avis*, f., *bird*, *cīvis*, c., *citizen*, and *ignis*, m., *fire*, have abl. sing. ending in either *-e* or *-ī*.

RHYME.—*avis*, *cīvis*, *ignis*, give
either form to ablative.
sitis, *tussis* both maintain
im and *ī* in cases twain.
messis, *turris*, *puppis*, *nāvis*
all " turn either way " like *clāvis*.

THIRD DECLENSION : I-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE (*continued*).

59. Here belong all imparisyllabic substantives with base ending in two consonants ; **t** or **d** at the end of the base is dropped before the **-s** of the nominative singular.

Example : **dens** (*m.*), *tooth*. Base, **den**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline a
<i>N.V.</i> den-s	dent-ēs	ars (base <i>art-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>art</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> dent-em	dent-ēs or -is	arx („ <i>arc-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>citadel</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> dent-is	dent-ium	mens („ <i>ment-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>mind</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> dent-i	dent-ibus	nox („ <i>noct-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>night</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> dent-e	dent-ibus	sors („ <i>sort-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>lot</i> .
		urbs („ <i>urb-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>city</i> .

60. A few I-substantives end in **-er** in the nominative singular.

Example : **imber** (*m.*), *shower*. Base, **imbr-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> imber	imbr-ēs	
<i>Acc.</i> imbr-em	imbr-ēs or -is	linter , <i>f.</i> , <i>boat</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> imbr-is	imbr-ium	
<i>Dat.</i> imbr-i	imbr-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i> imbr-e or -i	imbr-ibus	

NEUTER.

61. Of neuter I-substantives some retain **-e** in the nominative singular ; others with base ending in **āl** or **ār** drop **e** and shorten the preceding vowel.

First Example : **cubile** (*n.*), *bed*. Base, **cubīl-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.A.</i> cubīl-e	cubīl-ia	mare (genitive plural, marum), <i>sea</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> cubīl-is	cubīl-ium	rēte (ablative singular, rēte), <i>net</i> .
<i>D. Abl.</i> cubīl-i	cubīl-ibus	sedile , <i>seat</i> .

Second Example : **animal** (*n.*), *animal*. Base, **animāl-**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.A.</i> animal	animāl-ia	
<i>Gen.</i> animāl-is	animāl-ium	calcar (base <i>calcār-</i>), <i>spur</i> .
<i>D. Abl.</i> animāl-i	animāl-ibus	vectigal (base <i>vectigāl-</i>), <i>tax</i> .

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

62. In the first three examples the nominative singular is formed with the termination **s** ; in the last four no termination is in the nominative singular added to the base.

First Example : **princeps** (*c.*), *chief*. Base, **princip-**. Base ending in **p**, **b**, or **m**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> princep-s	princip-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> princip-em	princip-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> princip-is	princip-um
<i>Dat.</i> princip-i	princip-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> princip-e	princip-ibus

Decline also :—

hiems (base **hiem-**), *f.*, *winter*.
trabs („ **trab-**), *f.*, *beam*.

Obs.—Often the increase in the number of syllables is accompanied by a change of vowel (**e** to **i**).

Second Example : **miles** (*m.*), *soldier*. Base, **milit-**. Base ending in **t** or **d**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> mile-s	milit-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> milit-em	milit-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> milit-is	milit-um
<i>Dat.</i> milit-i	milit-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> milit-e	milit-ibus

Decline also :—

aetās (base **aetāt-**), *f.*, *age*.
custōs („ **custōd-**), *c.*, *guardian*.
hērēs („ **hērēd-**), *c.*, *heir*.
lapis („ **lapid-**), *m.*, *stone*.
obses („ **obsid-**), *c.*, *hostage*.
sacerdōs („ **sacerdōt-**), *c.*, *priest*.
virtūs („ **virtūt-**), *f.*, *virtue*.

Obs.—Before the final **s** of the nominative singular the **t** or **d** with which the base ends is dropped.

Third Example : **lex** (*f.*), *law*. Base, **lēg-**. Base ending in **c** or **g**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> lēx	lēg-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> lēg-em	lēg-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> lēg-is	lēg-um
<i>Dat.</i> lēg-i	lēg-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> lēg-e	lēg-ibus

Decline also :—

calix (base **calic-**), *m.*, *cup*.
crux („ **cruc-**), *f.*, *cross*.
iūdex („ **iūdic-**), *c.*, *judge*.
lux („ **lūc-**), *f.*, *light*.
pax („ **pāc-**), *f.*, *peace*.
rādix („ **rādic-**), *f.*, *root*.
vox („ **vōc-**), *f.*, *voice*.

Obs.—For **cs** or **gs** Latin always has **x**.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE (*continued*).

Fourth Example : *leō* (*m.*), *lion*. Base, *leōn-*. Base ending in *n*.

In most masculine and feminine substantives with bases ending in *n*, the *n* is dropped in the nominative singular and the preceding vowel (if not an *o*) is changed to *o*.

Singular.	Plural.	Declin
<i>N.V.</i> <i>leō</i>	<i>leōn-ēs</i>	<i>cardō</i> (base <i>cardin-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>hinge</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>leōn-em</i>	<i>leōn-ēs</i>	<i>flāmen</i> (<i>flāmin-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>priest</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>leōn-is</i>	<i>leōn-um</i>	<i>ōrātiō</i> (<i>ōrātiōn-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>speech</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>leōn-i</i>	<i>leōn-ibus</i>	<i>ordō</i> (<i>ordin-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>row</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> <i>leōn-e</i>	<i>leōn-ibus</i>	<i>sanguis</i> (<i>sanguin-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>blood</i> .
		<i>virgō</i> (<i>virgin-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>virgin</i> .

Fifth Example : *flōs* (*m.*), *flower*. Base, *flōr-*. (In bases which originally ended in *s* the *s* becomes *r* between two vowels.) Base ending in *r* (original *s*).

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> <i>flōs</i>	<i>flōr-ēs</i>	<i>arbor</i> (base <i>arbor-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>tree</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>flōr-em</i>	<i>flōr-ēs</i>	<i>calor</i> (<i>calōr-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>heat</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>flōr-is</i>	<i>flōr-um</i>	<i>cinis</i> (<i>ciner-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>ashes</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>flōr-i</i>	<i>flōr-ibus</i>	<i>honor</i> (<i>honōr-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>honour</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> <i>flōr-e</i>	<i>flōr-ibus</i>	<i>pudor</i> (<i>pudōr-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>shame</i> .
		<i>rōs</i> (<i>rōr-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>dew</i> .
		<i>tellūs</i> (<i>tellūr-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>earth</i> .

Sixth Example : *anser* (*m.*), *gander*. Base, *anser-*. Base ending in *l* or *r*.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> <i>anser</i>	<i>anser-ēs</i>	<i>fūr</i> (base <i>fūr-</i>), <i>c.</i> , <i>thief</i> .
<i>Acc.</i> <i>anser-em</i>	<i>anser-ēs</i>	<i>imperātor</i> (base <i>imperātōr-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>commander</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> <i>anser-is</i>	<i>anser-um</i>	<i>mulier</i> (base <i>mulier-</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>woman</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> <i>anser-i</i>	<i>anser-ibus</i>	<i>sōl</i> (base <i>sōl-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>sun</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> <i>anser-e</i>	<i>anser-ibus</i>	<i>vultur</i> (base <i>vultur-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>vulture</i> .

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE (*continued*).

Seventh Example : **pater** (*m.*), *father*. Base, **patr-** (see § 65).

Pater, *father*, **māter**, *mother*, **frāter**, *brother*, have **e** before **r** in the nominative and vocative singular only.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.</i> pater	patr-ēs	
<i>Acc.</i> patr-em	patr-ēs	
<i>Gen.</i> patr-is	patr-um	frāter (base frātr-), <i>m.</i> , <i>brother</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> patr-i	patr-ibus	māter („ mātr-), <i>f.</i> , <i>mother</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> patr-e	patr-ibus	

NEUTER.

63. First Example : **nōmen** (*n.*), *name*. Base, **nōmin-**. Base ending in **n**, **l**, or **r**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.A.</i> nōmen	nōmin-a	flūmen (base flūmin-), <i>river</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> nōmin-is	nōmin-um	fulgur („ fulgur-), <i>lightning</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> nōmin-i	nōmin-ibus	līmen („ līmin-), <i>threshold</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> nōmin-e	nōmin-ibus	lūmen („ lūmin-), <i>light</i> .
		sēmen („ sēmin-), <i>seed</i> .

Second Example (with vowel change) : **opus** (*n.*), *work*. Base, **oper-**. Base ending in **n**, **l**, or **r**.

Here the base originally ended in **s**, which between two vowels regularly becomes **r**.

Singular.	Plural.	Decline also :—
<i>N.V.A.</i> opus	oper-a	corpus (base corpor-), <i>body</i> .
<i>Gen.</i> oper-is	oper-um	crūs („ crūr-), <i>leg</i> .
<i>Dat.</i> oper-i	oper-ibus	decus („ decor-), <i>ornament</i> .
<i>Abl.</i> oper-e	oper-ibus	genus („ gener-), <i>race, kind</i> .
		iūs („ iūr-), <i>right, law</i> .
		latus („ later-), <i>side</i> .
		ōs („ ōr-), <i>mouth</i> .
		pectus („ pector-), <i>breast</i> .

The following are similarly declined, though their bases do not end in **n**, **l**, or **r** :—

caput (base capit-), <i>n.</i> , <i>head</i> .		cor (base cord-), <i>n.</i> , <i>heart</i> .
lac (base lact-), <i>n.</i> , <i>milk</i> .		

LESSON 17.

Learn the declension of *princeps* and *miles* (p. 28).
Decline throughout *hiems*, *trabs*, *custōs*, *hērēs* *virtūs*.

Learn Vocabulary 17 (below).

64. RULE.—The time *when* an action is performed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*Arabēs campōs hieme et
aestāte peragrant*

*the Arabs wander about the
plains in winter and summer*

VOCABULARY 17.

aestās, *aestāt-is*, *f.*, *summer*.
civītās, *civītāt-is*, *f.* (city), *state*.
colloc-ō, *-āre* (collocation), *place*,
put.
Crass-us, *-i*, *m.*, *Crassus* (a Ro-
man general).
eques, *equit-is*, *m.* (equestrian),
horse-soldier, (pl.) *cavalry*.
hibern-a, *-ōrum*, *n. pl.* (hibernate),
winter quarters.
hiems, *hiem-is*, *f.*, *winter*.
miles, *milit-is*, *m.* (military),
soldier.
obtemper-ō, *-āre* (with dative),
obey.
palūs, *palūd-is*, *f.*, *marsh*.

pedes, *pedit-is*, *m.* (pedestrian),
foot-soldier, (pl.) *infantry*.
peragr-ō, *-āre*, *wander about*.
praed-a, *-ae*, *f.* (predatory),
booty.
princeps, *princip-is*, *c.* (princi-
pal), *chief*.
quass-ō, *-āre*, *shatter*.
rān-a, *-ae*, *f.*, *frog*.
revoc-ō, *-āre* (revoke), *recall*.
sicc-us, *-a*, *-um*, *dry*.
tempestās, *tempestāt-is*, *f.* (tem-
pest), *storm*, *weather*.
trabs, *trab-is*, *f.*, *beam*, *timber*.
virtūs, *virtūt-is*, *f.*, *valour*,
virtue.

LESSON 18.

Learn the declension of *lex*, *leō*, *flōs*, *anser*, *pater* (pp. 28-30).

65. It is to be noted that *pater*, *māter*, *frāter*, owing to the loss of the *e* before *r* in the base, break the rule that parisyllabic masculines and feminines are I-substantives; the rule is also broken by a few other words, the most common of which are—

<i>canis</i>	(base <i>can-</i>), <i>c.</i> , <i>dog</i> ,	genitive plural <i>canum</i> ,
<i>iuvenis</i>	(„ <i>iuvēn-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>young man</i> ,	„ <i>iuvenum</i> ,
<i>senex</i>	(„ <i>sen-</i>), <i>m.</i> , <i>old man</i> ,	„ <i>senum</i> ,
<i>vātēs</i>	(„ <i>vāt-</i>), <i>c.</i> , <i>seer</i> ,	„ <i>vātum</i> ,

all declined as consonant-substantives.

Rhyme (cp. § 51).—

The genitive in **canis, frāter,**
Vātēs, senex, pater, māter,
 Ends in **-um** ; so **iuvenis.**
 But **-ium** ends **mās, nix, and vīs.**

Learn Vocabulary 18 (below).

VOCABULARY 18.

arbor, arbor-is, f., tree.	māter, mātr-is, f. (maternal),
consul, consul-is, m., consul (a	mother.
Roman magistrate).	nīd-us, -ī, m., nest.
dux, duc-is, m. (duke), leader,	ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, f., speech.
general.	ōrātor, ōrātōr-is, m., orator.
flōs, flōr-is, m. (floral), flower.	passer, passer-is, m., sparrow.
grex, greg-is, m. (congregate),	pastor, pastōr-is, m. (pastoral),
flock.	shepherd.
homō, homin-is, c., m in, person.	pater, patr-is, m. (paternal), father.
ignāvi-a, -ae, f., cowardice.	pulchritūdō, pulchritūdin-is, f.,
iūdex, iūdic-is, m. (judicial),	beauty.
judge (properly juryman).	rām-us, -ī, m. (ramify), branch.
leō, leōn-is, m. (leonine), lion.	rex, rēg-is, m. (regal), king.
lex, lēg-is, f. (legal), law.	sermō, sermōn-is, m. (sermon),
	discourse, conversation.

LESSON 19.

Learn the declension of **nōmen** and **opus** (p. 30). Decline throughout **fulgur, corpus, crūs** ; also in the plural only **caput, ōs**.

66. Os (base **oss-**), *n.*, *bone*, is declined as a consonant substantive, but has genitive plural **ossium**.

Learn Vocabulary 19 (p. 33).

VOCABULARY 19.

cadāver , cadāver-is , <i>n.</i> (cadaverous), <i>dead body, corpse.</i>	litus , litor-is , <i>n.</i> (litoral), <i>shore.</i>
caput , capit-is , <i>n.</i> (capital), <i>head.</i>	onus , oner-is , <i>n.</i> (onerous), <i>burden.</i>
carmen , carmin-is , <i>n.</i> , <i>song, poem.</i>	perturb-ō , -āre (perturb), <i>dismay, frighten.</i>
celebr-ō , -āre , <i>celebrate.</i>	port-ō , -āre (portable), <i>carry.</i>
curv-us , -a , -um , <i>winding, curved.</i>	praeterit-us , -a , -um (preterite), <i>past.</i>
dēdecus , dēdecor-is , <i>n.</i> , <i>disgrace, infamy.</i>	rūs , rūr-is , <i>n.</i> (rural), <i>country</i> (opposed to town).
excruci-ō , -āre (excruciate), <i>torment, distress.</i>	scelus , sceler-is , <i>n.</i> , <i>crime.</i>
foedus , foeder-is , <i>n.</i> (federal), <i>treaty.</i>	tempus , tempor-is , <i>n.</i> (temporary), <i>time.</i>
frigus , frigor-is , <i>n.</i> (frigid), <i>cold.</i>	viol-ō , -āre , <i>violate.</i>
fulgur , fulgur-is , <i>n.</i> , <i>flash of lightning.</i>	vulnus , vulner-is , <i>n.</i> (vulnerable), <i>wound.</i>
iter , itiner-is , <i>n.</i> (itinerary), <i>march, journey.</i>	

ADJECTIVES OF THE SECOND CLASS.

67. These adjectives fall into two main divisions :—

- (1) Adjectives with genitive plural in **-ium**, declined like **I**-substantives of the third declension ;
- (2) Adjectives with genitive plural in **-um**, declined like consonant-substantives of the third declension.

Obs.—Wherever in the following tables one form only is given for any case, it is used for all genders alike.

ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE **I**-SUBSTANTIVES.

68. This division consists of :—

- (a) Adjectives which have three forms in the nominative singular, one for each gender ;
- (b) Adjectives which have two forms in the nominative singular, one for the masculine and feminine, the other for the neuter ;
- (c) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form which serves for all genders alike, and with base ending in a long syllable.

69. Examples : (a) **acer, acris, acre, sharp.** Base, **acr-**.
 (b) **tristis, triste, sad.** „ **trist-**.
 (c) { **fēlix, fortunate.** „ **fēlic-**.
 { **prūdens, discreet.** „ **prudent-**.

Singular.			Plural.	
M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i> acer	acr-is	acr-e	acr-ēs	acr-ia
<i>Acc.</i> acr-em	acr-em	acr-e	acr-ēs or is	acr-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	acr-is		acr-ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	acr-ī		acr-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	acr-ī		acr-ibus	

NOTE.—*Celer, celeris, celere, swift*, alone retains the *e* before *r* throughout ; it has genitive plural *celerum*.

Singular.			Plural.	
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i> trist-is	trist-e		trist-ēs	trist-ia
<i>Acc.</i> trist-em	trist-e		trist-ēs or -is	trist-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	trist-is		trist-ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	trist-ī		trist-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	trist-ī		trist-ibus	

Singular.			Plural.	
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i> fēlix			fēlic-ēs	fēlic-ia
<i>Acc.</i> fēlic-em	fēlix		fēlic-ēs or is	fēlic-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	fēlic-is		fēlic-ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	fēlic-ī		fēlic-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	fēlic-ī or -e		fēlic-ibus	

Singular.			Plural.	
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i> prūdens			prūdēt-ēs	prūdēt-ia
<i>Acc.</i> prūdēt-em	prūdēns		prūdēt-ēs or -is	prūdēt-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	prūdēt-is		prūdēt-ium	
<i>Dat.</i>	prūdēt-ī		prūdēt-ibus	
<i>Abl.</i>	prūdēt-ī or -e		prūdēt-ibus	

ADJECTIVES DECLINED LIKE CONSONANT-SUBSTANTIVES.

70. This division consists of :—

(a) Adjectives of the comparative degree ;

(b) Adjectives having in the nominative singular one form for all genders alike, and with base ending in a short syllable.

71. Examples (a) *longior, longius, longer* (§ 84). Base, *longior-*.
(b) *pauper, poor*. „ *pauper-*.

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>longior</i>	<i>longius</i>		<i>longiōrēs</i>	<i>longiōr-a</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>longiōr-em</i>	<i>longius</i>		<i>longiōrēs</i>	<i>longiōr-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>longiōr-is</i>			<i>longiōr-um</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>longiōr-i</i>			<i>longiōr-ibus</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>longiōr-e</i>			<i>longiōr-ibus</i>	

Singular.			Plural.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>pauper</i>			<i>pauper-ēs</i>	<i>none</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>pauper-em</i>	<i>pauper</i>		<i>pauper-ēs</i>	<i>none</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>pauper-is</i>			<i>pauper-um</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>pauper-i</i>			<i>pauper-ibus</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>pauper-e</i>			<i>pauper-ibus</i>	

LESSON 20.

Learn §§ 67, 68, and the declension of *ācer* and *tristis* (p. 34).

72. EXAMPLE OF A SUBSTANTIVE OF THE FIRST DECLENSION DECLINED WITH AN ADJECTIVE OF THE SECOND CLASS.

Sagitta (*f.*), *arrow*, like *porta* (§ 13) ; *celer, celeris, celere*, *swift*, like *ācer*, but retaining *e* before *r* throughout.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>sagitta</i>	<i>celeris</i>		<i>sagittae celerēs</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>sagittam</i>	<i>celerem</i>		<i>sagittās celerēs</i>	(or <i>celeris</i>)
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>sagittae</i>	<i>celeris</i>		<i>sagittārum celerium</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>sagittae</i>	<i>celerī</i>		<i>sagittīs celeribus</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>sagittā</i>	<i>celerī</i>		<i>sagittīs celeribus</i>	

Decline throughout according to the above model :—

auriga fortis, *brave charioteer.*

omne certāmen, *every contest.*

Learn Vocabulary 20 (below).

VOCABULARY 20.

ācer, **ācr-is**, **ācr-e** (acid), *keen, fierce, ardent.*

alacer- **alacr-is**, **alacr-e** (alacrity), *cheerful, energetic, active.*

aurig-a, **-ae**, *m.*, *charioteer.*

brev-is, **-e**, *brief, short.*

Carthāgō, **Carthāgin-is**, *f.*, *Carthage* (a city of Africa).

celer, **celer-is**, **celer-e** (celerity), *swift.*

certāmen, **certamin-is**, *n.*, *contest.*

Cicerō, **Cicerōn-is**, *m.*, *Cicero* (a Roman orator).

dolor, **dolōr-is**, *m.* (dolorous), *pain, grief.*

dulc-is, **dulc-e** (dulcet), *sweet.*

exanim-ō, **-āre**, *kill.*

fidēl-is **-e** (fidelity), *faithful.*

fort-is, **-e** (fortify), *brave.*

grav-is, **-e** (grave), *heavy, severe.*

herī, *adv.*, *yesterday.*

hodiē, *adv.*, *to-day.*

Horati-us, **-ī**, *m.*, *Horace* (a Roman poet).

omn-is, **-e** (omnibus), *all, every ; (pl.) everyone, everybody.*

plōr-ō, **-āre** (deplore), *bewail.*

sagitt-a, **-ae**, *f.*, *arrow.*

trist-is, **-e**, *sad.*

ūtil-is, **-e** (utility), *useful.*

Vēi-i, **-ōrum**, *m.pl.*, *Veii* (an Italian town).

LESSON 21.

Learn the declension of **fēlix** and **prūdēns** (p. 34).

73. RULE.—Verbs of *calling, thinking, considering*, etc., when used in the active voice, govern an accusative of the direct object, and may take another accusative as predicate to the first to complete their sense.

Cicerōnem ēloquentem pu- *we consider Cicero eloquent*
tāmus

74. RULE.—The adjectives **dignus**, *worthy*, and **indignus**, *unworthy*, are constructed with the ablative case.

puer p r a e m i i s indignus est *the boy is unworthy of rewards*

Learn Vocabulary 21 (below and decline together throughout *auriga audax*).

VOCABULARY 21.

appell-ō, -āre (appeal), <i>call</i> .	indign-us, -a, -um , <i>unworthy</i> .
audax , <i>gen. audāc-is</i> (audacious), <i>bold</i> .	infēlix , <i>gen. infēlic-is</i> (infelicity), <i>unhappy, unfortunate</i> .
Caesar , <i>Caesar-is, m.</i> , <i>Caesar</i> (a celebrated Roman general).	infidēl-is, -e (infidel), <i>unfaithful</i> .
catēn-a, -ae, f. (concatenation), <i>chain</i> .	ingens , <i>gen. ingent-is</i> , <i>immense</i> .
consili-um, -ī, n. (counsel), <i>plan, counsel</i> .	laus, laud-is, f. (laud), <i>praise</i> .
cōpi-ae, -ārum, f.pl. (copious), <i>forces, troops</i> .	ōner-ō, āre (onerous), <i>load</i> .
dign-us, -a, -um (dignity), <i>worthy</i> .	praestans, praestant-is , <i>excellent</i> .
fēlix , <i>gen. fēlic-is</i> (felicity), <i>happy, fortunate</i> .	prūdens , <i>gen. prūdēt-is</i> , <i>wise, prudent</i> .
fug-ō, -āre (fugitive), <i>put to flight</i> .	put-ō, -āre , <i>think, consider</i> .
	rapax , <i>gen. rapāc-is</i> , <i>rapacious, greedy</i> .
	sapiens , <i>gen. sapient-is</i> (sapient), <i>wise, learned</i> .
	turp-is, -e (turpitude), <i>base</i> .

LESSON 22.

Learn the declension of **longior** and **pauper** (p. 35).

75. RULE.—In comparisons **quam** means *than*, and constructed with the same case after it as before it.

virī fortiōrēs quam fēminae sunt	<i>men are stronger than women</i>
cūr Caesarem fēliciōrem quam Pompēium putās ?	<i>why do you think Caesar more</i> <i>fortunate than Pompeius ?</i>
māiōra dōna n a u t i s quam militibus dōnāte	<i>give greater gifts to sailors than</i> <i>to soldiers</i>

76. RULE.—Instead of **quam** followed by a substantive in the nominative or accusative, a substantive in the ablative may express that with which the comparison is made.

virī fēminis fortiōrēs sunt	<i>men are stronger than women</i>
cūr Caesarem Pompēiō fēlici- ōrem putās ?	<i>why do you think Caesar more</i> <i>fortunate than Pompeius ?</i>

77. RULE.—Many adjectives implying verbal action are constructed with a genitive; such are **memor**, *mindful*; **immemor**, *unmindful*; **plēnus**, *full*; **avidus**, *greedy*.

Gallia est plēna cīviū m Rō- mānōrum *Gaul is full of Roman citizens.*

Learn Vocabulary 22. Decline together throughout **carmen dulcius**; also **melior causa** in the singular and **urbs inops** in the plural.

VOCABULARY 22.

arm-a, -ōrum, *n. pl., arms.*
clāmōr, clāmōr-is, *m. (clamour) shout.*
cūr, *adv., why?*
dīves, *gen. dīvit-is, rich.*
dulciōr, *gen. dulciōr-is (dulcet), sweeter.*
fēliciōr, *gen. fēliciōr-is (felicity), happier, more fortunate.*
immemor, *gen. immemor-is, unmindful.*
inops, *gen. inop-is, helpless.*
interdum, *adv., sometimes.*
lūn-a, -ae, *f. (lunar), moon.*
māiōr, *gen. māiōr-is (major), greater.*

Mars, **Mart-is**, *m. (martial), Mars (the Roman god of war).*
meli-or, *gen. meliōr-is (ameliorate), better.*
memor, *gen. memor-is (memory), mindful.*
min-or, *gen. minōr-is (minor), less, smaller.*
nihil, *indeclinable, n. (annihilate), nothing.*
pauper, *gen. pauper-is (pauper), poor.*
sōl, **sōl-is**, *m. (solar), sun.*
superstes, *gen. superstīt-is, surviving.*
vigil, **vigil-is**, *vigilant, watchful.*

LESSON 23.

FOURTH (OR U) DECLENSION.

78. This declension contains substantives of two classes :—

- (1) Masculine (and some feminine) words, with nominative singular ending in **-us**;
- (2) Neuter words, with nominative singular ending in **-ū**.

(1) Example : **gradus** (*m.*), *step*. Base, **grad-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> grad-us	grad-ūs
<i>Acc.</i> grad-um	grad-ūs
<i>Gen.</i> grad-ūs	grad-uum
<i>Dat.</i> grad-ui	grad-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> grad-ū	grad-ibus

(2) Example : **genū** (*n.*), *knee*. Base, **gen-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V. A.</i> gen-ū	gen-ua
<i>Gen.</i> gen-ūs	gen-uum
<i>Dat.</i> gen-ū	gen-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> gen-ū	gen-ibus

Obs.—Some substantives, of which the commonest are **arcus** (*bow*), **artus** (*limb*), **lacus** (*lake*), have dative and ablative plural ending in **-ubus** (**arcubus**, **artubus**, **lacubus**) ; some others have either **-ibus** or **-ubus** in these cases.

Learn the declension of **gradus** and **genū** (above).

Learn Vocabulary 23, and decline together throughout **portus magnus** and **cornū longum**.

VOCABULARY 23.

ac-us , -ūs , <i>f.</i> , <i>needle</i> .	fruct-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> , <i>fruit</i> .
arc-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> (<i>arch</i>), <i>bow</i> .	gen-ū , -ūs , <i>n.</i> (<i>genuflect</i>), <i>knee</i> .
corn-ū , -ūs , <i>n.</i> , <i>horn</i> , <i>wing</i> (of an army).	grad-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> (<i>grade</i>), <i>step</i> .
cum , <i>prep.</i> (with ablative), <i>ac-</i> <i>companied by, with</i> .	intr-ō , -āre , <i>enter</i> .
curr-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> , <i>chariot</i> .	man-us , -ūs , <i>f.</i> (<i>manual</i>), <i>hand</i> .
dexter , dextr-a , dextr-um (<i>dex-</i> <i>terous</i>), <i>on the right hand, right</i> .	number-ō , -āre (<i>numeration</i>), <i>count</i> .
exercit-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> , <i>army</i> .	par-ō , -āre , <i>prepare</i> .
explōrātor , explōrātōr-is , <i>m.</i> (<i>explore</i>), <i>spy</i> .	port-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> (<i>port</i>), <i>harbour</i> .
fin-ēs , -ium , <i>m. pl.</i> , <i>territories</i> .	querc-us , -ūs , <i>f.</i> , <i>oak</i> .
foli-um , -i , <i>n.</i> (<i>foliage</i>), <i>leaf</i> .	umbr-a , -ae , <i>f.</i> (<i>umbrella</i>), <i>shade</i> .
	ūtilior , <i>gen.</i> utiliōr-is (<i>utility</i>), <i>more useful</i> .
	valid-us , -a , -um , <i>strong</i> .
	vis-us , -ūs , <i>m.</i> (<i>visual</i>), <i>sight</i> .

LESSON 24.

FIFTH (OR E) DECLENSION.

79. Example : **diēs** (m. or f. in sing., m. in pl.), *day*.
Base, **di-**.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> di-ēs	di-ēs
<i>Acc.</i> di-em	di-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> di-ēi	di-ērum
<i>Dat.</i> di-ēi	di-ēbus
<i>Abl.</i> di-ē	di-ēbus

The substantives of this declension are all feminine, except **diēs**.

Obs. 1.—Most nouns of this declension have no plural. Only **diēs** and **rēs** (f.), *thing*, have genitive, dative, and ablative plural.

Obs. 2.—If the last letter of the base is a consonant, the genitive and dative singular end in **eī** (not **ēi**) ; e.g. **fid-ēs** (f.), *faith*, has genitive and dative singular **fid-eī**.

80. RULE.—The time over which an action extends is put in the accusative case.

multōs diēs pugnābāmus *we were fighting for many days*

Learn the declension of **diēs** (above).

Learn Vocabulary 24, and decline together throughout **parva rēs**.

VOCABULARY 24.

aci-ēs, -**ēi**, f., *line of battle*.
ann-us, -**i**, m. (annual), *year*.
crās, *adv.*, *to-morrow*.
di-ēs, -**ēi**, m. or (in sing.) f., *day*.
faci-ēs, -**ēi**, f., *face*.
fid-ēs, -**eī**, f. (fidelity), *faith*,
loyalty, allegiance.

plāniti-ēs, -**ēi**, f., *plain*.
remedi-um, -**i**, n., *remedy*.
r-ēs, -**eī**, f. (real), *thing, affair*.
segniti-ēs, -**ēi**, f., *sloth, apathy*.
speci-ēs, -**ēi**, f. (specious), *pretence*,
semblance.
sp-ēs, -**eī**, f., *hope*.

LESSON 25.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 76.

SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

81. The following nine adjectives of the first class have genitive singular of all genders ending in **-ius** (sometimes **-ius**), and dative singular of all genders ending in **i**.

sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone*.

tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole*.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one*.

ullus, ulla, ullum, *any* (after a negative).

nullus, nulla, nullum, *no, none*.

uter, utra, utrum, *which* (of the two) ?

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*.

alter, altera, alterum, *the one* (of two), *the other* (of two), *the second* (of two).

alius, alia, aliud, *one* (of several), *another* (of several).

Example : **nullus, nulla, nullum**, *no, none*. Base, **null-**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	null-us	null-a	null-um	null-ī	null-ae	null-a
<i>Acc.</i>	null-um	null-am	null-um	null-ōs	null-ās	null-a
<i>Gen.</i>	null-ius	null-ius	null-ius	null-ōrum	null-ārum	null-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	null-i	null-i	null-i	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs
<i>Abl.</i>	null-ō	null-ā	null-ō	null-īs	null-īs	null-īs

Obs.—**Alius** has nominative and accusative singular neuter **aliud**, and genitive singular **alius** ; the latter is rarely found. (The dative singular is **aliī**.)

NOTE.1. The quantity of **-i** in the genitive singular ending is, as a rule, long, except in **alterius**, genitive singular of **alter**, and the compounds of **uter**, mentioned below.

NOTE.—2. **Uter** has the following compounds, in which the second part is indeclinable, while the former part is declined just as when not compounded :—

utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque, *whichever* (of the two).

uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *which* (of the two) *you please*.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (of the two).

utervis, utravīs, utrumvis, *which* (of the two) *you will*.

82. The numeral adjectives **duo**, *two*, and **trēs**, *three*, are thus declined.

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs or duo	duās	duo	trēs or trīs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum		trium
	or duum	or duum	or duum		
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus		tribus
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus		tribus

Like **duo** decline **ambō**, *both*.

83. IDIOMS.

alter labōrābat, alter cantābat	<i>one of the two was working, the other was singing</i>
alius labōrābat, alius cantābat	<i>one was working, another was singing</i>
alteri superābant, alteri superābantur	<i>one party was conquering, the other party were being conquered</i>
alius aliud indicābat	<i>one was pointing out one thing, another (was pointing out) another</i>
alius aliā viā ambulābat	<i>one was walking by one road, another (was walking) by another</i>

Learn Vocabulary 25, and decline **ūnus homō** (together) and **duo civēs** (together).

VOCABULARY 25.

captiv-us, -i, m., <i>captive.</i>	nāvis longa, f., <i>battle-ship, man-of-war.</i>
conspēct-us, -ūs, m., <i>sight, spectacle.</i>	nēmō, acc. nēminem, dat. nēmini (<i>gen. and abl. supplied by nullus</i>), <i>no one.</i>
cre-ō, -āre, <i>create.</i>	redit-us, -ūs, m., <i>return.</i>
culp-a, -ae, f. (<i>culpable</i>), <i>blame.</i>	suppedit-ō, -āre, <i>supply.</i>
exspect-ō, -āre, <i>await.</i>	vestig-i-um, -i, n. (<i>vestige</i>), <i>foot-print, trace, track.</i>
frūment-um, -i, n., <i>corn.</i>	
hōr-a, -ae, f., <i>hour.</i>	
mors, mort-is, f. (<i>mortal</i>), <i>death.</i>	

LESSON 26.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

84. Adjectives have (where their meaning admits of it) in Latin, as in English, three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative. These degrees are generally in Latin, as often in English, denoted by means of suffixes : *e.g.* **longus**, *long* ; **longior**, *longer* ; **longissimus**, *longest*.

There is, however, this difference between the two languages in the use of the degrees of comparison, that whereas in English a standard of comparison is always expressed or distinctly understood (*e.g.* “longer than this,” “longest of all”), in Latin the comparative may denote that the quality exists to a considerable or to an excessive degree, the superlative that it exists to a high degree ; thus **longior** sometimes means *somewhat long* or *too long*, and **longissimus** often means *very long*.

85. GENERAL RULE FOR THE FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

To the **base** of the positive add—

-ior to form the nom. sing. masc. of the comparative ;
-issimus „ „ „ „ superlative.

All comparative adjectives are declined like **longior** (§ 71), and all superlative adjectives are declined like **bonus** (§ 36).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
(Nom.Sing.Masc.)				
longus	<i>long</i>	long-	long-ior	long-issimus
tristis	<i>sad</i>	trist-	trist-ior	trist-issimus
fēlix	<i>fortunate</i>	fēlic-	fēlic-ior	fēlic-issimus
prūdēns	<i>discreet</i>	prūdēt-	prūdēt-ior	prūdēt-issimus

86. IDIOM.

An English attributive adjective which serves not to identify but to describe a person is represented in Latin by a phrase in apposition.

Cicerō, vir illustrissimus, Pater Patriae vocātus est	<i>the illustrious Cicero was called Father of his Country</i>
carmina Horātii, poëtae doctissimi, ab omnibus laudantur	<i>the Odes of the learned poet Horace are praised by all</i>

Obs. 1.—A substantive agrees in **case** with that to which it is in apposition. This is known as the **third concord**.

Obs. 2.—In Latin the superlative is often used (as above), where in English the positive is preferred.

Learn Vocabulary 26, and write down the other two degrees of comparison (nominative singular masculine) of **doctus, dulcior, gravissimus, gratior, ingentior, sapientissimus, splendidus, stultior, tristissimus, utilis**.

VOCABULARY 26.

advers-us -a, -um, adverse.	perniciōs-us, -a, -um, pernicious
rēs adversae, f.pl., adversity (lit. adverse affairs).	dangerous.
altus, -a, -um (altitude), high.	prosper-us, -a, -um, prosperous.
crūdēl-is, -e, cruel.	rēs prosperae, f.pl., prosperity
ēloquentis, gen. eloquent-is, eloquent.	(lit. prosperous affairs).
fāg-us, -i, f., beech.	sagax, gen. sagāc-is, sagacious,
ferr-um, -i, n., iron.	shrewd.

LESSON 27.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

CLASSES OF EXCEPTIONS TO THE ABOVE RULE.

87. I. The superlative of adjectives with nominative singular masculine ending in **-er** is formed by adding **-rimus** to the nominative singular masculine. (The comparative is formed by adding **-ior** to the base according to the rule.)

EXAMPLES.

Positive. (Nom. Sing. Masc.)		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pulcher <i>beautiful</i>		pulchr-	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
tener <i>tender</i>		tener-	tener-ior	tener-rimus
pauper <i>poor</i>		pauper-	pauper-ior	pauper-rimus
acer <i>sharp</i>		acr-	acr-ior	acer-rimus
celer <i>swift</i>		celer-	celer-ior	celer-rimus

Note also—

vetus <i>old</i>	veter-	veter-rimus
-------------------------	---------------	--------------------

88. II. Adjectives ending in **-dicus**, **-ficus**, and **-volus** form their comparative and superlative as if their positive ended in **-dicens** (base, **dīcent-** ; cp. **dicō**, *I say*), **-ficens** (base, **fīcent-** ; cp. **faciō**, *I make*), **-volens** (base, **volent-** ; cp. **volō**, *I will*).

EXAMPLES.

Positive.	Base from which Comp. and Superl. are formed.	Comparative.	Superlative.
maledicus <i>slanderosus</i>	maledīcent-	maledīcent-ior	maledīcent-issimus
magnificus <i>magnificent</i>	magnificent-	magnificent-ior	magnificent-issimus
benevolus <i>benevolent</i>	benevolent-	benevolent-ior	benevolent-issimus

Note also—

egenus <i>needy</i>	egent-	egent-ior	egent-issimus
prōvidus <i>foreseeing</i>	prōvident-	prōvident-ior	prōvident-issimus

89. III. Adjectives with base ending in a vowel (other than **u** in the combination **gu** or **qu**) have no special forms for the comparative or superlative ; the comparative is expressed by **magis**, *more*, and the superlative by **maximē**, *most*, preceding the positive.

EXAMPLES.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
pious	<i>dutiful</i>	pi-	magis pious	maximē pious
arduous	<i>lofty</i>	ardu-	magis arduus	maximē arduus
But—				
pinguis	<i>fat</i>	pingu-	pingu-ior	pingu-issimus
antiquus	<i>ancient</i>	antiqu-	antiqu-ior	antiqu-issimus

Learn Vocabulary 27.

VOCABULARY 27.

antiqu-us, -a, -um (antique), <i>ancient.</i>	inimicitia-a, -ae, f. (inimical), <i>enmity, hostility.</i>
ardu-us, -a, -um (arduous), <i>lofty.</i>	inter, prep. (with acc.), <i>between.</i>
benevol-us, -a, -um , <i>benevolent.</i>	magnific-us, -a, -um , <i>magnificent,</i> <i>distinguished.</i>
cerv-us, -i, m. , <i>stag.</i>	maledic-us, -a, -um , <i>slandorous.</i>
dē, prep. (with abl.), <i>concerning.</i>	pingu-is, -e, fat.
egēn-us, -a, -um , <i>needy.</i>	pi-us, -a, -um , <i>dutiful.</i>
fābul-a, -ae, f. (fable), <i>story.</i>	prōvidens, prōvident-is (provi- dent), <i>foreseeing.</i>
frāter, frātr-is, m. (fraternal), <i>brother.</i>	vetus, gen. veter-is (veteran), <i>old.</i>
Helvēti-a, -ae, f. , <i>Switzerland.</i>	

LESSON 28.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED.

90. I. The following six adjectives form their superlative by adding **-limus** to the base.

Positive.		Base.	Comparative.	Superlative.
facilis	<i>easy</i>	facil-	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficilis	<i>difficult</i>	difficil-	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
similis	<i>like</i>	simil-	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimilis	<i>unlike</i>	dissimil-	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
gracilis	<i>slender</i>	gracil-	gracil-ior	gracil-limus
humilis	<i>low</i>	humil-	humil-ior	humil-limus

Obs.—All other adjectives in **-ilis** form the superlative in the ordinary way; e.g. **fragilis, brittle, fragilissimus.**

91. II. Three indeclinable adjectives are thus compared.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
frūgi	<i>of worth</i>	frūgālior	frūgālissimus
nēquam	<i>worthless</i>	nēquior	nēquissimus
satis	<i>sufficient</i>	satius (n.), <i>preferable</i>	

92. III. The following adjectives have a comparative and superlative not formed from the positive.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus	<i>good</i>	melior	optimus
malus	<i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus
magnus	<i>great</i>	māior	maximus
parvus	<i>small</i>	minor	minimus
dīves	<i>rich</i>	dītiōr	dītissimus
multus	<i>much</i>	plūrēs (pl.)	plūrimus

NOTE.—**Plūrēs** is thus declined.

	M. and F.	N.
N. V. A.	plūrēs	plūra
G.	plūrium	
D. A.	plūribus	

Plūs, *gen. plūris*, *more*, is a neuter substantive; the dative and ablative are not in use. **Plūs** is also used as an adverb.

93. RULE.—**Similis**, *like*, and **dissimilis**, *unlike*, are used with a genitive or dative of that which the person or thing they refer to is like or unlike.

nihil est mortī tam simile *nothing is so like death as sleep*
quam somnus

NOTE.—Instead of **mortī** above **mortis** might stand.

Learn Vocabulary 28.

VOCABULARY 28.

adulātiō , adulātiōn-is , <i>f.</i> , <i>flattery</i>	nēquam , indeclinable, <i>worthless</i> .
amor , amōr-is , <i>m.</i> , <i>lovē</i> .	opt-ō , -āre (option), <i>wish for</i> .
Catilin-a , -ae , <i>m.</i> , <i>Catilina</i> (a Roman noble who conspired against the state).	plēn-us , -a , -um , <i>full</i> .
difficil-is , -e , <i>difficult</i> .	recit-ō , -āre , <i>recite, read aloud</i> .
dissimil-is , -e (dissimilar), <i>unlike</i> .	senectūs , senectūt-is , <i>f.</i> , <i>old age</i> .
gracil-is , -e , <i>slender</i> .	simil-is , -e , (similar), <i>like</i> .
	timor , timōr-is , <i>m.</i> (timorous), <i>fear</i> .

LESSON 29.

ADJECTIVES IRREGULARLY COMPARED (*continued*).

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 67.

94. IV. The following adjectives have no positive degree.

(Cp. <i>iuvenis</i> , young man)	<i>iūnior</i>	<i>younger</i>	(<i>nātū minimus</i>)
	<i>ōcior</i>	<i>swifter</i>	<i>ōcissimus</i>
(Cp. <i>senex</i> , old man)	<i>senior</i>	<i>older</i>	(<i>nātū maximus</i>)

Obs.—*Nātū* is ablative, and is a substantive used only in that case and denoting *birth*. Hence *nātū minimus*, *nātū maximus*, mean respectively *least* and *greatest by birth*.

95. V. The following adjectives, derived from adverbs, are irregularly compared :—

Adverb.	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>citrā</i> , on this side	—	<i>citerior</i> , nearer, <i>hither</i>	<i>citimus</i>
<i>dē</i> , down	—	<i>dēterior</i> , worse	<i>dētērrimus</i>
<i>extrā</i> , outside	(<i>exterus</i>)	<i>exterior</i> , outer	{ <i>extrēmus</i> <i>extimus</i>
<i>infrā</i> , below	<i>inferus</i> , lower	<i>inferior</i>	<i>infimus</i> or <i>imus</i>
<i>intrā</i> , within	—	<i>interior</i> , inner	<i>intimus</i>
<i>post</i> , after	(<i>posterus</i>)	<i>posterior</i> , later	{ <i>postrēmus</i> , last <i>postumus</i> , last-
<i>prae</i> , before	—	<i>prior</i> , former	<i>primus</i> [born
<i>prope</i> , near	—	<i>propior</i> , nearer	<i>proximus</i>
<i>suprā</i> , above	<i>superus</i> , upper	<i>superior</i> , higher, <i>previous</i>	{ <i>suprēmus</i> , highest, <i>last</i> <i>summus</i> , highest
<i>ultrā</i> , beyond	—	<i>ulterior</i> , farther, <i>remoter</i>	<i>ultimus</i> , farthest, <i>last, remotest</i>

NOTE.—*Exterus* and *posterus* are regularly declined throughout, all forms except the nominative singular masculine being in use.

96. RULE.—Some **adjectives**, instead of qualifying as a whole the substantives of which they are the attributes, often **specify certain parts** of the persons or things denoted by those substantives. The adjectives commonly so used are :—

<i>primus</i> , first	<i>medius</i> , middle	<i>extrēmus</i> , last
<i>summus</i> , highest	<i>infimus</i> or <i>imus</i> , } lowest	<i>reliquus</i> , remaining

They are commonly rendered by English substantives, thus : **primum vēr**, *the beginning of spring* ; **media urbs**, *the middle of the city* ; **extrēma ōrātiō**, *the end of the speech* ; **summus mons**, *the top of the mountain* ; **infima āra**, *the lowest part of the altar* ; **reliqua praeda**, *the rest of the booty*.

Learn Vocabulary 29.

VOCABULARY 29.

ad , prep. (with acc.), <i>to, until</i> .	Hispāni-a , -ae, <i>f., Spain</i> .
aetās , aetāt-is , <i>f., generation, age</i> .	mūr-us , -i, <i>m. (mural), wall</i> .
bon-um , -i, <i>n., good</i> .	oppugn-ō , -āre, <i>besiege</i> .
Britanni-a , -ae, <i>f., Britain</i> .	pars , part-is , <i>f., part</i> .
Catō , Catōn-is , <i>m., Cato</i> (a celebrated Roman).	prōvinci-a , -ae, <i>f., province</i> .
cottidiē , <i>adv., daily</i> .	sacerdōs , sacerdōt-is , <i>c., priest, priestess</i> .
	vēr , vēr-is , <i>n. (vernal), spring</i> .

LESSON 30.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

97. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, **ego** and **tū**, are substantival and of common gender. They are thus declined :—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> ego , <i>I</i>	nōs , <i>we</i>
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs
<i>Gen.</i> meī	{ nostrī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi or mihi	{ nostrum (partitive*)
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs
	nōbīs
Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> tū , <i>thou or you</i>	vōs , <i>ye or you</i>
<i>Acc.</i> tē	vōs
<i>Gen.</i> tui	{ vestrī
<i>Dat.</i> tibi or tibi	{ vestrum (partitive*)
<i>Abl.</i> tē	vōbīs
	vōbīs

* *I.e.* dependent on a word implying *part*, *e.g.* **multī nostrum**, *many of us*.

98. There is in Latin no pronoun of the third person exactly corresponding to the English *he, she, it*; but its place can when necessary be supplied by one of the Demonstratives (Lesson 32).

PERSONAL PRONOUNS—REFLEXIVES.

99. The personal pronouns of the first and second person serve as reflexives; *e.g. mē culpō, I blame myself.*

For the third person reflexive there is a special form, viz. *sē, himself, herself, itself, themselves*, which is thus declined for both numbers and all genders:—

Singular and Plural.

Acc. sē or sēsē

Gen. suī

Dat. sibi or sibi

Abl. sē or sēsē

100. RULE.—The nominative of the personal pronoun is used when it is emphatic or when a contrast is expressed.

ego saltō, tū natās

I am dancing, you are swimming

101. RULE.—A **composite subject** (*i.e.* a subject consisting of two or more substantives or pronouns) has its **verb in the plural**; and if the members of the composite subject are of different persons, the verb agrees with the “**prior**” person, the first person being reckoned prior to the second, and the second to the third.

ego et Marcus errāmus

Marcus and I are wrong

tū et Tullia errātis

you and Tullia are wrong

Learn Vocabulary 30.

VOCABULARY 30.

amic-us, -a, -um, friendly.

argent-um, -i, n., silver, money.

cār-us, -a, -um, dear.

condemn-ō, -āre, condemn.

expugn-ō, -āre, storm, take by

improb-us, -a, -um, dishonourable.

natō, -āre (natation), swim.

nōt-us, -a, -um, known, well known.

LESSON 31.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

102. These are formed from the personal and reflexive pronouns, singular and plural :—

From Singular Pronouns.
meus, mea, meum, my.
tuus, tua, tuum, thy.
suus, sua, suum, his, her, its.

From Plural Pronouns.
noster, nostra, nostrum, our.
vester, vestra, vestrum, your.
suus, sua, suum, their.

NOTE.—When the above adjectives are used otherwise than as attributes, they are rendered by *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, instead of by *my, thy, her, our, your, their*.

103. **Meus, tuus**, and **suus** are declined like **bonus**, except that **meus** has vocative singular masculine **mī** ; **noster** and **vester** are declined like **niger** (§ 36).

104. **Suus**, being formed from the reflexive **sē**, is generally used (except, of course, in the nominative) of something belonging to the subject of the sentence. Hence, if *his* in a principal sentence refers to something belonging to the subject of the sentence, we must render it by **su-us, -a, -um** ; otherwise we must use **ēius** (genitive of **is, ea, id**, § 110) ; e.g. **Patrem suum necāvit**, *He killed his (own) father* ; **Patrem ēius necāvit**, *He killed his (someone else's) father*.

105. RULE.—Verbs and adjectives denoting **nearness** or **approach** are often constructed with a **dative**.

oppidō appropinquāmus
Belgae proximī sunt Ger-
mānīs

we are approaching a town
the Belgae are nearest to the
Germani

Learn Vocabulary 31.

VOCABULARY 31.

aes, aer-is, n., bronze, money.
aliēn-us, -a, -um (alien), be-
longing to another.
aes aliēnum, n., debt.
appropinqu-ō, āre, approach.
fām-a, -ae, f., fame, rumour,
report.
glauc-us, -a, -um, gray.

inimīc-us, -a, -um, hostile.
liber-ō, -āre, free.
marit-us, ī, m. (marital), husband.
nox, noct-is f. (nocturnal), night.
Poen-us, -a, -um (Punic).
Carthaginian.
studi-um, -ī, n., pursuit, study.
Vergīnī-us, -ī, m., Verginius.

LESSON 32.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

106. The demonstrative pronouns are those given below and in Lesson 33.

(1) **hic** (or **hic**), **haec**, **hōc**, *this* ; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the speaker.

(2) **iste**, **ista**, **istud**, *that (of yours)* ; used of that which belongs to, or is near, the person spoken to.

(3) **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, *that (yonder)* used of that which belongs to, or is near, neither the speaker nor the person spoken to.

107. The above pronouns are thus declined.

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	hic or hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec	
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec	
<i>Gen.</i>		hūius		hōrum	hārum	hōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>		huic			his		
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc		his		

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista	
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista	
<i>Gen.</i>		istius		istōrum	istārum	istōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>		istī			istīs		
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō		istīs		

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa	
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa	
<i>Gen.</i>		illius		illōrum	illārum	illōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>		illi			illis		
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō		illis		

108. The Latin demonstrative pronouns are used both substantivally and adjectivally, just as in English we may say either "this (*substantival*) is true," or "this (*adjectival*) statement is true."

109. RULE.—The ablative of a substantive *accompanied by an adjective* often forms an adjectival phrase known as the **ablative of description**.

**Catilina fuit ingeniō malō
prāvōque**

*Catilina was (a man) of an evil
and corrupt disposition*

Learn Vocabulary 32.

VOCABULARY 32.

eximi-us, -a, -um, *extraordinary, remarkable.*

Graec-us, -a, -um, *Greek.*

ingeni-um, -i, n., *genius, ability, disposition.*

iuven-is, -is, m. (*juvenile*), *young man.*

magnopere, *adv., greatly.*

mens-a, -ae, f., *table.*

mox, *adv., soon.*

pōcul-um, -i, n., *cup,*

prāv-us, -a, -um (*depraved*), *corrupt.*

tant-us, -a, -um (*tantamount*), *so great.*

uxor, uxōr-is, f. (*uxorious*), *wife.*

LESSON 33.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (*continued*).

110. The remaining demonstrative pronouns are—

(4) **is, ea, id, that** ; used of what has just been mentioned, and (when used substantivally) often to be translated *he, she, it*.

NOTE.—**Idem, eadem, idem,** *the same*, is formed from **is, ea, id**, and the particle **-dem**. Its declension is given in full after that of **is** on p. 54.

(5) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** *self*, or *himself, herself, itself*.

NOTE.—**Ipse** has a superlative form **ipsissim-us, -a, -um,** *very self*, declined like **bonus** (§ 36).

LESSON 34.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

113. The relative pronouns are three in number, viz. :—

Qui, quae, quod, *who, which, that* (generally substantival) ;

Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever* (substantival or adjectival) ;

Quisquis, quidquid, *whoever, whatever* (substantival or adjectival).

114.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui			quibus	
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō		quibus	

115. In the declension of **quicumque** the ending **-cumque** is invariable, and the first part of the word is declined like the simple relative **quī**, *e.g.* :—

	M.	F.	N.
Sing. nom.	quicumque	quaecumque	quodcumque
„ acc.	quemcumque	quamcumque	quodcumque
	etc.	etc.	etc.

116. Of **quisquis** the only forms in common use are :—

Sing. nom. masc.	quisquis , neut. quidquid or quicquid
„ abl. masc. and neut.	quōquō .

117. The word denoting that to which a relative pronoun *relates* or *refers* is called the antecedent. The relative is regularly of the same **gender** and **number** and **person** as its antecedent, but its **case** is determined by its own clause.

sōl, quī terrārum flammis *sun, that visitest with thy beams*
opera omnia lustrās *all the actions of the world*

Obs.—In the above example **sōl** is a masculine substantive in the vocative singular and of the second person ; the relative **quī** is the subject of its clause and is therefore nominative, but its gender (masculine), number (singular), and person (second) are determined by its antecedent **sōl**.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

118. The interrogative pronoun is **quis, quae, quid, who?** *which? what?* It is used both substantivally and adjectivally, except in the forms **quī** (nominative singular masculine) and **quod** (nominative and accusative singular neuter), which are adjectival only.

Examples : **quis venit?** *who is coming?* (substantival).

quī miles venit? *what soldier is coming?* (adjectival).

quid vidēs? *what do you see?* (substantival).

quod animal vidēs? *what animal do you see?* (adjectival).

Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	{ quis }		quī	quae	quae
	{ quī }	quae			
Acc.	quem	quam	quōs	quās	quae
		{ quod }	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Gen.		cūius		quibus	
Dat.		cui		quibus	
Abl.	quō	quā		quibus	
		quō			

Obs.—Except in the forms **quis, quid**, the interrogative pronoun is identical with the relative.

NOTE 1.—**Quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, who, pray? what, pray?** is an emphatic interrogative formed by adding the invariable particle **-nam** to the simple interrogative.

NOTE 2.—*Which (of the two)?* is expressed by **uter** (§ 81).

Learn Vocabulary 34.

VOCABULARY 34.

fals-us, -a, -um, false.

immortāl-is, -e, immortal.

molest-us, -a, -um, troublesome, burdensome, annoying.

redintegr-ō, -āre, renew.

umquam, adv., ever.

LESSON 35.

This Lesson may be omitted until after Lesson 64.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

119. The indefinite pronouns are **quis**, **qua**, **quid**, *any*, and its compounds. Like the interrogative, the indefinite **quis** has the adjectival forms **quī** (nominative singular masculine) and **quod** (nominative and accusative singular neuter).

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i> { quis } { quī }	qua	{ quid } { quod }	quī	quae	qua
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	{ quid } { quod }	quōs	quās	qua
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui			quibus	
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō		quibus	

Obs. 1.—Except in the nominative singular feminine and the nominative and accusative plural neuter, the indefinite **quis** is identical with the interrogative.

Obs. 2.—**Quis** is most commonly used after **sī**, *if*; **nisi**, *unless*; **nē**, *lest* (§§ 198, 235); **num** (§ 153).

120. Three indefinite pronouns refer to *all* the individuals belonging to a class, taken one by one :—

quisque, *each*; **quīlibet**,¹ *any you please, any*;
quīvis,² *any you will, any*.

121. Indefinite pronouns referring in the singular to a single individual and in the plural to several are :—

quīdam, *a certain one*; **aliquis**, *some one*.

Obs.—The force of **aliquis** is best remembered by means of a word which is often used instead of **aliquis**, viz. **nonnullus** (lit. *not none*).

122. A negative or a comparative commonly precedes

quisquam, *any*.

Obs.—**Quisquam**, unlike the other indefinite pronouns, is substantive only; its adjectival equivalent is **ullus** (§ 81).

¹ **libet** = *it pleases*, § 268.

² **vis** = *you will*, § 254.

123. **Quidam** is declined thus :—

	M.	Singular. F.	N.	M.	Plural. F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	{ quiddam quoddam }	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemdam	quamdam	{ quiddam quoddam }	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>		cūiusdam		quōrumdam	quārumdam	quōrumdam
<i>Dat.</i>		cuidam			quibusdam	
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam		quibusdam	

124. **Quilibet** and **quīvis** are declined like **quidam**, the endings **-libet** and **-vis** remaining unchanged throughout.

125. **Quisquam** is thus declined in the singular (the plural is not in use) :—

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quaequam	quidquam or quicquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quamquam	quidquam
<i>Gen.</i>		cūiusquam	
<i>Dat.</i>		cuiquam	
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quāquam	quōquam

126. **Quisque** is declined like **quisquam**, and has also in the nominative and accusative singular neuter the adjectival form **quodque**.

127. The declension of **aliquis** (adjectival **aliqui**) is the same as that of the indefinite **quis**, except that the nominative singular feminine **aliqua** is adjectival only.

128. The following examples illustrate the use of these indefinite pronouns :—

sī quis fortiter pugnāt, laudātur	<i>if any one fights bravely, he is praised</i>
quisque facta sua narrābat	<i>each man was telling of his own deeds</i>
praedam aliquam ex illā pugnā comparāverunt	<i>they got some booty from that battle</i>
puella quaedam mihi haec narrāvit	<i>a certain girl told me this</i>
nec quisquam eā arte nōs superābit	<i>nor will any one excel us in that art</i>

Learn Vocabulary 35 (p. 59).

VOCABULARY 35.

bon-a, -ōrum, n.pl., goods, property.	nec, conj., nor, and . . . not.
condiciō, condiciōn-is, f., condition; pl. terms.	pax, pāc-is, f., peace.
hūc, adv., hither.	rog-ō, -āre (interrogative), ask.
	si, conj., if.
	super-ō, -āre, overcome, excel.

LESSON 36.

Learn the conjugation of **sum**, pp. 62, 63.

This verb, though irregular, is given before the regular verbs, as it serves as an auxiliary in the conjugation of the latter.

The only meanings of the subjunctive of **sum** which are to be learnt now are those given in this Lesson (§ 130); the meanings on p. 63 will be explained later on.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

129. The usages of the subjunctive are very various and cannot all be mastered at once. The present Lesson deals only with wishes, exhortations, and commands.

WISHES.

130. In the expression of wishes the subjunctive is usually introduced by **utinam**, *O would that . . . !* Three tenses are used, the present tense expressing a wish with regard to the future, the imperfect tense expressing a wish with regard to the present, the pluperfect tense expressing a wish with regard to the past.

sim,	<i>would that I might be</i>	simus,	<i>would that we might be</i>
sis,	<i>would that thou might- est be</i>	sītis,	<i>would that ye might be</i>
sit,	<i>would that he might be</i>	sint,	<i>would that they might be</i>
essem,	<i>would that I were</i>	essēmus,	<i>would that we were</i>
essēs,	<i>would that thou wert</i>	essētis,	<i>would that ye were</i>
esset,	<i>would that he were</i>	essent,	<i>would that they were</i>
fuissem,	<i>would that I had been</i>	fuissēmus,	<i>would that we had been</i>
fuissēs,	<i>would that thou hadst been</i>	fuissētis,	<i>would that ye had been</i>
fuisset,	<i>would that he had been</i>	fuissent,	<i>would that they had been</i>

EXHORTATIONS AND COMMANDS.

*let him be**simus,
sint,**let us be
let them be*

131. In wishes, exhortations, and commands, *not* is expressed by *nē*.

132. Exhortations and commands in the second person are expressed by the imperative, except that in the case of prohibitions (*i.e.* negative exhortations and commands) *nē* and the present imperative cannot be used in prose, but *nōlī* (singular) or *nōlīte* (plural) with the present infinitive is substituted; *e.g.* *nōlī ignāvus esse* or *nōlīte ignāvi esse*, *do not be cowardly*, *lit. be unwilling* (§ 254) *to be cowardly*.

133. The present imperative is the tense generally used in affirmative commands; the future imperative is characteristic of the formal language of laws and treaties.

Learn Vocabulary 36.

VOCABULARY 36.

cupid-us, -a, -um (cupidity), <i>greedy (of), desirous (of).</i>	prōditor, prōditōr-is, m., traitor, <i>betrayed.</i>
glōriōs-us, -a, -um, boastful.	quondam, adv., formerly.
ignāv-us, -a, -um, indolent, <i>cowardly.</i>	tāl-is, -e, such, of such a kind.
loquax, gen. loquāc-is, loqua- <i>cious, talkative.</i>	temerāri-us, -a, -um, rash.
Lutēti-a, -ae, f., a town, now <i>Paris.</i>	vāt-ēs, -is, c. (gen. pl. vātum), <i>prophet.</i>
mendax, gen. mendāc-is, men- <i>dacious, untruthful.</i>	vēr-us, -a, -um (verity), true.

Lesson 37 will be found on p. 86.

REMARKS ON THE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

134. A Latin verb is conjugated by endings added to one or other of its **three bases**, viz. the present base, the perfect base, and the supine base.

From the **present base** are formed the present infinitive active and passive, the present participle active, and the present, imperfect, and future in finite moods, active and passive ; also the gerund and gerundive.

From the **perfect base** are formed the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active.

From the **supine base** are formed the supines, future participle active, and perfect participle passive, including, of course, the tenses of the verb conjugated with the help of these forms.

135. The present base is ascertained by cutting off the ending of the present infinitive active. This in the 1st conjugation is **-āre**, thus : **am-ō**, infinitive **am-āre**, present base **am-**.

The perfect base is found by cutting off **-ī** from the 1st person singular perfect indicative active, thus : **amō**, perfect **amāvī**, perfect base **amāv-**.

The supine base is found by cutting off **-um** from the accusative supine, thus : **amō**, supine **amātum**, supine base **amāt-**.

The endings which are to be added to these bases are shown in the Table of Conjugations (pp. 64-81).

136. In the 1st conjugation the perfect base is nearly always formed by the addition of **-āv-** to the present base, and the supine base by adding **-āt-** to the present base. This rule may be assumed to hold good in all verbs of the 1st conjugation in the vocabularies, unless the perfect and supine are there given.

137. The above mentioned four forms—present indicative active (1st person singular), present infinitive active, perfect indicative active (1st person singular), and accusative supine—are known as the **principal parts** of a verb. In the 2nd and 4th conjugations (as in the 1st), most verbs form these principal parts like the model verbs given in §§ 139, 140, 142. In the 3rd conjugation the principal parts have to be learned for each verb separately.

§ 138. THE VERB **SUM**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS (§ 137): **sum, esse, fu-ī**, (*no supine*).

PARTICIPLES * { PRESENT: *none*
 { FUTURE: **futūrus, futūra, futurum**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

sum,	<i>I am</i>		sumus,	<i>we are</i>
es,	<i>thou art</i>		estis,	<i>ye are</i>
est,	<i>he is</i>		sunt,	<i>they are</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

eram,	<i>I was</i>		erāmus,	<i>we were</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast</i>		erātis,	<i>ye were</i>
erat,	<i>he was</i>		erant,	<i>they were</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

erō,	<i>I shall be</i>	erimus,	<i>we shall be</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>	eritis,	<i>ye will be</i>
erit,	<i>he will be</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

fu-ī,	<i>I was or I have been</i>	fu-imus,	<i>we were or we have been</i>
fu-istī,	<i>thou wast or thou hast</i>	fu-istis,	<i>ye were or ye have been</i>
	<i>been</i>	fu-ērunt	} <i>they were or they</i>
fu-it,	<i>he was or he has been</i>	<i>or fu-ēre</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

fu-eram,	<i>I had been</i>	fu-erāmus,	<i>we had been</i>
fu-erās,	<i>thou hadst been</i>	fu-erātis,	<i>ye had been</i>
fu-erat,	<i>he had been</i>	fu-erant,	<i>they had been</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

fu-erō,	<i>I shall have been</i>	fu-erimus,	<i>we shall have been</i>
fu-eris,	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	fu-eritis,	<i>ye will have been</i>
fu-erit,	<i>he will have been</i>	fu-erint,	<i>they will have been</i>

* In this and other tables of the conjugation of verbs the participles are given first, as some parts of the verb are formed by means of a participle and the auxiliary.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>sim,</i>	<i>I should be</i>	} <i>(if) I were to be</i> <i>(in order that) I may be</i> <i>(so that) I am</i> <i>(although) I am</i>
<i>sis,</i>	<i>thou wouldst be</i>	
<i>sit,</i>	<i>he would be</i>	
<i>simus,</i>	<i>we should be</i>	
<i>sitis,</i>	<i>ye would be</i>	
<i>sint,</i>	<i>they would be</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>essem or forem,</i>	<i>I should be</i>	} <i>(if) I were</i> <i>(in order that) I might be</i> <i>(so that) I was</i> <i>(when, although, etc.) I was</i>
<i>essēs or forēs,</i>	<i>thou wouldst be</i>	
<i>esset or foret,</i>	<i>he would be</i>	
<i>essēmus or forēmus</i> }	<i>we should be</i>	
<i>essētis or forētis</i> }	<i>ye would be</i>	
<i>essent or forent,</i>	<i>they would be</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>fu-erim</i>	} <i>rare in principal sentences</i>	} <i>(if) I were to have been</i> <i>(so that) I was or have been</i> <i>(although) I have been</i>
<i>fu-eris</i>		
<i>fu-erit</i>		
<i>fu-erimus</i>		
<i>fu-eritis</i>		
<i>fu-erint</i>		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>fu-issem,</i>	<i>I should have been</i>	} <i>(if) I had been</i> <i>(when, although, etc.) I had been</i>
<i>fu-issēs,</i>	<i>thou wouldst have been</i>	
<i>fu-isset,</i>	<i>he would have been</i>	
<i>fu-issēmus,</i>	<i>we should have been</i>	
<i>fu-issētis,</i>	<i>ye would have been</i>	
<i>fu-issent,</i>	<i>they would have been</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>es,</i>	<i>be (thou)</i>	<i>este,</i>	<i>be (ye)</i>
FUTURE TENSE.			
<i>estō,</i>	<i>thou shalt or must be</i>	<i>estōte,</i>	<i>ye shall or must be</i>
<i>estō,</i>	<i>he shall or must be</i>	<i>suntō,</i>	<i>they shall or must be</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	<i>esse, to be</i>
PERFECT :	<i>fu-isse, to have been</i>
FUTURE :	<i>fore or futūr-us esse,</i> <i>to be about to be</i>

GERUND.

None.

SUPINE.

None.

For compounds of **sum** see § 248.

§ 139. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL : amō, *I love, I like.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : am-āre, amāv-ī, amāt-um.

BASES : am- (present) ; amāv- (perfect) ; amāt- (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT : am-ans (gen. amant-is), *loving*
 FUTURE : amāt-ūrus, amāt-ūra, amāt-ūrum, *about to love*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ō,	<i>I love</i>	am-āmus,	<i>we love</i>
am-ās,	<i>thou lovest</i>	am-ātis,	<i>ye love</i>
am-at,	<i>he loves</i>	am-ant,	<i>they love</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ābam,	<i>I was loving</i>	am-ābāmus,	<i>we were loving</i>
am-ābās,	<i>thou wast loving</i>	am-ābātis,	<i>ye were loving</i>
am-ābat,	<i>he was loving</i>	am-ābant,	<i>they were loving</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ābō,	<i>I shall love</i>	am-ābimus,	<i>we shall love</i>
am-ābis,	<i>thou wilt love</i>	am-ābitis,	<i>ye will love</i>
am-ābit,	<i>he will love</i>	am-ābunt,	<i>they will love</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-ī,	<i>I loved or have loved</i>	amāv-imus,	<i>we loved or have loved</i>
amāv-istī,	<i>thou lovedst or hast loved</i>	amāv-istis,	<i>ye loved or have loved</i>
amāv-it,	<i>he loved or has loved</i>	amāv-ērunt or amāv-ēre	<i>they loved or have loved</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-eram,	<i>I had loved</i>	amāv-erāmus,	<i>we had loved</i>
amāv-erās,	<i>thou hadst loved</i>	amāv-erātis,	<i>ye had loved</i>
amāv-erat,	<i>he had loved</i>	amāv-erant,	<i>they had loved</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erō,	<i>I shall have loved</i>	amāv-erimus,	<i>we shall have loved</i>
amāv-eris,	<i>thou wilt have loved</i>	amāv-eritis,	<i>ye will have loved</i>
amāv-erit,	<i>he will have loved</i>	amāv-erint,	<i>they will have loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-em,	<i>I should love</i>	
am-es,	<i>thou wouldst love</i>	(if) <i>I were to love</i>
am-et,	<i>he would love</i>	(in order that) <i>I may love</i>
am-ēmus,	<i>we should love</i>	(so that) <i>I love</i>
am-ētis,	<i>ye would love</i>	(although) <i>I love</i>
am-ent,	<i>they would love</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ārem,	<i>I should be loving</i>	(if) <i>I were loving</i>
am-ārēs,	<i>thou wouldst be loving</i>	(in order that) <i>I might love</i>
am-āret,	<i>he would be loving</i>	(so that) <i>I loved</i>
am-ārēmus,	<i>we should be loving</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I was loving</i>
am-ārētis,	<i>ye would be loving</i>	
am-ārent,	<i>they would be loving</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

amāv-erim		{ (if) <i>I were to have loved</i> (so that) <i>I loved or have loved</i> (although) <i>I have loved</i>
amāv-eris		
amāv-erit	rare in principal sentences	
amāv-erimus		
amāv-eritis		
amāv-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amāv-issem,	<i>I should have loved</i>	
amāv-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved</i>	(if) <i>I had loved</i>
amāv-isset,	<i>he would have loved</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I had loved</i>
amāv-issēmus,	<i>we should have loved</i>	
amāv-issētis,	<i>ye would have loved</i>	
amāv-issent,	<i>they would have loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-ā,	<i>love (thou)</i>	am-āte,	<i>love (ye)</i>
--------------	--------------------	----------------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

am-ātō,	<i>thou shalt or must love</i>	am-ātōte,	<i>ye shall or must love</i>
am-ātō,	<i>he shall or must love</i>	am-antō,	<i>they shall or must love</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT : am-āre, <i>to love</i>	(Nom. am-andum)
PERFECT : amāv-isse, <i>to have loved</i>	Acc. am-andum, <i>loving</i>
	Gen. am-andi
FUTURE : amātūr-us esse, <i>to be about to love</i>	Dat. am-andō
	Abl. am-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. amāt-um, <i>to love</i>	Abl. amāt-ū, <i>in loving</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

§ 140. SECOND (OR **E**) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.MODEL: **moneō**, *I advise*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **mon-ēre**, **monu-ī**, **monit-um**.BASES: **mon-** (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES	{	PRESENT: mon-ens (gen. monentis), <i>advising</i>
		FUTURE: monit-ūrus , monit-ūra , monit-ūrum , <i>about to advise</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eō ,	<i>I advise</i>	mon-ēmus ,	<i>we advise</i>
mon-ēs ,	<i>thou advisest</i>	mon-ētis ,	<i>ye advise</i>
mon-et ,	<i>he advises</i>	mon-ent ,	<i>they advise</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbam ,	<i>I was advising</i>	mon-ēbāmus ,	<i>we were advising</i>
mon-ēbās ,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	mon-ēbātis ,	<i>ye were advising</i>
mon-ēbat ,	<i>he was advising</i>	mon-ēbant ,	<i>they were advising</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbō ,	<i>I shall advise</i>	mon-ēbimus ,	<i>we shall advise</i>
mon-ēbis ,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	mon-ēbitis ,	<i>ye will advise</i>
mon-ēbit ,	<i>he will advise</i>	mon-ēbunt ,	<i>they will advise</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-ī ,	<i>I advised or have advised</i>	monu-imus ,	<i>we advised or have advised</i>
monu-istī ,	<i>thou advisedst or hast advised</i>	monu-istis ,	<i>ye advised or have advised</i>
monu-it ,	<i>he advised or has advised</i>	monu-ērunt } <i>they advised or</i> or monu-ēre } <i>have advised</i>	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-eram ,	<i>I had advised</i>	monu-erāmus ,	<i>we had advised</i>
monu-erās ,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	monu-erātis ,	<i>ye had advised</i>
monu-erat ,	<i>he had advised</i>	monu-erant ,	<i>they had advised</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erō ,	<i>I shall have advised</i>	monu-erimus ,	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have advised</i>
monu-eris ,	<i>thou wilt have advised</i>	monu-eritis ,	<i>ye will</i>	
monu-erit ,	<i>he will have advised</i>	monu-erint ,	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. (See §§ 121, 147.)

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eam,	<i>I should advise</i>	(if) <i>I were to advise</i>
mon-eās,	<i>thou wouldst advise</i>	(in order that) <i>I may</i>
mon-eat,	<i>he would advise</i>	<i>advise</i>
mon-eāmus,	<i>we should advise</i>	(so that) <i>I advise</i>
mon-eātis,	<i>ye would advise</i>	(although) <i>I advise</i>
mon-eant,	<i>they would advise</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērem,	<i>I should be advising</i>	(if) <i>I were advising</i>
mon-ērēs,	<i>thou wouldst be advising</i>	(in order that) <i>I might</i>
mon-ēret,	<i>he would be advising</i>	<i>advise</i>
mon-ērēmus,	<i>we should be advising</i>	(so that) <i>I advised</i>
mon-ērētis,	<i>ye would be advising</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
mon-ērent,	<i>they would be advising</i>	<i>was advising</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

monu-erim		(if) <i>I were to have ad-</i>
monu-eris		<i>vised</i>
monu-erit	rare in principal	(so that) <i>I advised or</i>
monu-erimus	sentences	<i>have advised</i>
monu-eritis		(although) <i>I have advised</i>
monu-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monu-issem,	<i>I should have advised</i>	
monu-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have advised</i>	(if) <i>I had advised</i>
monu-isset,	<i>he would have advised</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
monu-issēmus,	<i>we should have advised</i>	<i>had advised</i>
monu-issētis,	<i>ye would have advised</i>	
monu-issent,	<i>they would have advised</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ē,	<i>advise (thou)</i>	mon-ēte,	<i>advise (ye)</i>
---------------	----------------------	-----------------	--------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētō,	<i>thou shalt or must advise</i>	mon-ētōte,	<i>ye shall or must advise</i>
mon-ētō,	<i>he shall or must advise</i>	mon-entō,	<i>they shall or must advise</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT: mon-ēre,	<i>to advise</i>	(Nom. mon-endum)
PERFECT: monu-isse,	<i>to have</i>	Acc. mon-endum,
	<i>advised</i>	<i>advising</i>
FUTURE: monitū-	<i>to be</i>	Gen. mon-endī
	<i>about to advise</i>	Dat. mon-endō
		Abl. mon-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. monit-um,	<i>to advise</i>	Abl. monit-ū,	<i>in advising</i>
-----------------------	------------------	----------------------	--------------------

§ 141. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *regō, I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *reg-ere, rex-ī, rect-um.*

BASES: *reg-* (present); *rex-* (perfect); *rect-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: *reg-ens* (gen. *regent-is*), *ruling*
FUTURE: *rect-ūrus, rect-ūra, rect-ūrum*, *about to rule*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>reg-ō,</i>	<i>I rule</i>	<i>reg-imus,</i>	<i>we rule</i>
<i>reg-is,</i>	<i>thou rulest</i>	<i>reg-itis,</i>	<i>ye rule</i>
<i>reg-it,</i>	<i>he rules</i>	<i>reg-unt,</i>	<i>they rule</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>reg-ēbam,</i>	<i>I was ruling</i>	<i>reg-ēbāmus,</i>	<i>we were ruling</i>
<i>reg-ēbās,</i>	<i>thou wast ruling</i>	<i>reg-ēbātis,</i>	<i>ye were ruling</i>
<i>reg-ēbat,</i>	<i>he was ruling</i>	<i>reg-ēbant,</i>	<i>they were ruling</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>reg-am,</i>	<i>I shall rule</i>	<i>reg-ēmus,</i>	<i>we shall rule</i>
<i>reg-ēs,</i>	<i>thou wilt rule</i>	<i>reg-ētis,</i>	<i>ye will rule</i>
<i>reg-et,</i>	<i>he will rule</i>	<i>reg-ent,</i>	<i>they will rule</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rex-ī,</i>	<i>I ruled or have ruled</i>	<i>rex-imus,</i>	<i>we ruled or have ruled</i>
<i>rex-istī,</i>	<i>thou ruledst or hast ruled</i>	<i>rex-istis,</i>	<i>ye ruled or have ruled</i>
<i>rex-it,</i>	<i>he ruled or has ruled</i>	<i>rex-ērunt</i> <i>or rex-ēre</i>	<i>they ruled or have ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>rex-eram,</i>	<i>I had ruled</i>	<i>rex-erāmus,</i>	<i>we had ruled</i>
<i>rex-erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	<i>rex-erātis,</i>	<i>ye had ruled</i>
<i>rex-erat,</i>	<i>he had ruled</i>	<i>rex-erant,</i>	<i>they had ruled</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rex-erō,</i>	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	<i>rex-erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have ruled</i>
<i>rex-eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	<i>rex-eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
<i>rex-erit,</i>	<i>he will have ruled</i>	<i>rex-erint,</i>	<i>they will have ruled</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-am,	<i>I should rule</i>	
reg-ās,	<i>thou wouldst rule</i>	(if) <i>I were to rule</i>
reg-at,	<i>he would rule</i>	(in order that) <i>I may</i>
reg-āmus,	<i>we should rule</i>	<i>rule</i>
reg-ātis,	<i>ye would rule</i>	(so that) <i>I rule</i>
reg-ant,	<i>they would rule</i>	(although) <i>I rule</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erem,	<i>I should be ruling</i>	(if) <i>I were ruling</i>
reg-erēs,	<i>thou wouldst be ruling</i>	(in order that) <i>I might</i>
reg-eret,	<i>he would be ruling</i>	<i>rule</i>
reg-erēmus,	<i>we should be ruling</i>	(so that) <i>I ruled</i>
reg-erētis,	<i>ye would be ruling</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
reg-erent,	<i>they would be ruling</i>	<i>was ruling</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

rex-erim		(if) <i>I were to have ruled</i>
rex-eris		(so that) <i>I ruled or have</i>
rex-erit	rare in principal	<i>ruled</i>
rex-erimus	sentences	(although) <i>I have ruled</i>
rex-eritis		
rex-erint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rex-issem,	<i>I should have ruled</i>	
rex-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have ruled</i>	
rex-isset,	<i>he would have ruled</i>	(if) <i>I had ruled</i>
rex-issēmus,	<i>we should have ruled</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I</i>
rex-issētis,	<i>ye would have ruled</i>	<i>had ruled</i>
rex-issent,	<i>they would have ruled</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-e,	<i>rule (thou)</i>		reg-ite,	<i>rule (ye)</i>
--------	--------------------	--	----------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itō,	<i>thou shalt or must rule</i>		reg-itōte,	<i>ye shall or must rule</i>
reg-itō,	<i>he shall or must rule</i>		reg-untō,	<i>they shall or must rule</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

PRESENT : reg-ere, to rule	(Nom. reg-endum)
PERFECT : rex-isse, to have ruled	Acc. reg-endum, ruling
FUTURE : rectū-r-us esse, to be	Gen. reg-endī
about to rule	Dat. reg-endō
	Abl. reg-endō

SUPINE.

Acc. rect-um, to rule		Abl. rect-ū, in ruling
-----------------------	--	------------------------

§ 142. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

MODEL: **audiō, I hear.**PRINCIPAL PARTS: **aud-īre, audīv-ī, audīt-um.**BASES: **aud-** (present); **audīv-** (perfect); **audīt-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT: **aud-iens** (gen. **audient-is**), *hearing*
 FUTURE: **audīt-ūrus, audīt-ūra, audīt-ūrum**, *about to hear*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iō,	<i>I hear</i>	aud-īmus,	<i>we hear</i>
aud-is,	<i>thou hearest</i>	aud-itis,	<i>ye hear</i>
aud-it,	<i>he hears</i>	aud-iunt,	<i>they hear</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing</i>	aud-iēbāmus,	<i>we were hearing</i>
aud-iēbās,	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	aud-iēbātis,	<i>ye were hearing</i>
aud-iēbat,	<i>he was hearing</i>	aud-iēbant,	<i>they were hearing</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear</i>	aud-iēmus,	<i>we shall hear</i>
aud-iēs,	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	aud-iētis,	<i>ye will hear</i>
aud-iet,	<i>he will hear</i>	aud-ient,	<i>they will hear</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-ī,	<i>I heard or have heard</i>	audīv-īmus,	<i>we heard or have heard</i>
audīv-istī,	<i>thou heardest or hast heard</i>	audīv-istis,	<i>ye heard or have heard</i>
audīv-it,	<i>he heard or has heard</i>	audīv-ērunt or audīv-ēre	<i>they heard or have heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audīv-eram,	<i>I had heard</i>	audīv-erāmus,	<i>we had heard</i>
audīv-erās,	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	audīv-erātis,	<i>ye had heard</i>
audīv-erat,	<i>he had heard</i>	audīv-erant,	<i>they had heard</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

audīv-erō,	<i>I shall have heard</i>	audīv-erimus,	<i>we shall have heard</i>
audīv-eris,	<i>thou wilt have heard</i>	audīv-eritis,	<i>ye will have heard</i>
audīv-erit,	<i>he will have heard</i>	audīv-erint,	<i>they will have heard</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iam,	<i>I should hear</i>	{	<i>(if) I were to hear (in order that) I may hear (so that) I hear (although) I hear</i>
aud-iās,	<i>thou wouldst hear</i>		
aud-iat,	<i>he would hear</i>		
aud-iāmus,	<i>we should hear</i>		
aud-iātis,	<i>ye would hear</i>		
aud-iant,	<i>they would hear</i>		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-irem,	<i>I should be hearing</i>	{	<i>(if) I were hearing (in order that) I might hear (so that) I heard (when, although, etc.) I was hearing</i>
aud-irēs,	<i>thou wouldst be hearing</i>		
aud-iret,	<i>he would be hearing</i>		
aud-irēmus,	<i>we should be hearing</i>		
aud-irētis,	<i>ye would be hearing</i>		
aud-irent,	<i>they would be hearing</i>		

PERFECT TENSE.

audiv-erim	rare in principal sentences	{	<i>(if) I were to have heard (so that) I heard or have heard (although) I have heard</i>
audiv-eris			
audiv-erit			
audiv-erimus			
audiv-eritis			
audiv-erint			

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audiv-issem,	<i>I should have heard</i>	{	<i>(if) I had heard (when, although, etc.) I had heard</i>
audiv-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst have heard</i>		
audiv-isset,	<i>he would have heard</i>		
audiv-issēmus,	<i>we should have heard</i>		
audiv-issētis,	<i>ye would have heard</i>		
audiv-issent,	<i>they would have heard</i>		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-i,	<i>hear (thou)</i>		aud-ite,	<i>hear (ye)</i>
---------------	--------------------	--	-----------------	------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-itō,	<i>thou shalt or must hear</i>	aud-itōte,	<i>ye shall or must hear</i>
aud-itō,	<i>he shall or must hear</i>	aud-iuntō,	<i>they shall or must hear</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND

PRESENT: aud-ire, <i>to hear</i>	(Nom. aud-iendūm)
PERFECT: audiv-isse, <i>to have heard</i>	Acc. aud-iendum, <i>hearing</i>
	Gen. aud-iendi
FUTURE: auditūr-us esse, <i>to be about to hear</i>	Dat. aud-iendō
	Abl. aud-iendō

SUPINE.

Acc. audit-um, <i>to hear</i>		Abl. audit-ū, <i>in hearing</i>
--------------------------------------	--	--

§ 143. FIRST (OR A) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *amō, I love, I like.*BASES: *am-* (present); *amāv-* (perfect); *amāt-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES	{	PERFECT: <i>amāt-us, amāt-a, amāt-um,</i> <i>loved or having</i>
		GERUNDIVE: <i>am-andus, am-anda, am-andum,</i> <i>fit to be loved</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>am-or,</i>	<i>I am loved</i>	<i>am-āmur,</i>	<i>we are loved</i>
<i>am-āris,</i>	<i>thou art loved</i>	<i>am-āminī,</i>	<i>ye are loved</i>
<i>am-ātur,</i>	<i>he is loved</i>	<i>am-antur,</i>	<i>they are loved</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>am-ābar,</i>	<i>I was being loved</i>	<i>am-ābāmur,</i>	<i>we were being loved</i>
<i>am-ābāris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>am-ābāminī,</i>	<i>ye were being loved</i>
<i>am-ābāre</i>	<i>loved</i>		
<i>am-ābātur,</i>	<i>he was being loved</i>	<i>am-ābantur,</i>	<i>they were being loved</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>am-ābor,</i>	<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>am-ābimur,</i>	<i>we shall be loved</i>
<i>am-āberis or</i>		<i>am-ābiminī,</i>	<i>ye will be loved</i>
<i>am-ābere,</i>	<i>thou wilt be loved</i>		
<i>am-ābitur,</i>	<i>he will be loved</i>	<i>am-ābuntur,</i>	<i>they will be loved</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>amāt-us sum,</i>	<i>I was or have been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i sumus,</i>	<i>we were or have been loved</i>
<i>amāt-us es,</i>	<i>thou wast or hast been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i estis,</i>	<i>ye were or have been loved</i>
<i>amāt-us est,</i>	<i>he was or has been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i sunt,</i>	<i>they were or have been loved</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>amāt-us eram,</i>	<i>I had been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i erāmus,</i>	<i>we had been loved</i>
<i>amāt-us erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i erātis,</i>	<i>ye had been loved</i>
<i>amāt-us erat,</i>	<i>he had been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i erant,</i>	<i>they had been loved</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>amāt-us erō,</i>	<i>I shall have been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have been loved</i>
<i>amāt-us eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have been loved</i>
<i>amāt-us erit,</i>	<i>he will have been loved</i>	<i>amāt-i erunt,</i>	<i>they will have been loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-er,	<i>I should be loved</i>	
am-êris or am-êre }	<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	(if) <i>I were to be loved</i>
am-êtur,	<i>he would be loved</i>	(in order that) <i>I may be loved</i>
am-êmur,	<i>we should be loved</i>	
am-êmini,	<i>ye would be loved</i>	(so that) <i>I am loved</i>
am-entur,	<i>they would be loved</i>	(although) <i>I am loved</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

am-ârer,	<i>I should be loved</i>	
am-ârêris or am-ârêre }	<i>thou wouldst be loved</i>	(if) <i>I were being loved</i>
am-ârêtur,	<i>he would be loved</i>	(in order that) <i>I might be loved</i>
am-ârêmur,	<i>we should be loved</i>	(so that) <i>I was loved</i>
am-ârêmini,	<i>ye would be loved</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I was being loved</i>
am-ârentur,	<i>they would be loved</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

amât-us sim	} rare in principal sentences	(if) <i>I were to have been loved</i>
amât-us sis		
amât-us sit		(so that) <i>I was loved or have been loved</i>
amât-î simus		(although) <i>I have been loved</i>
amât-î sitis		
amât-î sint		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

amât-us essem,	<i>I should have been loved</i>	
amât-us essês,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved</i>	
amât-us esset,	<i>he would have been loved</i>	(if) <i>I had been loved</i>
amât-î essêmus,	<i>we should have been loved</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I had been loved</i>
amât-î essêtis,	<i>ye would have been loved</i>	
amât-î essent,	<i>they would have been loved</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

am-âre,	<i>be (thou) loved</i>		am-âmini,	<i>be (ye) loved</i>
---------	------------------------	--	-----------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

am-âtor,	<i>thou shalt or must be loved</i>		am-antor,	<i>they shall or must be loved</i>
----------	------------------------------------	--	-----------	------------------------------------

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	am-âri,	<i>to be loved</i>
PERFECT :	amât-us esse,	<i>to have been loved</i>
FUTURE :	amâtum iri,	<i>to be about to be loved</i>

§ 158. SECOND (OR E) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.
MODEL: *moneō, I advise.*

BASES: **mon-** (present); **monu-** (perfect); **monit-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: **monit-us, monit-a, monit-um,** *advised or having been advised*
GERUNDIVE: **mon-endus, mon-enda, mon-endum,** *fit to be advised*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-eor,	<i>I am advised</i>	mon-ēmur,	<i>we are advised</i>
mon-ēris,	<i>thou art advised</i>	mon-ēmini,	<i>ye are advised</i>
mon-ētur,	<i>he is advised</i>	mon-entur,	<i>they are advised</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ēbar,	<i>I was being</i>	} <i>advised</i>	mon-ēbāmur,	<i>we were being</i>	} <i>advised</i>
mon-ēbāris or	<i>thou wast</i>		mon-ēbāmini,	<i>ye were being</i>	
mon-ēbāre	<i>being</i>				
mon-ēbātur,	<i>he was being</i>		mon-ēbantur,	<i>they were being</i>	

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ēbor,	<i>I shall be advised</i>	mon-ēbimur,	<i>we shall be advised</i>
mon-ēberis or	<i>thou wilt be ad-</i>	mon-ēbimini,	<i>ye will be advised</i>
mon-ēbere	<i>vised</i>		
mon-ēbitur,	<i>he will be advised</i>	mon-ēbuntur,	<i>they will be advised</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sum,	<i>I was or have been advised</i>	monit-ī sumus,	<i>we were or have been advised</i>
monit-us es,	<i>thou wast or hast been advised</i>	monit-ī estis,	<i>ye were or have been advised</i>
monit-us est,	<i>he was or has been advised</i>	monit-ī sunt,	<i>they were or have been advised</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us eram,	<i>I had been</i>	} <i>advised</i>	monit-ī erāmus,	<i>we had been</i>	} <i>advised</i>
monit-us erās,	<i>thou hadst</i>		monit-ī erātis,	<i>ye had been</i>	
monit-us erat,	<i>he had been</i>		monit-ī erant,	<i>they had been</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us erō,	<i>I shall</i>	} <i>have been advised</i>	monit-ī erimus,	<i>we shall</i>	} <i>have been advised</i>
monit-us eris,	<i>thou wilt</i>		monit-ī eritis,	<i>ye will</i>	
monit-us erit,	<i>he will</i>		monit-ī erunt,	<i>they will</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ear,
mon-eāris or }
mon-eāre }
mon-eātur,
mon-eāmur,
mon-eāminī,
mon-eantur,

I should be advised
thou wouldst be advised
he would be advised
we should be advised
ye would be advised
they would be advised

(if) I were to be advised
(in order that) I may
be advised
(so that) I am advised
(although) I am advised

IMPERFECT TENSE.

mon-ērer,
mon-ērēris or }
mon-ērēre }
mon-ērētur,
mon-ērēmur,
mon-ērēminī,
mon-ērentur,

I should be advised
thou wouldst be advised
he would be advised
we should be advised
ye would be advised
they would be advised

(if) I were being advised
(in order that) I might
be advised
(so that) I was advised
(when, although, etc.) I
was being advised

PERFECT TENSE.

monit-us sim
monit-us sis
monit-us sit
monit-i simus
monit-i sitis
monit-i sint

rare in principal
sentences

(if) I were to have been
advised
(so that) I was advised
or have been advised
(although) I have been
advised

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

monit-us essem,
monit-us essēs,
monit-us esset,
monit-i essēmus,
monit-i essētis,
monit-i essent,

I should have been advised
thou wouldst have been
he would have been
we should have been
ye would have been
they would have been

(if) I had been ad-
vised
(when, although, etc.)
I had been advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

mon-ēre, be (thou) advised | mon-ēminī, be (ye) advised

FUTURE TENSE.

mon-ētor, thou must be advised |
mon-ētor, he must be advised | mon-entor, they must be advised

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: mon-ērī, to be advised
PERFECT: monit-us esse, to have been advised
FUTURE: monitum irī to be about to be advised

§ 145. THIRD (OR CONSONANT) CONJUGATION.— PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL : *regō, I rule.*

BASES : *reg-* (present) ; *rex-* (perfect) ; *rect-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES	PERFECT : <i>rect-us, rect-a, rect-um,</i> <i>ruled or having been ruled</i>
	GERUNDIVE : <i>reg-endus, reg-enda, reg-endum,</i> <i>fit to be ruled</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>reg-or,</i>	<i>I am ruled</i>	<i>reg-imur,</i>	<i>we are ruled</i>
<i>reg-eris,</i>	<i>thou art ruled</i>	<i>reg-imini,</i>	<i>ye are ruled</i>
<i>reg-itur,</i>	<i>he is ruled</i>	<i>reg-untur,</i>	<i>they are ruled</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>reg-ēbar,</i>	<i>I was being ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēbāmur,</i>	<i>we were being ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēbāris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>reg-ēbāmini,</i>	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēbāre }</i>	<i>ruled</i>		
<i>reg-ēbātur,</i>	<i>he was being ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēbantur,</i>	<i>they were being ruled</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>reg-ar,</i>	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēmur,</i>	<i>we shall be ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēris or</i>	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	<i>reg-ēmini,</i>	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
<i>reg-ēre }</i>			
<i>reg-ētur,</i>	<i>he will be ruled</i>	<i>reg-entur,</i>	<i>they will be ruled</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rect-us sum,</i>	<i>I was or have been ruled</i>	<i>rect-ī sumus,</i>	<i>we were or have been ruled</i>
<i>rect-us es,</i>	<i>thou wast or hast been ruled</i>	<i>rect-ī estis,</i>	<i>ye were or have been ruled</i>
<i>rect-us est,</i>	<i>he was or has been ruled</i>	<i>rect-ī sunt,</i>	<i>they were or have been ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>rect-us eram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>rect-ī erāmus,</i>	<i>we had been</i>
<i>rect-us erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	<i>rect-ī erātis,</i>	<i>ye had ruled</i>
<i>rect-us erat,</i>	<i>he had</i>	<i>rect-ī erant,</i>	<i>they had ruled</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>rect-us erō,</i>	<i>I shall have</i>	<i>rect-ī erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have</i>
<i>rect-us eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt been</i>	<i>rect-ī eritis,</i>	<i>ye will been</i>
<i>rect-us erit,</i>	<i>he will ruled</i>	<i>rect-ī erunt,</i>	<i>they will ruled</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ar,	<i>I should be ruled</i>	
reg-āris or } reg-āre }	<i>thou wouldst be ruled</i>	(if) <i>I were to be ruled</i>
reg-ātur,	<i>he would be ruled</i>	(in order that) <i>I may be ruled</i>
reg-āmur,	<i>we should be ruled</i>	<i>ruled</i>
reg-āminī,	<i>ye would be ruled</i>	(so that) <i>I am ruled</i>
reg-antur,	<i>they would be ruled</i>	(although) <i>I am ruled</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

reg-erer,	<i>I should be ruled</i>	
reg-erēris or } reg-erēre }	<i>thou wouldst be ruled</i>	(if) <i>I were being ruled</i>
reg-erētur,	<i>he would be ruled</i>	(in order that) <i>I might be ruled</i>
reg-erēmur,	<i>we should be ruled</i>	(so that) <i>I was ruled</i>
reg-erēminī,	<i>ye would be ruled</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I was being ruled</i>
reg-erentur,	<i>they would be ruled</i>	

PERFECT TENSE.

rect-us sim		(if) <i>I were to have been ruled</i>
rect-us sis		<i>ruled</i>
rect-us sit	rare in principal sentences	(so that) <i>I was ruled or have been ruled</i>
rect-ī simus		<i>ruled</i>
rect-ī sitis		(although) <i>I have been ruled</i>
rect-ī sint		<i>ruled</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

rect-us essem,	<i>I should have been ruled</i>	
rect-us essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled</i>	
rect-us esset,	<i>he would have been ruled</i>	(if) <i>I had been ruled</i>
rect-ī essēmus,	<i>we should have been ruled</i>	(when, although, etc.) <i>I had been ruled</i>
rect-ī essētis,	<i>ye would have been ruled</i>	
rect-ī essent,	<i>they would have been ruled</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

reg-ere,	<i>be (thou) ruled</i>		reg-iminī,	<i>be (ye) ruled</i>
----------	------------------------	--	------------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

reg-itor,	<i>thou must be ruled</i>		reg-untor,	<i>they must be ruled</i>
reg-itor,	<i>he must be ruled</i>			

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: reg-ī,	<i>to be ruled</i>
PERFECT: rect-us esse,	<i>to have been ruled</i>
FUTURE: rectum irī,	<i>to be about to be ruled</i>

§ 146. FOURTH (OR I) CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: *audiō, I hear.*BASES: *aud-* (present); *audīv-* (perfect); *audit-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT: *audit-us, audit-a, audit-um*, *heard or having been heard*
 GERUNDIVE: *aud-iendus, aud-ienda, aud-iendum*, *fit to be heard*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>aud-ior,</i>	<i>I am heard</i>	<i>aud-īmur,</i>	<i>we are heard</i>
<i>aud-iris,</i>	<i>thou art heard</i>	<i>aud-īmini,</i>	<i>ye are heard</i>
<i>aud-itur,</i>	<i>he is heard</i>	<i>aud-iuntur,</i>	<i>they are heard</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>aud-iēbar,</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>	<i>aud-iēbāmur,</i>	<i>we were being</i>	} <i>heard</i>
<i>aud-iēbāris or</i>	<i>thou wast being</i>	<i>aud-iēbāmini,</i>	<i>ye were being</i>	
<i>aud-iēbāre</i>	<i>heard</i>			
<i>aud-iēbātur,</i>	<i>he was being heard</i>	<i>aud-iēbantur,</i>	<i>they were being</i>	

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>aud-iar,</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>	<i>aud-iēmur,</i>	<i>we shall be heard</i>
<i>aud-iēris or</i>	<i>thou wilt be heard</i>	<i>aud-iēmini,</i>	<i>ye will be heard</i>
<i>aud-iēre</i>			
<i>aud-iētur,</i>	<i>he will be heard</i>	<i>aud-ientur,</i>	<i>they will be heard</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

<i>audit-us sum,</i>	<i>I was or have been heard</i>	<i>audit-ī sumus,</i>	<i>we were or have been heard</i>
<i>audit-us es,</i>	<i>thou wast or hast been heard</i>	<i>audit-ī estis,</i>	<i>ye were or have been heard</i>
<i>audit-us est,</i>	<i>he was or has been heard</i>	<i>audit-ī sunt,</i>	<i>they were or have been heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>audit-us eram,</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>audit-ī erāmus,</i>	<i>we had been</i>	} <i>heard</i>
<i>audit-us erās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<i>audit-ī erātis,</i>	<i>ye had been</i>	
<i>audit-us erat,</i>	<i>he had been</i>	<i>audit-ī erant,</i>	<i>they had been</i>	

FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>audit-us erō,</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>audit-ī erimus,</i>	<i>we shall have been</i>	} <i>heard</i>
<i>audit-us eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	<i>audit-ī eritis,</i>	<i>ye will have been</i>	
<i>audit-us erit,</i>	<i>he will have been</i>	<i>audit-ī erunt,</i>	<i>they will have been</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-iar,	<i>I should be heard</i>	
aud-iāris or aud-iāre }	<i>thou wouldst be heard</i>	(if) <i>I were to be heard</i>
aud-iātur,	<i>he would be heard</i>	(in order that) <i>I may be heard</i>
aud-iāmur,	<i>we should be heard</i>	(so that) <i>I am heard</i>
aud-iāmini,	<i>ye would be heard</i>	(although) <i>I am heard</i>
aud-iantur,	<i>they would be heard</i>	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

aud-irer,	<i>I should be heard</i>	
aud-irēris or aud-irēre }	<i>thou wouldst be heard</i>	(if) <i>I were being heard</i>
aud-irētur,	<i>he would be heard</i>	(in order that) <i>I might be heard</i>
aud-irēmur,	<i>we should be heard</i>	(so that) <i>I was heard</i>
aud-irēmini,	<i>ye would be heard</i>	(when, although, etc.)
aud-irentur,	<i>they would be heard</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>

PERFECT TENSE.

audit-us sim		(if) <i>I were to have been heard</i>
audit-us sis		<i>heard</i>
audit-us sit	rare in principal sentences	(so that) <i>I was heard</i>
audit-i simus		or <i>have been heard</i>
audit-i sitis		(although) <i>I have been heard</i>
audit-i sint		<i>heard</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

audit-us essem,	<i>I should have been heard</i>	
audit-us essēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been heard</i>	
audit-us esset,	<i>he would have been heard</i>	(if) <i>I had been heard</i>
audit-i essēmus,	<i>we should have been heard</i>	(when, although, etc.)
audit-i essētis,	<i>ye would have been heard</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>
audit-i essent,	<i>they would have been heard</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

aud-ire,	<i>be (thou) heard</i>		aud-imini,	<i>be (ye) heard</i>
----------	------------------------	--	------------	----------------------

FUTURE TENSE.

aud-itor,	<i>thou must be heard</i>	
aud-itor,	<i>he must be heard</i>	aud-iuntor, <i>they must be heard</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT :	aud-irī,	<i>to be heard</i>
PERFECT :	audit-us esse,	<i>to have been heard</i>
FUTURE :	auditum irī,	<i>to be about to be heard</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS
OF THE FOURTH.

§ 147. MODEL: **cap-iō**, *I take*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **cap-iō**, **cēp-ī**, **capt-um**.

BASES: **cap-** (present); **cēp-** (perfect); **capt-** (supine).

PARTI- (PRESENT: **cap-iens** (gen. **capient-is**), *taking*

CIPLES (FUTURE: **capt-ūrus**, **capt-ūra**, **capt-ūrum**, *about to take*

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I take.*)

cap-iō	cap-imus
cap-is	cap-itis
cap-it	cap-iunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was taking.*)

cap-iēbam	cap-iēbāmus
cap-iēbās	cap-iēbātis
cap-iēbat	cap-iēbant

FUTURE. (*I shall take.*)

cap-iam	cap-iēmus
cap-iēs	cap-iētis
cap-iet	cap-ient

PERFECT. (*I took or have taken.*)

cēp-ī	cēp-imus
cēp-istī	cēp-istis
cēp-it	cēp-erunt or cēp-ēre

PLUPERFECT. (*I had taken.*)

cēp-eram	cēp-erāmus
cēp-erās	cēp-erātis
cēp-erat	cēp-erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have taken.*)

cēp-erō	cēp-erimus
cēp-eris	cēp-eritis
cēp-erit	cēp-erint

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **cap-ere**, *to take*

PERFECT: **cēp-isse**, *to have taken*

FUTURE: **capt-ūrus esse**, *to be about to take*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should take.*)

cap-iam	cap-iāmus
cap-iās	cap-iātis
cap-iat	cap-iant

IMPERFECT. (*I should be taking.*)

cap-erem	cap-erēmus
cap-erēs	cap-erētis
cap-eret	cap-erent

PERFECT.

cēp-erim	cēp-erimus
cēp-eris	cēp-eritis
cēp-erit	cēp-erint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have taken.*)

cēp-issem	cēp-issēmus
cēp-issēs	cēp-issētis
cēp-isset	cēp-issent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Take.*)

cap-e	cap-ite
--------------	----------------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must take.*)

cap-itō	cap-itōte
cap-itō	cap-iuntō

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

GERUND.

(Nom. **cap-iendum**)

Acc. **cap-iendum**, *taking*

Gen. **cap-iendī**

Dat. **cap-iendō**

Abl. **cap-iendō**

SUPINE

Acc. **capt-um**, *to take*

| Abl. **capt-ū**, *in taking*

PASSIVE VOICE.

(PERFECT: **capt-us, capt-a, capt-um**, *taken or having been taken*
 PARTICI-
 PLES GERUNDIVE: **cap-iendus, cap-ienda, cap-iendum**, *fit to be taken*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am taken.*)

cap-ior	cap-imur
cap-eris	cap-imini
cap-itur	cap-iuntur

IMPERFECT. (*I was being taken.*)

cap-iēbar	cap-iēbāmur
cap-iēbāris or	cap-iēbāmini
cap-iēbāre	cap-iēbantur

FUTURE. (*I shall be taken.*)

cap-iar	cap-iēmur
cap-iēris or	cap-iēmini
cap-iēre	cap-ientur

PERFECT. (*I was taken or have been taken.*)

capt-us sum	capt-i sumus
capt-us es	capt-i estis
capt-us est	capt-i sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been taken.*)

capt-us eram	capt-i erāmus
capt-us erās	capt-i erātis
capt-us erat	capt-i erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been taken.*)

capt-us erō	capt-i erimus
capt-us eris	capt-i eritis
capt-us erit	capt-i erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am or may be taken.*)

cap-iar	cap-iāmur
cap-iāris or	cap-iāmini
cap-iāre	cap-iantur

IMPERFECT. (*I was or might be taken.*)

cap-erer	cap-erēmur
cap-erēris or	cap-erēmini
cap-erēre	cap-erentur

PERFECT.

capt-us sim	capt-i simus
capt-us sis	capt-i sitis
capt-us sit	capt-i sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been taken.*)

capt-us essem	capt-i essēmus
capt-us essēs	capt-i essētis
capt-us esset	capt-i essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be taken.*)

cap-ere	cap-imini
----------------	------------------

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must be taken.*)

cap-itor	cap-iuntor
-----------------	-------------------

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: **cap-i**, *to be taken*PERFECT: **capt-us esse**, *to have been taken*FUTURE: **captum iri**, *to be about to be taken*

All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with pres. inf. act. ending in **-ere**) which in the pres. indic. act. end in **-iō** are conjugated like **cap-iō**, as also are deponents of the third conjugation ending in **-ior**. A list of these verbs is given in §§ 325, 330.

Obs. **Capiō** is conjugated like **audiō** in those parts in which the **i** of **audiō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the **i** is short; in other parts **capiō** is conjugated like **regō**.

§ 148. DEPONENT VERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

MODEL: hortor, *I exhort.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: hort-āri, hortāt-us sum.

BASES: hort- (present); hortāt- (supine).

PARTICLES

{ PRESENT: hort-ans (gen. hortant-is), *exhorting*
 { FUTURE: hortāt-ūrus, hortāt-ūra, hortāt-ūrum, *about to exhort*
 { PERFECT: hortāt-us, hortāt-a, hortāt-um, *having exhorted*
 { GERUNDIVE: hort-andus, hort-anda, hort-andum, *fit to be exhorted*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I exhort.*)

hort-or hort-āmur

hort-āris or -āre hort-āminī

hort-ātur hort-antur

IMPERFECT. (*I was exhorting.*)

hort-ābar hort-ābāmur

hort-ābāris or hort-ābāre hort-ābāminī

hort-ābātur hort-ābantur

FUTURE. (*I shall exhort.*)

hort-ābor hort-ābimur

hort-āberis or hort-ābimini

hort-ābitur hort-ābuntur

PERFECT. (*I exhorted or have**exhorted.*)

hortāt-us sum hortāt-ī sumus

hortāt-us es hortāt-ī estis

hortāt-us est hortāt-ī sunt

PLUPERFECT. (*I had exhorted.*)

hortāt-us eram hortāt-ī erāmus

hortāt-us erās hortāt-ī erātis

hortāt-us erat hortāt-ī erant

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have**exhorted.*)

hortāt-us erō hortāt-ī erimus

hortāt-us eris hortāt-ī eritis

hortāt-us erit hortāt-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should exhort.*)

hort-er hort-ēmur

hort-ēris or hort-ēmini

hort-ētur hort-entur

IMPERFECT. (*I should be ex-**horting.*)

hort-ärer hort-ārēmur

hort-ārēris or hort-ārēmini

hort-ārētur hort-ārentur

PERFECT.

hortāt-us sim hortāt-ī simus

hortāt-us sis hortāt-ī sitis

hortāt-us sit hortāt-ī sint

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have**exhorted.*)

hortāt-us essem hortāt-ī essēmus

hortāt-us essēs hortāt-ī essētis

hortāt-us esset hortāt-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Exhort.*)

hort-āre hort-āminī

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must**exhort.*)

hort-ātor

hort-ātor hort-antor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT: hort-āri, *to exhort*PERFECT: hortāt-us esse, *to have**exhorted*FUTURE: hortāt-ūrus esse, *to be**about to exhort*

GERUND.

(Nom. hort-andum)

Acc. hort-andum, *exhorting*

Gen. hort-andī

Dat. hort-andō

Abl. hort-andō

SUPINE.

Acc. hortāt-um, *to exhort*| Abl. hortāt-ū, *in exhorting*

§ 149. DEPONENT VERBS.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **vereor**, *I fear*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ver-ērī**, **verit-us sum**.BASES: **ver-** (present); **verit-** (supine).

PRESENT:	ver-ens (gen. verent-is), <i>fearing</i>
FUTURE:	verit-ūrus , verit-ūra , verit-ūrum , <i>about to fear</i>
PERFECT:	verit-us , verit-a , verit-um , <i>having feared</i>
GERUNDIVE:	ver-endus , ver-enda , ver-endum , <i>fit to be feared</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
PRESENT. (<i>I fear</i> .)		PRESENT. (<i>I should fear</i> .)	
ver-eor ,	ver-ēmur	ver-ear	ver-eāmur
ver-ēris or ver-ēre	ver-ēminī	ver-eāris or	
ver-ētur	ver-entur	ver-eāre	ver-eāminī
		ver-eātur	ver-eantur
IMPERFECT. (<i>I was fearing</i> .)		IMPERFECT. (<i>I should be fearing</i> .)	
ver-ēbar	ver-ēbāmur	ver-ērer	ver-ērēmur
ver-ēbāris or		ver-ērēris or	
ver-ēbāre	ver-ēbāminī	ver-ērēre	ver-ērēminī
ver-ēbātur	ver-ēbantur	ver-ērētur	ver-ērentur
FUTURE. (<i>I shall fear</i> .)		PERFECT.	
ver-ēbor	ver-ēbimur	verit-us sim	verit-ī simus
ver-ēberis or		verit-us sis	verit-ī sitis
ver-ēbere	ver-ēbimini	verit-us sit	verit-ī sint
ver-ēbitur	ver-ēbuntur	PLUPERFECT. (<i>I should have feared</i> .)	
PERFECT. (<i>I feared or have feared</i> .)		verit-us essem	verit-ī essēmus
verit-us sum	verit-ī sumus	verit-us essēs	verit-ī essētis
verit-us es	verit-ī estis	verit-us esset	verit-ī essent
verit-us est	verit-ī sunt	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
PLUPERFECT. (<i>I had feared</i> .)		PRESENT. (<i>Fear</i> .)	
verit-us eram	verit-ī erāmus	ver-ēre	ver-ēminī
verit-us erās	verit-ī erātis	FUTURE. (<i>Thou shalt or must fear</i> .)	
verit-us erat	verit-ī erant	ver-ētor	
FUTURE-PERFECT. (<i>I shall have feared</i> .)		ver-ētor	ver-entor
verit-us erō	verit-ī erimus		
verit-us eris	verit-ī eritis		
verit-us erit	verit-ī erunt		

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.		GERUND.	
PRESENT: ver-ērī ,	<i>to fear</i>	(Nom. ver-endum)	
PERFECT: verit-us esse ,	<i>to have feared</i>	Acc. ver-endum ,	<i>fearing</i>
		Gen. ver-endī	
FUTURE: verit-ūrus esse ,	<i>to be about to fear</i>	Dat. ver-endō	
		Abl. ver-endō	

SUPINE.

Acc. **verit-um**, *to fear*

|

Abl. **verit-ū**, *in fearing*

§ 150. DEPONENT VERBS.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

MODEL: *loquor, I speak.*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *loquī, locūt-us sum.*BASES: *loqu-* (present); *locūt-* (supine).

PARTICIPLES	PRESENT:	<i>loqu-ens</i> (gen. <i>loquent-is</i>), <i>speaking</i>
	FUTURE:	<i>locūt-ūrus, locūt-ūra, locūt-ūrum</i> , <i>about to speak</i>
	PERFECT:	<i>locūt-us, locūt-a, locūt-um</i> , <i>having spoken</i>
	GERUNDIVE:	<i>loqu-endus, loqu-enda, loqu-endum</i> , <i>fit to be spoken</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>I speak.</i>)	
<i>loqu-or</i>	<i>loqu-imur</i>
<i>loqu-eris or</i>	
<i>loqu-ere</i>	<i>loqu-iminī</i>
<i>loqu-itur</i>	<i>loqu-untur</i>

IMPERFECT. (<i>I was speaking.</i>)	
<i>loqu-ēbar</i>	<i>loqu-ēbāmur</i>
<i>loqu-ēbāris or</i>	
<i>loqu-ēbāre</i>	<i>loqu-ēbāminī</i>
<i>loqu-ēbātur</i>	<i>loqu-ēbantur</i>

FUTURE. (<i>I shall speak.</i>)	
<i>loqu-ar</i>	<i>loqu-ēmur</i>

<i>loqu-ēris or</i>	
<i>loqu-ēre</i>	<i>loqu-ēminī</i>
<i>loqu-ētur</i>	<i>loqu-entur</i>

PERFECT. (<i>I spoke or have spoken.</i>)	
<i>locūt-us sum</i>	<i>locūt-ī sumus</i>
<i>locūt-us es</i>	<i>locūt-ī estis</i>
<i>locūt-us est</i>	<i>locūt-ī sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT. (<i>I had spoken.</i>)	
<i>locūt-us eram</i>	<i>locūt-ī erāmus</i>
<i>locūt-us erās</i>	<i>locūt-ī erātis</i>
<i>locūt-us erat</i>	<i>locūt-ī erant</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. (<i>I shall have spoken.</i>)	
<i>locūt-us erō</i>	<i>locūt-ī erimus</i>
<i>locūt-us eris</i>	<i>locūt-ī eritis</i>
<i>locūt-us erit</i>	<i>locūt-ī erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>I should speak.</i>)	
<i>loqu-ar</i>	<i>loqu-āmur</i>
<i>loqu-āris or</i>	
<i>loqu-āre</i>	<i>loqu-āminī</i>
<i>loqu-ātur</i>	<i>loqu-antur</i>

IMPERFECT. (<i>I should be speaking.</i>)	
<i>loqu-erer</i>	<i>loqu-erēmur</i>
<i>loqu-erēris or</i>	
<i>loqu-erēre</i>	<i>loqu-erēminī</i>
<i>loqu-erētur</i>	<i>loqu-erentur</i>

PERFECT.	
<i>locūt-us sim</i>	<i>locūt-ī simus</i>
<i>locūt-us sis</i>	<i>locūt-ī sitis</i>
<i>locūt-us sit</i>	<i>locūt-ī sint</i>

PLUPERFECT. (<i>I should have spoken.</i>)	
<i>locūt-us essem</i>	<i>locūt-ī essēmus</i>
<i>locūt-us essēs</i>	<i>locūt-ī essētis</i>
<i>locūt-us esset</i>	<i>locūt-ī essent</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>Speak.</i>)	
<i>loqu-ere</i>	<i>loqu-iminī</i>

FUTURE. (<i>Thou shalt or must speak.</i>)	
<i>loqu-itor</i>	
<i>loqu-itor</i>	<i>loqu-untor</i>

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT:	<i>loqu-ī, to speak</i>
PERFECT:	<i>locūt-us esse, to have spoken</i>
FUTURE:	<i>locūtūrus esse, to be about to speak</i>

GERUND.

(Nom.)	<i>loqu-endum</i>
Acc.	<i>loqu-endum, speaking</i>
Gen.	<i>loqu-endi</i>
Dat.	<i>loqu-endō</i>
Abl.	<i>loqu-endō</i>

SUPINE.

Acc. <i>locūt-um, to speak</i>		Abl. <i>locūt-ū, in speaking</i>
--------------------------------	--	----------------------------------

§ 151. DEPONENT VERBS.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **partior**, *I divide*.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **part-irī**, **partit-us sum**.BASES: **part-** (present); **partit-** (supine).

PARTICIPLES	PRESENT :	part-iens (gen. partient-is), <i>dividing</i>
	FUTURE :	partit-ūrus, partit-ūra, partit-ūrum, <i>about to divide</i>
	PERFECT :	partit-us, partit-a, partit-um, <i>having divided</i>
	GERUNDIVE:	part-iendus, part-ienda, part-iendum, <i>fit to be divided</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>I divide</i>).	
part-ior	part-imur
part-iris or	
part-ire	part-imini
part-itur	part-iuntur
IMPERFECT. (<i>I was dividing</i> .)	
part-iēbar	part-iēbāmur
part-iēbāris or	
part-iēbare	part-iēbāmini
part-iēbātur	part-iēbantur
FUTURE. (<i>I shall divide</i> .)	
part-iar	part-iēmur
part-iēris or	
part-iēre	part-iēmini
part-iētur	part-iēntur
PERFECT. (<i>I divided or have divided</i> .)	
partit-us sum	partit-ī sumus
partit-us es	partit-ī estis
partit-us est	partit-ī sunt
PLUPERFECT. (<i>I had divided</i> .)	
partit-us eram	partit-ī erāmus
partit-us erās	partit-ī erātis
partit-us erat	partit-ī erant
FUTURE-PERFECT. (<i>I shall have divided</i> .)	
partit-us erō	partit-ī erimus
partit-us eris	partit-ī eritis
partit-us erit	partit-ī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>I should divide</i> .)	
part-iar	part-iāmur
part-iāris or	
part-iāre	part-iāmini
part-iātur	part-iāntur
IMPERFECT. (<i>I should be dividing</i> .)	
part-irer	part-irēmur
part-irēris or	
part-irēre	part-irēmini
part-irētur	part-irēntur
PERFECT.	
partit-us sim	partit-ī simus
partit-us sis	partit-ī sitis
partit-us sit	partit-ī sint
PLUPERFECT. (<i>I should have divided</i> .)	
partit-us essem	partit-ī essēmus
partit-us essēs	partit-ī essētis
partit-us esset	partit-ī essent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (<i>Divide</i> .)	
part-ire	part-imini
FUTURE. (<i>Thou shalt or must divide</i> .)	
part-itor	
part-itor	part-iuntor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFINITIVE.		GERUND.	
PRESENT :	part-irī, <i>to divide</i>	(Nom. part-iendum)	
PERFECT :	partit-us esse, <i>to have divided</i>	Acc. part-iendum, <i>dividing</i>	
FUTURE :	partitūrus esse, <i>to be about to divide</i>	Gen. part-iendi	
		Dat. part-iendō	
		Abl. part-iendō	

SUPINE.

Acc. partit-um, *to divide*Abl. partit-ū, *in dividing*

LESSON 37.

THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

Learn the indicative and imperative active of **amō** (p. 64); also the present and imperfect subjunctive active (p. 65).

Read over what is said on pp. 60, 61 about the Four Regular Conjugations.

QUESTIONS.

152. A question may be introduced in Latin as in English by some interrogative adjective, pronoun, or adverb; *e.g.* **quantus**? *how great*? **quis**? *who*? **cūr**? *why*?

cūr templa spoliātis?

why are you pillaging the temples?

153. If no such interrogative word is used to introduce the question, Latin employs an **interrogative particle** :

nonne, expecting the answer "yes";

num, expecting the answer "no";

-ne, simply asking for information.

num barbarōrum Rōmulus
rex fuit?

Romulus was not a king of barbarians, was he?

nonne Rōmānōrum Rōmulus
rex fuit?

was not Romulus king of the Romans?

154. The particle **-ne** is enclitic, *i.e.* it cannot stand by itself (cp. **-que**, Vocabulary 8, *Obs.*), but is appended to the first word in the sentence or clause. This word must be that on which emphasis is laid in asking the question.

superāvitne Caesar Nervīōs?

did Caesar overcome the Nervii?

Caesarne Nervīōs superāvit?

was it Caesar who overcame the Nervii?

Nerviosne superāvit Caesar?

was it the Nervii whom Caesar overcame?

NOTE.—For the purpose of accentuation (§ 4) **-ne** is regarded as forming part of the word to which it is appended; *e.g.* **superāvi'tne**.

Learn Vocabulary 37 (p. 87).

VOCABULARY 37.

ēmend-ō, -āre, amend, correct.	ōrātiō, ōrātiōn-is, f., oration, speech.
lēgātiō, lēgātiōn-is, f., embassy.	popul-us, -i, m. (popular), people.
lēgāt-us, -i, m. (legate), ambassador, lieutenant.	quāl-is, -e, (quality), what kind of?
mercātor, mercātōr-is, m., merchant.	regn-ō, -āre, reign.
mōs, mōr-is, m., manner, custom; pl. morals, manners, character.	repudi-ō, -āre, reject.
	suppedit-ō, -āre, supply, provide.

LESSON 38.

Revise the present and imperfect subjunctive active of *amō* (p. 65).

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

155. A dependent question is not a question that is then and there asked, but one that is reported or mentioned. The question-clause is in dependence on a principal sentence which may be a statement, a question, or a command.

156. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent questions; the right-hand column gives the same questions in a direct or independent form:—

I know <i>what he is doing</i> .	What is he doing?
Can you guess <i>which book I am reading</i> ?	Which book am I reading?
Tell me <i>when they will arrive</i> .	When will they arrive?
He asked me <i>if I was well</i> .	Are you well?
It is impossible to say <i>whether he is at home or no</i> .	Is he at home or no?

From the above examples it will be seen that direct questions which are introduced by some interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (e.g. *what? which? when?*) retain this interrogative word when they become dependent; other questions when they become dependent are introduced by *if* or *whether*. If the principal verb is in a past tense, the verb in the dependent question is also past.

157. It is often impossible to tell by the form of the dependent clause whether it is a dependent question or no, as a relative or conditional clause may be of exactly the same form as a dependent question ; compare the following with the sentences given in § 156 :—

I don't approve of *what he is doing*.

I will let you see the book *which I am reading*.

Go to meet them *when they arrive*.

I used always to walk *if I was well*.

Have you made up your mind to call *whether he is at home or no* ?

In order to distinguish between dependent questions and clauses such as the above, it is well to consider the character of the principal sentence : a dependent question usually depends on some expression of *wondering, enquiring, knowing, or telling*.

NOTE.—Occasionally, however, it may happen that neither the nature of the principal verb nor the form of the dependent clause enables us to decide whether the latter is a dependent question or a relative clause. Take for instance the sentence

I saw *what he had in his basket*.

If the meaning is " I saw that which he had in his basket," the clause is relative ; if the meaning is " I got to know what he had in his basket," the clause is a dependent question (direct form, " what has he in his basket ? ").

158. In Latin a dependent question is introduced either (a) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or (b) by one of the particles **-ne, num** (*if or whether*), **nonne** (*if or whether . . . not*). Of these, **num** is the commonest, and in a dependent question does not imply that a negative answer is expected.

159. In dependent questions in Latin the verb stands in the **subjunctive** mood. In deciding which tense of the subjunctive to use the choice between imperfect and perfect must be made in accordance with the rule as to the sequence of tenses given on the next page ; beyond this the meaning will afford sufficient guidance.

160. For the purposes of the rule given in § 161 tenses are divided into two classes : **primary** tenses and **historic** tenses :—

PRIMARY.

Indicative and Imperative.

Present.

Future.

Perfect (with Present-
Perfect meaning).

Future-Perfect.

Subjunctive.

Present.

Perfect.

HISTORIC.

Indicative.

Imperfect.

Perfect (with past meaning).

Pluperfect.

Subjunctive.

Imperfect.

Pluperfect.

Obs.—The perfect indicative is said to be used with “ present perfect ” meaning when it answers to the English present-perfect, *e.g.* **amāvi**, *I have loved*, and is said to be used with a “ past ” meaning when, as is usually the case, it answers to the English past tense, *e.g.* **amāvi**, *I loved*. Even when used with present-perfect meaning it often has historic sequence.

161. RULE.—A primary tense in the principal sentence requires a primary tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause, and an historic tense in the principal sentence requires an historic tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clause.

162. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in the **present** tense.

Direct question—

aedificantne Galli oppidum ? *are the Gauls building a town ?*

(a) Primary sequence : dependent verb in present subjunctive.

rogō, *I ask*

rogābō, *I shall ask*

rogāvi, *I have asked*

rogāverō, *I shall have asked*

rogā, *ask*

rogēmus, *let us ask*

num Galli oppidum aedificent.
whether the Gauls are building a town.

(b) Historic sequence : dependent verb in imperfect subjunctive.

rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	} num Galli oppidum aedificārent. <i>whether the Gauls were building a town.</i>
rogāvī, <i>I asked</i>	
rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>	

Learn Vocabulary 38.

VOCABULARY 38.

aegrōt-ō, -āre, <i>be ill.</i>	quandō, adv., <i>when ?</i>
Gallic-us, -a, -um, <i>Gallic.</i>	quant-us, -a, -um, <i>how great ?</i>
ignōr-ō, -āre (ignorant), <i>not to know, be unaware.</i>	quō, adv., <i>whither ?</i>
labor, labōr-is, <i>m., labour.</i>	rog-ō, -āre, <i>ask.</i>
obses, obsid-is, <i>c., hostage.</i>	ubi or ubī, adv., <i>where ?</i>

LESSON 39.

Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of amō ; also the future participle (p. 65).

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS (*continued*).

163. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in a past tense.

Direct question—

vastābantne Galli agrōs ?	<i>were the Gauls laying waste the fields ?</i>
vastāveruntne Galli agrōs ?	<i>did the Gauls lay waste</i> <i>have the Gauls laid waste</i> } <i>the fields</i>

(a) Primary sequence : dependent verb in perfect subjunctive.

rogō, <i>I ask</i>	} num Galli agrōs vastāverint. <i>whether the Gauls were laying waste, laid waste, or have laid waste the fields.</i>
rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i>	
rogāvī, <i>I have asked</i>	
rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i>	
rogā, <i>ask</i>	
rogēmus, <i>let us ask</i>	

(b) Historic sequence : dependent verb in pluperfect subjunctive.

rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	} num Galli agrōs vastāvissent. <i>whether the Gauls had been laying waste or had laid waste the fields.</i>
rogāvī, <i>I asked</i>	
rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>	

164. Examples of dependent questions representing a direct question in which the verb is in the **future** tense.

Direct question—

quandō Caesar Gallōs superābit? *when will Caesar overcome the Gauls?*

(a) Primary sequence : dependent verb expressed by **future participle** and **present subjunctive** of **sum**.

rogō, <i>I ask</i>	} quandō Caesar Gallōs superātūrus sit. <i>when Caesar will overcome the Gauls.</i>
rogābō, <i>I shall ask</i>	
rogāvi, <i>I have asked</i>	
rogāverō, <i>I shall have asked</i>	
rogā, <i>ask</i>	
rogēmus, <i>let us ask</i>	

(b) Historic sequence : dependent verb expressed by **future participle** and **imperfect subjunctive** of **sum**.

rogābam, <i>I was asking</i>	} quandō Caesar Gallōs superātūrus esset. <i>when Caesar would overcome the Gauls.</i>
rogāvi, <i>I asked</i>	
rogāveram, <i>I had asked</i>	

Learn Vocabulary 39.

VOCABULARY 39.

conclām-ō, -āre, <i>shout (together).</i>	lapis, lapid-is, m. (lapidary), <i>stone.</i>
coniūr-ō, -āre, <i>conspire.</i>	libertās, libertāt-is, f., <i>liberty.</i>
dēplōr-ō, -āre, <i>deplore, lament.</i>	monstr-ō, -āre (demonstrate), <i>show.</i>
dīmīc-ō, -āre, <i>fight a pitched battle.</i>	reciper-ō, -āre, recover, regain.
fortiter, <i>adv., bravely.</i>	sign-um, -i, n., <i>sign, standard.</i>
hiem-ō, -āre, <i>pass the winter,</i>	
iact-ō, -āre, <i>throw, hurl.</i>	

LESSON 40.

THE INFINITIVE.

Learn the infinitive active of **amō** (p. 65).

165. The infinitive, being a verbal substantive, may stand as the subject of a sentence.

ambulāre aestāte grātum est *walking is pleasant in summer, or*
in summer it is pleasant to walk

166. The infinitive, being a verbal form, is modified by an adverb.

lentē ambulāre aestāte grātum est *it is pleasant to walk slowly in*
summer

DEPENDENT STATEMENTS.

167. A dependent statement is not one that is then and there made, but one that is reported or mentioned. The principal sentence which introduces the dependent statement may be a statement, a question, or a command, just as was seen to be the case with a principal sentence introducing a dependent question.

168. The left-hand column below gives examples of sentences containing dependent statements; the right-hand column gives the same statements in a direct or independent form :—

I know (that) he is doing nothing.	He is doing nothing.
You told me (that) they would arrive soon.	They will arrive soon.
He said (that) he was quite well, but had been very ill.	I am quite well, but have been very ill.
Do you think (that) we shall win ?	We shall win.
Did you think (that) we should win ?	We shall win.
Tell him (that) you will go.	I will go.
Let us suppose (that) this is so.	This is so.

169. A dependent statement usually depends on some verb or phrase* denoting *feeling, seeing, thinking, knowing, saying, promising, threatening* ; also verbs of *hoping*.

170. The dependent statement may or may not be preceded by the conjunction *that* ; but even if this conjunction is used the clause is not necessarily a dependent statement. The following sentences, for instance, do NOT contain dependent statements :—

Take care *that you do not make a mistake*.
 Many work *that they may grow rich*.
 Some work so hard *that they have no leisure*.

* Among such phrases all impersonal constructions such as the following are included : " it is said," " it is certain," " it is probable," " it is agreed."

171. A dependent statement may be recognised as such (i) by its being possible to reproduce from it the corresponding direct statement, and (ii) by the principal sentence serving to report or mention this statement.

172. In Latin a dependent statement is expressed by means of the construction known as the **accusative and infinitive**, in which the subject is in the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive mood.

Thus, just as in English, instead of saying " I consider (that) he is an honourable man " we may say " I consider **him to be** an honourable man." so in Latin we must always say **putō hunc honestum esse**.

173. (a) The **present infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **contemporaneous** with that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when the **present** tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT { **Caesar appropinquat.**
Caesar is approaching or approaches.

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, they announce	} Caesarem appropinquāre. <i>that Caesar is approaching or approaches.</i>
nuntiābunt, they will announce	
nuntiāverunt, they have announced	
nuntiāverint, they will have announced	
nuntiābant, they were announcing	} Caesarem appropinquāre. <i>that Caesar was approaching or approached.</i>
nuntiāverunt, they announced	
nuntiāverant, they had announced	

(b) The **perfect infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **prior** to that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when a **past tense** would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT.

Caesar appropinquābat *Caesar was approaching*
or
Caesar appropinquāvīt *Caesar (has) approached*

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, they announce	} Caesarem appropinquāvisse. <i>that Caesar has approached.</i>
nuntiābunt, they will announce	
nuntiāverunt, they have announced	
nuntiāverint, they will have announced	

nuntiābant, <i>they were announcing</i>	} Caesarem appropinquāvisse. that Caesar had approached.
nuntiāvērunt, <i>they announced</i>	
nuntiāverant, <i>they had announced</i>	

(c) The **future infinitive** is used when the action of the dependent statement is **subsequent** to that of the introductory verb, *i.e.* when the **future** tense would be used in the direct statement.

DIRECT STATEMENT { Caesarem appropinquābit.
Caesar will approach.

SENTENCE CONTAINING DEPENDENT STATEMENT.

nuntiant, <i>they announce</i>	} Caesarem appropinquātū- rum esse. that Caesar will approach.
nuntiābunt, <i>they will announce</i>	
nuntiāvērunt, <i>they have announced</i>	
nuntiāverint, <i>they will have announced</i>	

nuntiābant, <i>they were announcing</i>	} Caesarem appropinquātūrum esse. that Caesar would approach.
nuntiāvērunt, <i>they announced</i>	
nuntiāverant, <i>they had announced</i>	

174. The rule that the **tense** of the infinitive is present, perfect, or future according as a present, past, or future tense of the indicative would have been used in the corresponding direct statement must be carefully borne in mind in translating into Latin such sentences as "He said (that) he was quite well, but had been very ill," because in English a present or present-perfect tense in the direct form ("I am quite well, but have been very ill") becomes past or past-perfect in the dependent form if the principal verb is past: **no such change of tense** occurs in Latin.

Learn Vocabulary 40.

VOCABULARY 40.

audacter, *adv., boldly.*
cert-us, -a, -um, *certain.*
crēdibil-is, -e, *credible.*
dictit-ō, -āre, *say frequently.*
facil-is, -e (*facility*), *easy.*

mund-us, -i, *m. (mundane), world.*
neg-ō, -āre (*negative*), *deny, say*
... *not.*
vērisimil-is, -e (*verisimilitude*),
probable.

LESSON 41.

THE GERUND.

Learn the gerund of *amō* (p. 65).

175. The **gerund** is an abstract substantive of neuter gender declined in the singular only ; it expresses the action denoted by the verb, *e.g. amandum, loving*, i.e. *the act of loving*, and corresponds to the English gerund, a verbal noun in *-ing* (*e.g. "I take exercise by walking"*), which originally ended in *-ung*, and so was distinct in form from the present participle which ended in *-ende* and with which the gerund is now often confused.

Obs.—The nominative of the gerund is not, as a rule, found except in the case of intransitive verbs ; it is therefore included in brackets () in the tables of the regular conjugations.

NOTE.—The gerund, being a verbal form, is modified by an adverb, and in the case of transitive verbs the genitive and ablative gerund (but not the accusative or dative) may govern a direct object in the accusative case ; cp. the first example in § 177.

176. **RULE.**—The gerund of an **intransitive** verb is used with *est, erat, etc.*, in the nominative singular to express *duty* or *necessity*. The person concerned is put in the dative case.

nōbīs ambulandum est

we must walk

177. **RULE.**—The **genitive** of the gerund is frequently used in dependence on substantives and adjectives expressing *fondness* or *desire*, and with the ablatives *grātiā, causā, for the sake of, on account of*.

*equitēs cupidī sunt agrōs
lātē vastandī*

*the horsemen are desirous of lay-
ing waste the fields far and wide*

*Catīlina regnandī gratiā
peccāvit*

*Catiline sinned for the sake of
reigning*

Learn Vocabulary 41.

VOCABULARY 41.

ars, art-is, f., art.

*caus-ā, abl. (with gen.), for the
sake of, on account of.*

cupidō, cupidin-is, f., desire.

grāti-a, -ae, f., favour.

*grātiā, abl. (with gen.), for the
sake of, on account of.*

salūtār-is, -e, salutary, beneficial.

LESSON 42.

ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

Learn the active participles of **amō** (p. 65).

178. There are two active participles in Latin : (a) the **present** participle, declined like **prūdēns**, § 69 ; (b) the **future** participle, declined like **bonus**, § 36.

Obs. 1.—The perfect participle active is wanting in the Latin verb.

Obs. 2.—In translating English into Latin the learner must use participles with caution, and in accordance with the rules given here and elsewhere in this book : an English participle (especially a present participle) is often rendered in Latin by some other part of the verb.

179. The present participle is sometimes used to express a class of persons ; e.g. **aegrōtantēs**, *people who are ill*.

180. The future participle is combined with some parts of the verb **sum**, and is then variously translated ; e.g. **pugnātūrus sum**, *I am about to fight, I purpose to fight, I am likely to fight, I am destined to fight*.

Learn Vocabulary 42.

VOCABULARY 42.

advent-ō, āre (advent), *be on the point of arriving*.

ardor, ardōr-is, m. (ardour), *heat*.

cōgit-ō, -āre (cogitate), *meditate*.

for-um, -i, n., *market-place*.

hūmān-us, -a, -um, *human*.

impet-us, -ūs, m., *attack*.

integrātiō, integrātiōn-is, f., *renewal*.

ir-a, -ae, f., *anger*.

iterum, *adv.* (iterate), *again, a second time*.

ōti-um, -i, n., *ease, rest*.

sollicitūdō, sollicitūdīn-is, f. (sollicitous), *anxiety*.

tēlum, -i, n., *weapon, javelin*.

trucid-ō, -āre, *butcher*.

LESSON 43.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative active and the imperative active of **moneō** (pp. 66, 67).

181. Just as the first conjugation is also called the **A** conjugation, on account of its characteristic vowel, so the second conjugation is known as the **E** conjugation. It will be noticed that in the present and imperfect indicative (except in the first person singular of the present), the second conjugation differs from the first only in the vowel immediately following the base. The same remark applies to the future indicative, to the imperfect subjunctive, to the imperative, and to the present infinitive, present participle, and gerund.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

182. A conditional sentence consists of two parts : (1) a dependent clause usually introduced by *if* in English and by **sī** in Latin, stating the condition and called the **protasis** ; and (2) the principal sentence, called the **apodosis**, relating to some action the occurrence of which is to be regarded as depending on the fulfilment of the condition. The apodosis may be either a statement, a question, or a command, thus—

If it rains,	{	I shall stop at home.
		will you stop at home ?
		stop at home.

183. A negative protasis may be introduced by **sī . . . nōn**, *if not*, or by **nisi**, *unless*.

184. When neither of the auxiliaries *should, would* is used in the apodosis in English, the verb in both parts of the sentence is in the **indicative** mood in Latin, or (if the sense requires it) the imperative is used in the apodosis.

sī peccāvī, insciens peccāvī	<i>if I sinned (or have sinned), I sinned unwittingly</i>
sī putās mē aegrōtārē, errās	<i>if you think that I am ill, you are wrong</i>
sī tibi placet, huic aliquid dōnā	<i>if you please (lit. if it pleases you), give this man something</i>

185. Note the tense of the infinitive in—

patrī pārēre dēbēs

you ought to obey your father

patrī pārēre dēbēbās

you ought to have obeyed your father

The irregularity here is not in the Latin, but in the English. *Ought* being a past form used with a present meaning, past time has to be expressed in English by the use of the present-perfect infinitive.

Learn Vocabulary 43.

VOCABULARY 43.

N.B.—In the case of verbs of which the infinitive ending only (-āre, -ēre) is given, it is to be assumed that they are conjugated throughout like **amō** or **moneō**; if a verb is defective (as **valeō**, below) or irregular in its principal parts, the fact is indicated.

abstin-eō, -ēre, abstinu-i, abstent-um, abstain.

lingu-a, -ae, f. (linguist), *tongue*,

coerc-eō, -ēre (coerce), *control, curb.*

mon-eō, -ēre, *warn, admonish.*

corpus, corpor-is, n. (corpse), *body.*

noc-eō, -ēre, *do harm, injure* (with dat.).

dēb-eō, -ēre (debit), *owe, ought.*

parens, parent-is, c., parent.

hab-eō, -ēre (habit), *have, hold, consider.*

pār-eō, -ēre, *be obedient, obey* (with dat.).

ōrātiōnem hab-eō, *make a speech.*

plac-eō, -ēre, *be pleasing, please* (with dat.).

insciens, inscient-is, *unwitting, unknowing.*

supplic-um, -i, n., *punishment.*

interrog-ō, -āre, *interrogate, question.*

tac-eō, -ēre (tacit), *be silent.*

terr-eō, -ēre, *terrify.*

val-eō, -ēre, valu-i, —, (valid), *be well or strong.*

LESSON 44.

Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative active of **moneō** (p. 66).

186. It will be seen that (as pointed out in § 181) in the future indicative of **moneō** the endings resemble those of the corresponding tense of **amō**, except that the characteristic vowel immediately following the base is **e**, not **a**.

The remaining tenses of the indicative are given in full in order that the learner may have the second conjugation before him complete. All that has to be remembered, however, is that the perfect base of the second conjugation is found by adding **-u-** to the present base (thus : infinitive **monēre**, present base **mon-**, perfect base **monu-**), unless otherwise stated ; the personal endings of the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses are the same for all verbs.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*continued*).

187. Consider carefully the following—

sī hōc negābis, errābis	<i>if you deny this, you will be wrong</i>
sī hostēs superāveritis, vōbis praemia dōnābō	<i>if you overcome the enemy, I will give you rewards</i>

In the case of the first sentence, the time of the *denying* is evidently future, although the English tense is the present ; in the case of the second sentence the *overcoming* not only belongs to future time, but must be accomplished before the rewards are given. Therefore the use of the future **negābis** and of the future-perfect **superāveritis** is natural and accurate ; the English use of the present tense in such sentences is merely idiomatic and must not be reproduced in Latin.

188. RULE.—Certain verbs like **doceō**, *I teach*, **rogō**, *I ask*, **cēlō**, *I keep in ignorance*, are often constructed with two accusatives, one of the person taught, asked, or kept in ignorance, the other of that which he is taught, for which he is asked, or about which he is kept in ignorance.

ōtium deōs rogō	<i>I ask the gods for leisure</i>
puerōs elementa docēbō	<i>I shall teach the boys their letters</i>
nōn cēlāvī tē sermōnem Titi	<i>I did not keep you in ignorance as to Titus' conversation</i>

Learn Vocabulary 44 (p. 100).

VOCABULARY 44.

cēl-ō, -āre (conceal), *keep in ignorance concerning.*

contin-eō, -ēre, continu-ī, content-um, *contain, keep (in a place).*

dignitās, dignitāt-is, *f., dignity.*

doc-eō, -ēre, docu-ī, doct-um (doctor), *teach.*

eg-eō, -ēre, egu-ī, —, *need, be in need of (with abl. or gen.).*

ēloquenti-a, -ae, *f., eloquence.*

exerc-eō, -ēre, *exercise.*

Latin-us, -a, -um, *Latin.*

mer-eō, -ēre, *merit, deserve.*

min-ae, -ārum, *f. pl., threats.*

offici-um, -ī, *n., duty.*

quōmodo, *adv., how? by what means?*

rēs publica, rei publicae, *f., state, commonwealth.*

retin-eō, -ēre, retinu-ī, retent-um, *retain.*

sustin-eō, -ēre, sustinu-ī, sustent-um, *sustain.*

tim-eō, -ēre, timu-ī, —, (timid), *fear.*

vix, *adv., scarcely, with difficulty.*

LESSON 45.

Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive active of **moneō** (p. 67).

It should be noted that the imperfect subjunctive active (first person singular) may always be found by adding **m** to the present infinitive active: *e.g. amāre, amārem; monēre, monērem.*

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*continued*).

189. Two kinds of conditional sentences have one or other of the auxiliaries *should* and *would* in the apodosis in English and either the present or imperfect subjunctive in both protasis¹ and apodosis in Latin. Thus—

*if you were to deny this, you
would be wrong*

sī hōc neges, errēs

*if I feared the enemy, I should
not be fighting*

**sī hostēs timērem,
pugnārem**

¹ Occasionally the sense may admit the pluperfect subjunctive in the protasis (cp. § 192); *e.g. Sī tacuissem, ubi hodiē essēs? If I had held my tongue, where would you be to-day?*

190. In these conditional sentences, in which the apodosis in English has either *should* or *would*—

... the **present subjunctive** is used in Latin if the condition is represented as open to fulfilment (of course in the future), *e.g.* "If you were (at any time) to deny this, you would be wrong";

... the **imperfect subjunctive** is used in Latin if the condition is represented as unfulfilled in the present; *e.g.* "If I (now) feared the enemy (but I do not fear them), I should not be fighting."

Learn Vocabulary 45.

VOCABULARY 45.

curs-us, -ūs, *m.*, *course*.

exempl-um, -ī, *n.*, *example*.

exinde, *adv.*, *thenceforth*.

iniūri-a, -ae, *f.*, *injury*, *act of violence*.

iac-eō, -ēre (*adjacent*), *lie*, *lie dead*.

iuss-um, -ī, *n.*, *command*, *order*.

mōt-us, -ūs, *m.*, *rising*, *revolt*.

pall-eo, -ēre, **pallu-i**, —, *be pale*.

Pompēi-us, -ī, *m.*, *Pompeius*, *celebrated Roman general*).

praeb-eō, -ēre, *furnish*, *show*, *set*.

praedō, **praedōn-is**, *m.*, *robber*, *private*.

rub-eō, -ēre, **rubu-i**, —, (*ruby*), *blush*.

ten-eō, -ēre, **tenu-i**, **tent-um**, *hold*.

cursum teneō, *hold on one's course*.

LESSON 46.

Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive active of **moneō** (p. 67).

It should be noted that the perfect subjunctive active is always (except in the first person singular) identical in form with the future-perfect indicative active.

191. As in the indicative, so in the subjunctive, the perfect and pluperfect tenses have the same personal endings in all verbs. It should be noted that the pluperfect subjunctive active (first person singular) may always be found by adding **m** to the perfect infinitive active. *e.g.* **amāvisse**, **amāvisssem**; **monuisse**, **monuisssem**.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (*concluded*).

192. Conditional sentences having either of the auxiliaries *should have* or *would have* in the apodosis in English require the **pluperfect subjunctive** in both protasis¹ and apodosis in Latin. Thus—

*if I had feared the enemy, I
should not have fought.*

*sī hostēs tīmuissem, nōn
pugnāvīssem.*

Learn Vocabulary 46.

VOCABULARY 46.

clār-us, -a, -um, famous, illustrious, renowned.

displic-eō, -ēre, displease (w. dat.).

gubernātor, gubernātōr-is, m. (governor), pilot.

incolum-is, -e, unhurt, safe and sound.

insons, inson-t-is, innocent.

iūment-um, -i, n., baggage-animal.

lat-eō, -ēre, latu-i, —, (latent), hide.

litter-ae, -ārum, f.pl., letters, literature.

perterr-eō, -ēre, to strike with panic.

probr-um, -i, n., reproach.

sicāri-us, -i, m., assassin.

statim, adv., at once, immediately.

stud-eō, -ēre, studu-i, —, devote oneself to (with dat.).

stup-eō, -ēre, stupu-i, —, be aghast.

LESSON 47.

Learn the infinitive, gerund, and participles active of *moneō* (p. 67.)

193. When *he, she, it, or they*, in a dependent statement or a dependent question refers to the subject of the principal sentence it must be translated by *sē* (§ 99) ; similarly *suus* (§ 102) is used in a dependent statement or a dependent question of that which belongs to the subject of the principal sentence, if this subject is in the third person.

*the queen denies that she (her-
self) is ill*

rēgina negat sē aegrōtāre

*the merchant asked if his son
was well*

*mercātor rogāvit num filius
suus valēret*

¹ Occasionally the sense may admit the imperfect subjunctive in the protasis (cp. § 189) ; e.g. *Nisi pater tuus essem, tacuissem, If I were not your father, I should have held my tongue.*

194. RULE.—Verbs of **hoping** are constructed with the **accusative and infinitive**; and if the sense shows that the action hoped for is subsequent to the hoping, the **future infinitive** is used.

dux spērāvit sē hostēs superā- tūrum (esse).	<i>the general hoped to overcome the enemy.</i>
spērō mē orātiōnem habitūrum (esse).	<i>I hope to make a speech.</i>
spērō tē orātiōnem habitūrum (esse).	<i>I hope (that) you will make a speech.</i>
spērō tē valēre.	<i>I hope (that) you are well.</i>
spērō tē nōn doluisse.	<i>I hope (that) you were not grieved.</i>

Obs.—In the above examples **esse** is placed in brackets (), as it is often omitted, the future participle standing alone in place of the future infinitive active.

Learn Vocabulary 47.

VOCABULARY 47.

angu-is, -is, m., <i>snake.</i>	Graeci-a, -ae, f., <i>Greece.</i>
appār-eō, -ēre, <i>appear.</i>	laev-us, -a, -um, <i>left, on the left.</i>
calamitās, calamitāt-is, f., <i>calamity.</i>	molesti-ae, -ārum, f.pl. <i>(molest), annoyances.</i>
dēlect-us, -ūs, m., <i>levy (of recruits).</i>	rip-a, -ae, f. <i>(riparian), bank.</i>
dēliber-ō, -āre, <i>deliberate.</i>	senāt-us, -ūs, m., <i>senate.</i>
dol-eō, -ēre <i>(dolorous), grieve.</i>	spēr-ō, -āre <i>(desperate), hope.</i>
flōr-eō, -ēre, flōru-ī, —, <i>flourish.</i>	vīt-ō, -āre <i>(inevitable), avoid.</i>
fūnest-us, -a, -um, <i>baneful.</i>	

LESSON 48.

Learn the present and imperfect indicative and the imperative active of **regō** (pp. 68, 69).

195. The third conjugation is also known as the **consonant conjugation**, and is characterised by short vowels. In the imperfect indicative, however, **ē** is found immediately following the base, as in the second conjugation.

196. RULE.—The place whither motion is directed is expressed by the accusative with the preposition *ad*, *to*, or *in*, *into*.

Galli lēgātōs in Britānniam mittunt *the Gauls send ambassadors to Britain*

But no preposition is used if the goal is

- (a) the name of a town, or of an island small enough to be regarded as one place ;
- (b) the words **domum**, *home*, **rūs**, *the country* (and a few others) ;

Brundisium ad Caesarem lēgātōs misi *I have sent ambassadors to Caesar at Brundisium (lit. to Brundisium to Caesar)*

NOTE.—If a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs**, *city*, **oppidum**, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town, a preposition must be used.

consul lēgātōs ad urbem Rōmam misit *the consul sent ambassadors to the city of Rome*

Learn Vocabulary 48.

VOCABULARY 48.

ante, prep. (with acc.), *before*.

Ariōvist-us, -i, m., *Ariovistus*.

bene, adv., *well*.

dīc-ō, -ere, dīx-i, dict-um (imperative **dīc**), (dictionary), *say*.

discēd-ō, -ere, discess-i, discess-um, *depart*.

domum, acc. (domestic), *home*.

dūc-ō, -ere, dux-i, duct-um (imperative **dūc**), *lead*.

epistol-a, -ae, f. (epistle), *letter*.

fortūn-a, -ae, f., *fortune*.

fret-um, -i, n., *strait*.

gerō, -ere, gess-i, gest-um, *wage*.

in, prep. (with acc.), *into, upon, against*.

intelleg-ō, -ere, intellex-i, intellect-um (intelligent), *understand*.

iung-ō, -ere, iunx-i, iunct-um, *join*.

mitt-ō, -ere, mis-i, miss-um, *send*.

nunti-us, -i, m., *messenger*.

permitt-ō, -ere, permis-i, permiss-um (permit), *entrust*.

Rhēn-us, -i, m., *Rhine*.

scrib-ō, -ere, scrips-i, script-um (scribe), *write*.

trans, prep. (with acc.), *across*.

viv-ō, -ere, vix-i, vict-um (revive), *live*.

LESSON 49.

Learn the remaining indicative tenses and the infinitive, gerund, and participles active of **regō** (pp. 68, 69).

197. RULE.—The place **whence** motion is directed is expressed by the ablative without a preposition if it is (a) the name of a town or of an island small enough to be regarded as one place, or (b) **domō**, *from home*, **rūre** *from the country*.

nuntium ad Caesarem Rōmā mīsi *from Rome I sent a messenger to Caesar.*

NOTE.—In all other cases a preposition must be used, and also if a substantive (*e.g.* **urbs**, *city*, **oppidum**, *town*) stands in apposition to the name of the town or small island.

ab urbe Rōmā nuntium mīsi *I sent a messenger from the city of Rome*

Learn Vocabulary 49.

VOCABULARY 49.

ag-ō, -ere, **ēg-ī**, **act-um**, *drive*.
consist-ō, -ere, **constit-ī**, **constit-um**, *settle, halt*.
contend-ō, -ere, **contend-ī**, **content-um**, *hasten*.
crēd-ō, -ere, **crēdid-ī**, **crēdit-um** (*credit*), *believe* (with *dat.*).
ex or **ē**, *prep.* (with *abl.*), *out of, from*.
excēd-ō, -ere, **excess-ī**, **excess-um**, *retire*.
impediment-a, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (*impediment*), *baggage*.
irrup-o, -ere, **irrup-ī**, **irrupt-um** (*irruption*), *break into*.

Massili-a, -ae, *f.*, *Marseilles*.
occurr-ō, -ere, **occurr-ī**, **occurs-um** (*occur*), *fall in with, fall upon* (with *dat.*).
parc-ō, -ere, **peperc-ī**, **pars-um** (*parsimony*), *be sparing, spare* (with *dat.*).
paulātim, *adv.*, *gradually*.
praeceps, **praecipit-is** (*precipitous*), *headlong*.
relinqu-ō, -ere, **reliqu-ī**, **relict-um**, *relinquish, leave*.
vinc-ō, -ere, **vic-ī**, **vict-um** (*victory*), *conquer*.

LESSON 50.

Learn the subjunctive active of **regō** (p. 69).

Revise § 55 (pp. 24, 25).

FINAL CLAUSES.

198. A clause which expresses the purpose or end (**finis**) of the action of the principal sentence is called a **final clause**. The **subjunctive** is the mood used in Latin final clauses, and the tense is the **present** subjunctive in **primary** sequence (§ 160), and the **imperfect** subjunctive in **historic** sequence.

A final clause is usually introduced by **ut** or **utī** (*that, in order that*), or **nē** (*lest, in order that . . . not*).

moneō tē nē Caesarī displiceās *I advise you not to displease Caesar*

monuī tē nē Caesarī displicērēs *I advised you not to displease Caesar*

NOTE.—Very frequently the English infinitive expresses purpose and must be translated by a present or imperfect subjunctive. This infinitive is especially common after verbs of commanding, advising, and striving.¹

199. *The city of, the town of* is expressed in Latin by the name of the town (island, country, river, etc.) in apposition to the substantive **urbs, oppidum (insula, flūmen, etc.)**.

urbs Rōma oppugnāta est *the city of Rome was assaulted*

200. If these substantives stand in apposition to the name of a town expressing “place where” (§ 55), they are put in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **in**.

Athēnis in urbe opulentissimā *I was educated in the wealthy city of Athens*
ēducātus sum

Learn Vocabulary 50 (p. 107).

¹ RHYME :— With *ask, command, advise, and strive*,
By **ut** translate infinitive.

VOCABULARY 50.

afflig-ō, -ere, afflix-i, afflict-um (affliction), <i>dash</i> .	finx-ō, -ere, finx-i, fict-um (fiction), <i>feign</i> .
claud-ō, -ere, claus-i, claus-um, <i>shut</i> .	imper-ō, -āre (imperious), <i>com-</i> <i>mand, give orders</i> (with dat.).
contemn-ō, -ere, contemps-i, con- tempt-um, <i>despise</i> .	inerm-is, -e, <i>unarmed</i> .
cūr-ō, -āre, <i>take care</i> .	leg-ō, -ere, lēg-i, lect-um (legible), <i>read</i> .
em-ō, -ere, ēm-i, empt-um, <i>buy</i> .	ōr-ō, -āre (oration), <i>beg, beseech</i> .
ērump-ō, -ere, ērūp-i, ērupt-um (eruption), <i>break out, sally</i> <i>forth</i> .	pell-ō, -ere, pepul-i, puls-um (propel), <i>drive</i> .
	port-a, -ae, f. (portal), <i>gate</i> .

LESSON 51.

Learn the active voice of **audiō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 70, 71).

201. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote **place where** in the following expressions:—

terrā, <i>by land,</i>	dextrā, <i>on the right,</i>
marī, <i>by sea,</i>	laevā, <i>on the left,</i>
locō (usually with an adjective), <i>in place,</i>	

and some less common words.

Gallōs terrā marique superā- vimus	<i>we have overcome the Gauls by</i> <i>land and sea</i>
---	---

202. **Place where** may also be expressed without a preposition if the substantive is qualified by **medius**, *middle*, or **tōtus**, *whole*.

carcerem mediā urbe aedifi- cant	<i>they are building a prison in the</i> <i>middle of the city</i>
consulēs tōtā Italiā dēlectum habēbant	<i>the consuls were holding a levy all</i> <i>over Italy</i>

Obs.—A preposition is required in expressions denoting **place where**, except (1) in accordance with §§ 201, 202, and (2) in the case of names of towns and small islands (§ 55).

Learn Vocabulary 51 (p. 108).

VOCABULARY 51.

N.B.—In the case of verbs of which the infinitive ending only (-āre, -ēre, -īre) is given, it is to be assumed that they are conjugated throughout like **amō** or **moneō** or **audiō**; if a verb is irregular in its principal parts, the fact is indicated.

aper-iō, -īre, aperu-i, apert-um
(aperture), *open*.

aud-iō, -īre (audience), *hear*.

comper-iō, -īre, comper-i, com-
pert-um, *ascertain*.

consent-iō, -īre, consens-i, con-
sens-um (consent), *come to an*
understanding (with).

conven-iō, -īre, convēn-i, con-
vent-um (convent), *assemble*.

custōd-iō, -īre (custody), *keep,*
guard.

dorm-iō, -īre (dormitory), *sleep*.

exul, exul-is, m., exile.

idōne-us, -a, -um, suitable.

iniqu-us, -a, -um (iniquity), *un-*
fair, disadvantageous, unfavour-
able.

loc-us, -i, m. (local), *place*.

medi-us, -a, -um, middle.

mūn-iō, -īre (ammunition), *fortify*.

opulent-us, -a, -um, opulent,
flourishing.

pōn-ō, -ere, posu-i, posit-um,
place, pitch (a camp).

pūn-iō, -īre, punish.

reper-io, -īre, repper-i, repertum,
find.

sc-iō, -īre (science), *know*.

sepel-iō, -īre, sepeliv-i, sepult-um
(sepulture), *bury*.

ven-iō, -īre, vēn-i, vent-um, come

vinc-iō, -īre, vinx-i, vinct-um,
bind.

LESSON 52.

Learn the subjunctive active of **audiō** (p. 71).

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

203. A **consecutive clause** expresses the consequence or result of the action of the principal sentence. It is usually introduced in Latin by **ut** (*that, so that*), or, if the clause is negative, by **ut** followed by **nōn** or some other negative word. The principal sentence often contains a demonstrative adverb meaning *so*, e.g. **adeō, ita, sic, tam**, or an adjective such as **tot** (indeclinable), *so many*, **tantus** (*so great*), **tālis, such**.

The mood of the verb in the consecutive clause is always **subjunctive**, and the rule for the sequence of tenses must be observed.

ita vivit ut omnibus cārus sit.	<i>he so lives that he is dear to all.</i>
accidit ut numquam Rōmae essem	<i>it so happened that I was never at Rome</i>
adeō mē timet ut adhuc tacuerit	<i>he fears me so much that he has been silent till now</i>
tanta erat operis firmitūdō ut multōs annōs dūrāvisset	<i>such was the strength of the work that it had lasted many years</i>

NOTE 1.—**Nē** (§ 198) must never be used in a consecutive clause.

NOTE 2.—In consecutive clauses the perfect subjunctive is sometimes found where the rule for the sequence of tenses would require the imperfect.

Learn Vocabulary 52.

VOCABULARY 52.

accid-it, -ere, accid-it, —, verb	nondum, adv., not yet.
impers. (accident), <i>it happens.</i>	pavor, pavō-is, m., panic.
adeō, adv., so.	praeven-iō, -īre, praeven-i, prae-
adven-iō, -īre, advēn-i, advent-	vent-um (prevent), get the start
um (advent), arrive.	of.
anim-us, -ī, m. (animate), mind.	repentīn-us, -a, -um, sudden.
disert-us, -a, -um, eloquent.	statiō, statiō-is, f. (station), post.
moll-iō, -īre, mitigate, soothe.	strepit-us, -ūs, m., uproar, din.
multitūdō, multitūdin-is, f. mul-	tam, adv., so.
titude.	vox, vōc-is, f., voice.

LESSON 53.

Learn the active voice of **capiō** (p. 80).

204. All verbs of the third conjugation (*i.e.* with present infinitive active ending in **-ere**) which in the present indicative active end in **-iō** are conjugated like **capiō**.

Obs.—**Capiō** is conjugated like **audiō** in those parts in which the **i** of **audiō** is followed by a vowel, *i.e.* in which the **i** is short (**i**); in other parts **capiō** is conjugated like **regō**.

Learn Vocabulary 53 (p. 110).

VOCABULARY 53.

ad ūnum, phrase, *to a man*.
cap-iō, -ere, **cēp-i**, **capt-um** (capture), *take*.
convent-us, -ūs, *m., assembly, council*.
conventum agō, *hold a council*.
corrip-iō, -ere, **corripu-i**, **corrept-um**, *snatch up*.
cup-iō, -ere, **cupīv-i**, **cupīt-um** (cupidity), *desire*.
curr-ō, -ere, **cucurr-i**, **curs-um** (course), *run*.
effic-iō, -ere, **effēc-i**, **effect-um** (efficient), *bring it about*.
fac-iō, -ere, **fēc-i**, **fact-um** (imperative fac), *make, do*.

fug-a, -ae, *f., flight*.
fug-iō, -ere, **fūg-i**, **fugit-um**, *flee*.
interfic-iō, -ere, **interfēc-i**, **interfect-um**, *kill*.
iac-iō, -ere, **iēc-i**, **iact-um**, *throw*.
legiō, **legiōn-is**, *f., legion*.
par-io, -ere, **peper-i**, **part-um** (parent), *bring forth, gain*.
praefic-iō, -ere, **praefēc-i**, **praefect-um** (prefect), *set over* (with acc. and dat.).
quat-iō, -ere, —, **quass-um**, *shake*.
quid, *what?* (§ 118).
salūs, **salūt-is**, *f., safety*.
satisfac-iō, -ere, **satisfēc-i**, **satisfact-um**, *satisfy* (with dat.).

LESSON 54.

Learn the indicative and imperative passive of **amō** (pp. 72, 73).

205. In the case of the tenses conjugated with the help of the perfect participle it must be remembered that the forms given in the table are masculine and are to be used only if the subject is masculine ; cp. p. 20, footnote.

DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

206. RULE.—When two or more alternatives are put in the form of a question, the first is usually introduced by **utrum**, *whether*, and the second and subsequent alternatives by **an**, *or*.

utrum Caesarem an Pompēium laudās?
utrum pugnābitis an fugiētis?
utrum filius meus tibi pāruiit annōn?

do you praise Caesar or Pompeius?
will you fight or flee?
did my son obey you or not?

Learn Vocabulary 54 (p. 111).

VOCABULARY 54.

administr-ō, -āre, administer,	cās-us, -ūs, m., chance.
<i>carry on, manage.</i>	consili-um, -ī, n. (counsel), pur-
agger, agger-is, m., earthwork.	<i>pose, design.</i>
amplific-ō, -āre, amplify, extend.	vall-um, -ī, n., rampart.

LESSON 55.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **amō** (p. 73).

DEPENDENT DOUBLE QUESTIONS.

207. RULE.—Double questions, like single questions, may be reported, and are then called dependent double questions. The only change is in the verb, which passes into the **subjunctive** and follows the rules already given for the sequence of tenses.

rogō utrum Caesarem an	<i>I ask whether you praise Caesar</i>
Pompēium laudēs	<i>or Pompeius</i>
rogāvī utrum Caesarem an	<i>I asked whether you were praising</i>
Pompēium laudārēs	<i>Caesar or Pompeius</i>

In a dependent double question *or not* is expressed by **necne** rather than by **annōn**.

208. RULE.—A verb or phrase expressing **doubt**, if preceded by a **negative**, is followed by a **subjunctive** clause introduced by **quīn**, (*but*) *that*. The same construction is used after **nēmō est**, *there is no one (who . . . not)*; **nihil est**, *there is nothing (that . . . not)*. Sequence of tenses is observed.

nōn dubium est quīn Caesar	<i>there is no doubt (but) that Caesar</i>
adveniet	<i>is on the point of arriving</i>
nēmō erat quīn tibi crēderet.	<i>there was no one who did not</i>
	<i>believe you</i>

NOTE.—When used without a negative, such expressions are usually followed by a dependent question.

sapientēs dubitant utrum	<i>philosophers doubt whether the</i>
dīvitēs an pauperēs fēliciōrēs	<i>rich or the poor are happier</i>
sint	

Learn Vocabulary 55 (p. 112).

VOCABULARY 55.

ancor-a, -ae, f., *anchor.*

ariēs, ariet-is, m., *ram, battering-ram.*

dēlig-ō, -āre, *fasten.*

dubi-us, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

foss-a, -ae, f., *trench.*

fraus, fraud-is, f., *fraud, craft, guile.*

fraude (abl. of manner), *by guile.*

onerāri-us, -a, -um, *burden-bearing.*

nāvis onerāria, *merchant-vessel.*

vis (acc. **vīm**, no gen. or dat., abl. **vī**), *f., force, violence.*

vir-ēs, -ium, f.pl. (pl. of **vīs**), *strength.*

LESSON 56.

Learn the infinitive and participles passive of **amō** (p. 73).

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION.

209. In such sentences as—

- (a) *the day being fine, I took a walk ;*
- (b) *all else failing, I shall trust to you ;*
- (c) *all his schemes having failed, he was thrown into despair ;*
- (d) *the enemy having been driven off, the British entered the town ;*

the phrase containing a participle, although it adverbially modifies the statement, is regarded as independent of the construction, and has been given the name of **nominative absolute** (**absolūtus** = *freed*).

210. A corresponding construction exists in Latin, but the case of the participle and of the word with which the participle agrees is **ablative**. The participles used in Latin in the **ablative absolute** construction are the **present participle active** and the **perfect participle passive**.

Obs.—The ablative is thus used as being the instrumental case. The ablative absolute expresses an action which accompanies that of the finite verb, and is sometimes known as the ablative of the attendant circumstance.

211. If neither of these is available, an English nominative absolute phrase must be rendered by a Latin clause—

temporal, conditional, or other, according to the meaning ; and such a clause is always admissible, even if the required participle exists. Thus, in the examples given above, the nominative absolute might be represented by clauses such as—

- (a) *as the day was fine . . .* (causal) ;
- (b) *if all else fails . . .* (conditional) ;
- (d) *when the enemy had been driven off . . .* (temporal).

212. The ablative absolute is, however, more used in Latin than is the nominative absolute in English, so that an English temporal or other clause may often conveniently be rendered by it ; but the form of the expression must be so altered that the participle may be either present active or perfect passive ; moreover, the substantive or pronoun with which this participle agrees must be neither the subject nor the object of the sentence. Thus—

Sentence with dependent clause.	Sentence as rendered with ablative absolute
<i>while the consul was saying these words, the horsemen departed</i>	<i>the consul saying these words, the horsemen departed</i>

haec dicente consule, equitēs discessērunt

<i>when many had been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the river</i>	<i>many having been killed, the remainder threw themselves into the</i>
---	---

multis interfectis, reliquī sē in flūmēn praecipitāvērunt

<i>the townsfolk, when they heard the shouts, slew the hostages</i>	<i>the townsfolk, the shouts having been heard, slew the hostages</i>
---	---

oppidānī, clāmōribus auditis, obsidēs interfēcērunt

Obs.—In the last sentence it should be noticed (1) that *hearing* really means *having heard*, for the slaying of the hostages followed as the result of the hearing, (2) that as Latin has no perfect participle active, the active form *having heard the shouts* is converted to the passive form *the shouts having been heard*, and, *the shouts* being neither the subject nor the object of the verb *slew*, the phrase is put in the ablative absolute.

Learn Vocabulary 56 (p. 114).

VOCABULARY 56.

apud , prep. (with acc.), <i>in the presence of, among</i>	expōn-ō, -ere, exposu-ī, exposit-um , <i>land</i> (transitive).
arx , arc-is , <i>f., citadel.</i>	frustrā , adv. (frustrate), <i>in vain.</i>
auxili-um, -ī, n. (auxiliary), <i>help, aid</i> ; pl. <i>reinforcements.</i>	invād-ō, -ere, invās-ī, invās-um , <i>invade, seize.</i>
concili-um, -ī, n. , <i>council.</i>	numer-us, -ī, m. , <i>number.</i>
convoc-ō, -āre (convoke), <i>summon, call together.</i>	prob-ō, -āre (approbation), <i>ap-prove.</i>
crem-ō, -āre , <i>burn, cremate.</i>	redūc-ō, -ere, redux-ī, reduct-um , <i>lead back.</i>
dēclār-ō, -āre , <i>declare.</i>	sententi-a, -ae, f. , <i>opinion.</i>

LESSON 57.

THE GERUNDIVE.

213. The **gerundive** is an **adjective** formed from **transitive** verbs, and denotes that a person or thing is *fit* or *meet* to be the object of the verbal action; e.g. **amandus**, *lovable* or *fit to be loved*; **dēplōrandus**, *to be lamented*; **cantandus**, *fit to be sung of*; **arandus**, *arable*; **narrandus**, *fit to be narrated*; **honōrandus**, *meet to be honoured*. The person by whom the action is to be performed is expressed by a dative.

bonī semper amandī sunt omnibus	<i>good men must always be loved by all</i>
--	---

Obs.—In the case of intransitive verbs, *i.e.* verbs which do not govern an accusative case, and consequently have no gerundive, the gerund (§ 176) may be used. Note the different constructions to be employed in translating into Latin the following :—

parentēs sunt honōrandī (transitive)	<i>parents should be honoured</i>
parentibus est obtemperandum (intransitive)	<i>parents must be obeyed</i> (lit. <i>there is a duty of giving way to parents</i>)

214. There is another use of the gerundive quite distinct from the above; viz. that known as the **gerundive construction**. As neither the accusative nor the dative gerund

ever governs a direct object (§ 175, NOTE), its place must be supplied by this gerundive construction, the rule for which is as follows.

The substantive which would be the object of the gerund is put into the case in which the gerund would be, and the gerundive is made to agree with that object; thus instead of translating

I devote myself to correcting books

by **studeō** with dative gerund of **ēmendō** governing a direct object, we put **librī** in the dative and make the gerundive **ēmendandus** agree with it. We thus get

studeō librīs ēmendandīs.

215. Examples are—

equitēs ad urbem oppugnandam parātī erant

the cavalry were ready for assaulting the city

Caesar Rōmam contendit ad auxilia comparanda

Caesar hastens to Rome to collect reinforcements

sunt nonnullī acuendīs puerōrum ingeniīs nōn inūtilēs lūsūs

there are some games not un-serviceable for sharpening boys' wits

216. The gerundive construction is usually substituted for an ablative gerund with a direct object and often for a genitive gerund with a direct object.

tōtūm diē in fābulīs narrandīs consūmēs

you will spend the whole day in telling tales

hūc vēnī filiae exspectandae causā (or grātiā) or filiam exspectandi causā (or grātiā)

I came hither for the sake of awaiting (to await) my daughter

217. From the above examples it will be seen that the gerundive construction may be used to express purpose either (a) in the genitive with **causā** or **grātiā**, or (b) in the accusative preceded by the preposition **ad**.

Learn Vocabulary 57 (p. 116).

VOCABULARY 57.

apt-us, -a, -um (apt), <i>fit, adapted.</i>	report-ō, -āre , <i>bring back.</i>
Hannibal, Hannibal-is, m. , <i>Hannibal</i> (a Carthaginian general).	reserv-ō, -āre , <i>reserve.</i>
imperi-um, -i, n. , <i>empire, rule.</i>	sollicit-ō, -āre , <i>work upon, instigate.</i>
maximē , <i>adv.</i> , <i>very greatly.</i>	summ-a, -ae, f. (sum), <i>whole, chief responsibility.</i>
occāsīō, occāsīōn-is, f. , <i>opportunity.</i>	tent-ō, -āre , <i>try, tempt.</i>
pristin-us, -a, -um (pristine), <i>former.</i>	ūnivers-us, -a, -um , <i>universal.</i>
prōnunti-ō, -āre , <i>proclaim.</i>	valētūdō, valētūdīn-is, f. (valedudinarian), <i>health.</i>

LESSON 58.

Learn the passive voice of **moneō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 74, 75).

218. The conjugation of **moneō** differs from that of **amō** in the same way in the passive as it does in the active, *i.e.* the vowel immediately following the base is **e**, not **a**, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative (except in the first person singular of the present), in the imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, present infinitive, and the gerundive (cp. § 181), but in other respects these parts are formed in the same way in the two conjugations.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES : PRESENT OR FUTURE TIME.

219. In such sentences as—

*when I do wrong, I get punished ;
when I see you, I will tell you all about it ;
as soon as I arrived, I went upstairs ;*

the clauses introduced by *when*, *as soon as*, or the like are called temporal, *i.e.* they define the time (**tempus**) at which the action of the principal sentence takes place, relatively to another action, *viz.* that of the clause.

220. In Latin temporal clauses in which the time is present or future, the mood used is **indicative**, and the tense is that which the meaning requires.

221. The English idiom, by which the present is used in the second sentence given in § 219, must not be reproduced in Latin, but the future or future-perfect must be used if the time is future. Cp. § 187.

222. The commonest temporal conjunction in Latin is **cum**¹.

cum permagna praemia sunt, est causa peccandi	<i>when the rewards are very great, it is a reason for wrong-doing</i>
cum epistolam lēgerō, re- spondēbō	<i>when I have read the letter, I will reply</i>
cum adventābunt equitēs, fugite	<i>when the horsemen are on the point of arriving, flee</i>

Obs.—Commands naturally refer to future time.

Learn Vocabulary 58.

VOCABULARY 58.

auctōritās , auctōritāt-is, <i>f.</i> , in- fluence, authority.	ē vitā excēdō, <i>die</i> .
aug-eō , -ēre, aux-i, auct-um, increase (transitive).	graviter , adv., heavily, deeply.
circum , prep. (with acc.), around.	mov-eō , -ēre, mōv-i, mōt-um, move (trans.); pass., move (in- trans.).
clāmōr , clāmōr-is, <i>m.</i> , cheer, shout	obsid-eō , -ēre, obsēd-i, ōbsess-um,
comiti-a , -ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i> , election.	perven-iō , -ire, pervēn-i, per- vent-um, arrive.
comitia habeo, hold an election.	tellūs , tellūr-is, <i>f.</i> , the earth.
commov-eō , -ēre, commōv-i, commōt-um, stir, move.	undique , adv., from all sides, on all sides.
dēl-eō , -ēre, dēlēv-i, dēlēt-um, destroy.	

¹ Sometimes spelt quum.

LESSON 59.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **moneō** (p. 75).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES : PAST TIME.

223. In such sentences as—

*when I was at school, I used to learn Latin ;
when he had said this, he went away ;
when the envoys arrived, Caesar demanded hostages ;*

in which the action of the temporal clause and that of the principal sentence belong to the **same series of events**, the Latin conjunction **cum** is followed by the **subjunctive mood**, the **imperfect** or **pluperfect** being used according to the requirements of the sense.

cum Athēnis essem, Zēnōnem audiēbam frequenter *when I was at Athens, I often heard Zeno's lectures*

haec cum dixisset, suōs in hostēs duxit *when he had said this, he led his men against the enemy*

cum nostrōs fugere vīdisset, domum discessit *when he saw that our men were fleeing, he went off home*

Obs.—In the last example the *pluperfect* subjunctive is used because the action of seeing had preceded that of departing.

NOTE.—If the action of the temporal clause is represented as in no way connected with that of the principal sentence, **cum** is followed by the indicative ; e.g. **Cum** Caesar in Galliam vēnit, potentissimi erant Haedui, *When Caesar came to Gaul (or at the time of Caesar's coming to Gaul), the Haedui were very powerful.*

224. Other common temporal conjunctions are **ut** or **utī**, *when, as soon as*, **ubi** or **ubī**, *when*, followed by the **indicative**.

Pompēius, ut equitātum suum fugātum vīdit, aciē excessit *when (or as soon as) Pompeius saw his cavalry put to flight, he left the line of battle*

ubi ea diēs quam constituerat vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, concilium convocāvit *when the day which he had appointed had come and the ambassadors had returned to him, he summoned a meeting*

NOTE.—The perfect indicative is used after **ut** or **ubi** where, if the clause were induced by **cum**, the **pluperfect subjunctive** would stand, and the perfect indicative so used is often (as in the example last given) rendered by the English past-perfect.

225. RULE.—Verbs which in the active voice govern both an accusative of the person and an accusative of the thing (§ 188) may **retain** the **accusative** of the thing in the passive

linguam Latinam ā magistrō	<i>we are taught Latin by the</i>
docēmur	<i>master</i>

Learn Vocabulary 59.

VOCABULARY 59.

cohib-eō, -ēre, restrain.	dolor, dolōr-is, m., grief, indigna-
commilitō, commilitōn-is, m.,	tion.
<i>comrade, fellow-soldier.</i>	impetum faciō, charge (military
consūm-ō, -ere, consumes-ī, con-	phrase).
sumpt-um, consume, spend.	inter, prep. (with acc.), among.
distribu-ō, -ere, distribu-ī, distri-	nec . . . nec, or neque . . . neque,
būt-um, distribute.	conj., neither . . . nor.
	revoc-ō, -āre, call back.

LESSON 60.

Learn the passive voice of **regō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 76, 77).

CAUSAL CLAUSES.

226. Causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions **quod** or **quia** (*because*), **quoniam** (*since* or *seeing that*). If the cause is stated as a fact, the indicative is used.

vēni quod mē appellāvistī	<i>I came because you called me</i>
----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

227. RULE.—Verbs which govern the dative cannot be used personally in the passive : the **impersonal** construction must be employed.

mihī crēditur, tibi invidētur

I am believed, you are envied (lit. there is a putting trust in me, there is a feeling of envy against you)

captivis parcētur

the prisoners will be spared (lit. there will be a showing of mercy to the prisoners)

Learn Vocabulary 60.

VOCABULARY 60.

adduc-ō, -ere, addux-i, adduct-um, *bring*.

commeāt-us, -ūs, m., *supplies*.

dēser-ō, -ere, dēseru-i, dēsert-um, *desert*.

dilig-ō, -ere, dilex-i, dilect-um, *esteem*.

expell-ō, -ere, expul-i, expulsum (*expel*), *drive out*.

fav-eō, -ēre, fāv-i, faut-um, *be favourable*.

incend-ō, -ere, incend-i, incens-um (*incendiary*), *burn* (*trans.*).

instru-ō, -ere, instrux-i, instruct-um, *draw up*.

invid-eō, -ēre, invid-i, invis-um, *be envious, envy* (*with dat.*).

opus est, *there is need* (*with abl. of the thing needed*).

praesidi-um, -i, n., *garrison*.

subduc-ō, -ere, subdux-i, subductum, *beach, haul up on shore*

LESSON 61.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **regō** (p. 77).

CAUSAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

228. In a causal clause introduced by **quod** (or by **quia** or **quoniam**) the subjunctive is used if the speaker does not wish to vouch for the truth of the cause assigned. The conjunction thus followed by the subjunctive may often be translated *on the ground that . . . , because (as he said . . .), because (so he thought). . . .*

dolēbat quod peccāvisset

he was grieving because (he thought) he had done wrong

229. A causal clause introduced by **cum** (*since*) is always in the **subjunctive**. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 160) must be observed.

quae¹ cum ita sint, domum *and since these things are so, I*
discēdam *shall go home*

230. RULE.—The expression **opus est**, *there is need* (lit. *there is work to be done*), is usually constructed with an **ablative** of the thing or person needed, and a **dative** of the person needing.

duce nōbis opus est *we have need of a leader* (lit. *there*
is for us work to be done with
a leader)

Learn Vocabulary 61.

VOCABULARY 61.

dēduc-ō, -ere, dēdux-ī, dēduct-	iam , adv., <i>now, by this time.</i>
-um (deduct), <i>launch</i> (lit. <i>bring</i>	poster-us, -a, -um (posterity),
<i>down from the shore</i>).	<i>following.</i>
dimitt-ō, -ere, dimis-ī, dimiss-um	reg-ō, -ere, rex-ī, rect-um (regi-
(dismiss), <i>disband.</i>	<i>ment</i>), <i>rule, govern.</i>
dirim-ō, -ere, dirēm-ī, dirempt-	trād-ō, -ere, trādid-ī, trādit-um,
um , <i>break down, destroy.</i>	<i>hand over, betray.</i>
interclūd-ō, -ere, interclūs-ī, in-	vic-us, -i, m., village.
terclūs-um , <i>cut off.</i>	

LESSON 62.

Learn the passive voice of **audiō**, except the subjunctive (pp. 78, 79).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

231. Clauses introduced by conjunctions meaning *although* are called **concessive clauses**.

232. **Etsi** (*although, even if*) is used with the **indicative** when that which is conceded is **regarded as fact**.

etsi stultus es, sapientior es *although you are foolish, you are*
quam frāter tuus *wiser than your brother*

¹ quae (§ 114) = et ea (§ 111).

233. Quamquam (*although*) is always followed by the indicative.

quamquam festinās, nōn *though you are in a hurry, the*
est mora longa *delay is not great*

Learn Vocabulary 62.

VOCABULARY 62.

admitt-ō, -ere, admis-i, admiss-um, <i>commit (crime).</i>	ērud-iō, -īre (<i>crudite</i>), <i>train, polish.</i>
ars, art-is, f., art ; pl. the arts.	liberāl-is, -e, <i>liberal (i.e. befitting a free man).</i>
carcer, carcer-is, m. (<i>incarcerate</i>), <i>prison.</i>	saepissimē, <i>adv., very often.</i>
effug-iō, -ere, effūg-i, —, <i>escape.</i>	tamen, <i>adv., nevertheless.</i>
ēgregiē, <i>adv., admirably.</i>	test-is, c. (<i>testify</i>), <i>witness.</i>
ēmoll-iō, -īre (<i>emollicent</i>), <i>refine.</i>	

LESSON 63.

Learn the subjunctive passive of **audiō** (p. 79).

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (*concluded*).

234. RULE.—Cum (*although*), **quamvis** (*although*), **licet** (*although*), require the **subjunctive**. So too do **etsi** and **etiāmsi** (*even if*), if they introduce concessions made merely for the sake of argument.

cum primī hostium concidis- sent, tamen ācrit̄er reliquī resistēbant	<i>although the first ranks of the</i> <i>enemy had fallen, nevertheless</i> <i>the rest resisted vigorously</i>
quamvis sis molestus, num- quam dicam tē esse malum	<i>although you may be troublesome,</i> <i>I will never say that you are</i> <i>wicked</i>
etiāmsi peccāvisset, nōn pūnitus esset	<i>even if he had done wrong, he</i> <i>would not have been punished</i>

Learn Vocabulary 63 (p. 123).

VOCABULARY 63.

abrip-iō, -ere, abripu-ī, abrept-um, <i>carry off.</i>	exhaur-iō, -īre, exhaus-ī, exhaust-um, <i>exhaust.</i>
aerārī-um, -ī, <i>n., treasury.</i>	fin-iō, -īre, <i>finish, end.</i>
aliquandō, adv., <i>some day.</i>	inven-iō, -īre, inven-ī, invent-um (invent), <i>find.</i>
barbar-us, -a, -um, <i>barbarous, uncivilised.</i>	omnīnō, adv., <i>altogether, wholly.</i>
combūr-ō, -ere, combuss-ī, combust-um, <i>burn (trans.).</i>	pell-is, -is, <i>f., skin.</i>
concid-ō, -ere, concid-ī, —, <i>fall.</i>	saepius, adv., <i>more often, oftener.</i>
	vest-iō, -īre (vest), <i>clothe.</i>

LESSON 64.

Learn the passive voice of **capiō** (p. 81).

235. RULE.—Verbs of **fearing** are followed by a final clause (§ 198) introduced by **nē**, *that* or *lest*, or **ut**, *that* . . . *not*.

timeō nē urbs capiātur

I fear that the city will be taken

timeō ut urbs capiātur

I fear that the city will not be taken

Learn Vocabulary 64.

VOCABULARY 64.

affic-iō, -ere, affēc-ī, affect-um, <i>affect.</i>	dirip-iō, -ere, diripu-ī, direptum, <i>pillage.</i>
confic-iō, -ere, confēc-ī, confect-um, <i>finish.</i>	incendi-um, -ī, <i>n. (incendiary), fire.</i>
conspic-iō, -ere, conspex-ī, conspect-um (conspicuous), <i>behold, observe.</i>	mulier, mulier-is, <i>f., woman.</i>
dēfic-iō, -ere, dēfēc-ī, dēfect-um (deficient), <i>fall away, fail; passive (with abl.), be lacking</i>	ratiō, ratiōn-is, <i>f. (rational), reason.</i>
	refic-iō, -ere, refēc-ī, reffect-um, <i>repair.</i>

The learner must now study Lessons 32-35 (on the pronouns), if these were omitted before, and should write Exercises 32-35.

LESSON 65.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Learn the conjugation of **hortor** and of **vereor** (pp. 82, 83).

236. Some Latin verbs which are conjugated in the passive only are the equivalents of English active verbs; such verbs are called *deponents*, because they were considered by the old grammarians to *lay aside* (**dēpōnere**) their passive meaning.

237. It is not in all cases clear what was originally the force of the passive form in these verbs, but in many of them it was evidently reflexive, *e.g.* **amplector**, *I embrace*, i.e. *twine myself around* (from **plectō**, *I plait*, and the prefix **ambi-**, *around*), **glōrior**, *I boast*, i.e. *glorify myself*.

But whatever the origin of the deponent verbs may have been, they are for all practical purposes equivalent both in force and in usage to active verbs, either transitive (as **amplector**) or intransitive (as **glōrior**).

238. The following non-deponent parts are found in all deponent verbs :—

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| (1) Present Participle | } active in form. |
| (2) Future Participle (and consequently
Future Infinitive) | |
| (3) Gerund | |
| (4) Supine | |
| (5) Gerundive | |
| | } passive in meaning. |
- For examples, see §§ 148-151.

NOTE.—In some deponent verbs the perfect participle is sometimes passive in meaning; *e.g.* **veneror**, *I worship*, has perfect participle **venerātus**, *worshipped* (passive) or *having worshipped* (deponent).

239. There are four conjugations of deponent verbs, resembling those of the regular passive verbs with the addition of the aforesaid forms of the corresponding active conjugations.

Three deponent verbs and their compounds (**morior**, **mortuus sum**, *die*; **gradior**, **gressus sum**, *step*; **patior**, **passus sum**, *suffer*) are conjugated like **capior** (§ 147).

240. Deponent verbs have no perfect tenses active in form, and consequently no perfect base; all their tenses are formed from the present and supine bases in the same way as the tenses of the passive voice of regular verbs (see § 134). The supine base of deponent verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed from the present base just as in active verbs; exceptions to this rule are shown in the Vocabularies, and a full list is given in the Appendix. The supine bases of deponents of the third conjugation must be learned from the Vocabularies and (later on) from the Appendix (§§ 329, 330).

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

241. Four verbs are deponent in their perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses only (including perfect infinitive and perfect participle), viz. :—

	Pres. Indic.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Indic.
Second Conjugation	aud-eō , <i>I dare</i>	aud-ēre	aus-us sum
	gaud-eō , <i>I rejoice</i>	gaud-ēre	gāvis-us sum
	sol-eō , <i>I am accustomed</i>	sol-ēre	solit-us sum
Third Conj.	fid-ō , <i>I trust</i>	fid-ere	fis-us sum

So also the compounds **confidō**, *I trust*, and **diffido**, *I distrust*.

242. RULE.—**Iubeō**, *I bid, I command*, **vetō**, *I forbid*, and **cōnor**, *I attempt*, are constructed with an infinitive.¹

iubeō tē tacēre
fugere cōnābātur

I command you to be silent
he was attempting to flee

¹ Hence the rhyme given on p. 106 (footnote) will run —

With *ask, command, advise, and strive*,
By **ut** translate infinitive;
But not so after **iubeō**, nor
With **vetō** or deponent **cōnor**.

243. RULE.—Verbs of **promising**, like verbs of *hoping*, are constructed with the **accusative** and **future infinitive**, with or without *esse*.

pollicētur sē ita factūrum *he promises to do so*
(*esse*)

Learn Vocabulary 65.

VOCABULARY 65.

<i>anteā</i> , adv., <i>beforehand</i> .	<i>incert-us</i> , -a, -um, <i>uncertain</i> .
<i>arbitr-or</i> , -āri, <i>think</i> .	<i>iub-eō</i> , -ēre, <i>iuss-i</i> , <i>iuss-um</i> (jussive), <i>bid</i> .
<i>cohort-or</i> , -āri, <i>exhort</i> .	<i>longius</i> , adv., <i>farther, too far</i> .
<i>commor-or</i> , -āri, <i>linger</i> .	<i>mor-or</i> , -āri, <i>delay</i> (trans. and intrans.).
<i>confit-eor</i> , -ēri, <i>confess-us sum</i> , <i>confess, admit</i> .	<i>pābul-or</i> , -āri, <i>forage</i> .
<i>cōn-or</i> , -āri, <i>attempt</i> .	<i>pauc-i</i> , -ae, -a (paucity), <i>few</i> .
<i>dēd-ō</i> , -ere, <i>dēdid-i</i> , <i>dēdit-um</i> , <i>surrender</i> .	<i>pollic-eor</i> , -ēri, <i>promise</i> .
<i>dextr-a</i> , -ae (sc. <i>manus</i>), <i>f.</i> , <i>right</i> <i>hand</i> .	<i>specul-or</i> , -āri (speculate), <i>re-</i> <i>connoître</i> .
<i>ēdūc-ō</i> , -ere, <i>ēdux-i</i> , <i>ēduct-um</i> (educē), <i>lead out, draw</i> (a sword).	<i>suspīc-or</i> , -āri, <i>suspect</i> .
<i>ēven-iō</i> , -īre, <i>ēvēn-i</i> , <i>ēvent-um</i> (event), <i>turn out, happen</i> .	<i>tu-eor</i> , -ēri, <i>watch, defend</i> .
<i>impuls-us</i> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , <i>impulse, ini-</i> <i>tiative</i> .	<i>vag-or</i> , -āri (vagabond), <i>wander</i> .
	<i>ver-eor</i> , -ēri, <i>fear</i> .
	<i>vet-ō</i> , -āre, <i>vetu-i</i> , <i>vetit-um</i> , <i>for-</i> <i>bid</i> .

LESSON 66.

Learn the conjugation of *loquor* (p. 84).

Revise the rules about the sequence of tenses and dependent questions (§§ 155-162).

244. RULE.—The verbs *ūtor*, *I use*, *abūtor*, *I misuse*, *fungor*, *I perform*, *fruor*, *I enjoy*, take an **ablative** representing the direct object of the corresponding English verbs; an ablative is also used with *dignor*, *I deem myself worthy of*, *potior*, *I gain possession of*, *vescor*, *I feed on*.¹

impedimentis et castris *our men gained possession of the*
nostri potiti sunt *baggage and camp*

Learn Vocabulary 66 (p. 127).

¹ Rhyme :—Put ablative with *dignor*, *vescor*, *ūtor*,
And *fungor*, *fruor*, *potior*, *abūtor*.

VOCABULARY 66.

abūt-or, -ī, abūs-us sum, abuse (with abl.).	irasc-or, -ī, irāt-us sum (irate), <i>be angry.</i>
adipisc-or, -ī, adept-us sum, ob- <i>tain.</i>	lac, lact-is, n., milk.
carō, carn-is, f. (carnal), flesh.	litter-a, -ae, f., letter (of the <i>alphabet), character.</i>
colloqu-or, -ī, collocūt-us sum (colloquy), <i>parley.</i>	loqu-or, -ī, locūt-us sum (loqua- <i>cious), speak, talk.</i>
confid-ō, -ere, confis-us sum, be <i>confident.</i>	persequ-or, -ī, persecūt-us sum (persecute), <i>follow up, pursue.</i>
ēlāb-or, -ī, ēlaps-us sum (elapse), <i>slip out, escape.</i>	profisc-or, -ī, profect-us sum, <i>set out.</i>
expedit-us, -a, -um (expedite), <i>light-armed.</i>	sequ-or, -ī, secūt-us sum (sequel), <i>follow.</i>
fru-or, -ī, fruct-us sum (fruition), <i>enjoy (with abl.).</i>	solum, adv., only.
fung-or, -ī, funct-us sum (func- <i>tion), discharge (with abl.).</i>	ūt-or, -ī, ūs-us sum, use (with <i>abl.).</i>
insequ-or, -ī, insecūt-us sum, <i>follow, pursue.</i>	vesc-or, -ī,—, feed on (with abl.).
	vicin-us, -a, -um (vicinity), neigh- <i>bouring.</i>

LESSON 67.

Learn the conjugation of **partior** (p. 85).

Revise the rules about the accusative and infinitive (§§ 167-174) and the ablative absolute (§§ 209-212).

245. Deponents are the only Latin verbs which have a perfect participle with active meaning. This participle is often used in agreement with the subject where, in the case of an ordinary verb, we should require the perfect participle passive in the ablative absolute construction or a temporal or causal clause.

Caesar, hostēs persecūtus,
castra in colle posuit

Caesar, having followed up the
enemy, pitched his camp on a
hill

princeps, veritus nē ab
omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs
ad Caesarem mīsit

the chief, fearing lest he should be
deserted by all, sent ambassadors
to Caesar

Obs. 1.—In the first example given above the ablative absolute is inadmissible with **persecūtus**, because the participle refers to the subject of the sentence and must agree with it. On the other hand, if for *having followed up the enemy* we substitute *having put the enemy to flight*, then, as **fugō** has no perfect participle with active meaning, we must either use a temporal clause, **cum hostēs fugāvisset**, or turn the expression into the passive and say **hostibus fugātis**, where the ablative absolute is required because the participle refers to a word which is neither the subject nor the object of the verb **posuit**.

Obs. 2.—In the second example the *perfect* participle is rightly used because the feeling of fear preceded (and resulted in) the sending of ambassadors; the use of the present participle in English is idiomatic.

Learn Vocabulary 67.

VOCABULARY 67.

ador-ior, -irī, adort-us sum, <i>attack.</i>	mor-ior, -ī, mortu-us sum (mortal), <i>die.</i>
cōg-ō, -ere, coēg-ī, coact-um, <i>collect.</i>	nasc-or, -ī, nāt-us sum (nascent), <i>be born.</i>
complex-us, -ūs, m., embrace.	opper-ior, -irī, oppert-us or opperit-us sum, <i>wait.</i>
dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly.	or-ior, -irī, ort-us sum (orient), <i>arise.</i>
ērip-iō, -ere, ēripu-ī, ērept-um, <i>tear away, snatch.</i>	part-ior, -irī (part), <i>divide.</i>
exigu-us, -a, -um, scanty.	pat-ior, -ī, pass-us sum (patient), <i>suffer.</i>
exper-ior, -irī, expert-us sum (experiment), <i>try, put to the trial.</i>	pot-ior, -irī, get possession of, <i>possess (with abl.).</i>
hic, adv., here.	prōgred-ior, -ī, prōgress-us sum (progress), <i>advance.</i>
ingred-ior, -ī, ingress-us sum (ingredient), <i>set foot in.</i>	semel, adv., once.
mēt-ior, -irī, mens-us sum (mete) <i>measure out.</i>	

The learner must now study Lessons 27-29 (on the comparison of adjectives), if these were omitted before, and should write Exercises 27-29.

LESSON 68.

THE VERB *POSSUM*.

246. *Possum*, *I am able, I can* (consisting of the base of the adjective *pot-is, able, +sum*), is conjugated as follows :—

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *possum, posse, potu-i*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (used as adjectives only) : *potens* (gen. *potent-is*), *powerful*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am able.*)
pos-sum *pos-sumus*
pot-es *pot-estis*
pot-est *pos-sunt*

IMPERFECT. (*I was able.*)
pot-eram *pot-erāmus*
pot-erās *pot-erātis*
pot-erat *pot-erant*

FUTURE. (*I shall be able.*)
pot-erō *pot-erimus*
pot-eris *pot-eritis*
pot-erit *pot-erunt*

PERFECT.¹ (*I was or have been able.*)

potu-i, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been able.*)
potu-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been able.*)
potu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should be able.*)
pos-sim *pos-simus*
pos-sis *pos-sitis*
pos-sit *pos-sint*

IMPERFECT. (*I should be able.*)
pos-sem *pos-sēmus*
pos-sēs *pos-sētis*
pos-set *pos-sent*

PERFECT.

potu-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been able.*)
potu-issem, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : *posse, to be able.*

PERFECT : *potu-isse, to have been able.*

Possum has no imperative, supine, or future participle.

247. RULE.—After verbs of *hindering* or *preventing* the dependent clause is introduced by *quōminus* or (if the principal sentence is negative) by *quīn*.

nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō-
minus in portum venīre
possent

the ships were being hindered by
the wind from being able to
reach the harbour

Germani retinēri nōn potuēr-
unt quīn in nostrōs tēla
conicerent

the Germans could not be re-
strained from throwing darts
at our men

Learn Vocabulary 68 (p. 130).

¹ Tenses formed from the perfect or supine base of irregular verbs are conjugated regularly ; cp. § 186.

VOCABULARY 68.

comit-or, -ārī (concomitant), <i>ac-company</i> .	persuād-eō, -āre, persuās-i, per-suās-um, <i>persuade</i> .
ēdisc-ō, -ere, ēdidic-i, —, <i>learn by heart</i> .	prae, prep. (with abl.), <i>for, by reason of</i> (after a negative).
flect-ō, -ere, flex-i, flex-um (<i>deflect</i>), <i>bend, sway</i> .	prohib-eō, -ēre (prohibit), <i>hinder, forbid</i> .
obst-ō, -āre, obstit-i, obstat-um (obstacle) <i>prevent</i> .	sine, prep. (with abl.), <i>without</i> .
	vers-us, -ūs, m., <i>verse</i> .

LESSON 69.

THE COMPOUNDS OF *SUM*.

248. The following compounds of **sum** are conjugated like the simple verb (§ 138).

Present Indic. Present Infin. Perfect.

ab-sum	ab-esse	āfu-i	<i>am absent</i>
ad-sum	ad-esse	adfu-i	<i>am present</i>
dē-sum	dē-esse	dēfu-i	<i>am wanting, am neglectful</i>
in-sum	in-esse	infu-i	<i>am in</i>
inter-sum	inter-esse	interfu-i	<i>am in the midst</i>
ob-sum	ob-esse	obfu-i	<i>am harmful, harm</i>
prae-sum	prae-esse	praefu-i	<i>am in command</i>
prō-sum	prōd-esse	prōfui-i	<i>am beneficial, do good</i>
sub-sum	sub-esse	subfu-i	<i>am under</i>
super-sum	super-esse	superfu-i	<i>am left</i>

NOTE.—**Prōsum** retains **d** (elsewhere dropped) before **e**; e.g. the present indicative is

prō-sum	prō-sumus
prōd-es	prōd-estis
prōd-est	prō-sunt

249. The compounds of **sum** (except **possum**) are constructed with the **dative** case.

Caesar exercitui praeerat

Caesar was in command of the army

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued from Lesson 59*).

250. (a) **Dum** meaning *as long as* (i.e. *all the time that*) is followed by the indicative, the tense being such as the sense requires.

dum pugnābunt (cp. § 187) *so long as they fight, we also will*
illi, nōs etiam pugnābimus *fight*

251. Often the action of the principal sentence is represented as occurring within (not as extending throughout) the period referred to by the **dum**-clause; **dum** is then idiomatically followed by the present indicative, and is rendered by *while*.

dum Rōmānī in nāvibus *while the Romans were wasting*
aedificandis tempus terunt, *time in building ships, the city*
urbs obsidēbātur *was being besieged*

252. (b) **Dum**, *until*, is followed by the indicative if nothing more than time is expressed; but by the subjunctive if it is implied that the event described in the **dum**-clause is or was purposely awaited.

hostēs pugnāvērunt dum dux *the enemy fought until the leader*
interfectus est *was slain*
pugnābimus dum dux hostium *we will fight until the enemy's*
interficiātur *leader is slain*

253. RULE.—The conjunctions **aut** and **vel** both mean *or*. **Aut** however presents alternatives each of which excludes the other, while **vel** leaves a choice open as to some detail.

aut pugnandum aut vel hodiē *we must either fight or else—*
vel crās moriendum est *either to-day or to-morrow—die*

Learn Vocabulary 69.

VOCABULARY 69.

aedifici-um, -ī, n. (edifice), *building*.

autem, conj. (to be placed after the first word), *but, however*.

custōs, custōd-is, m. (custody), *guard*.

Labiēn-us, -ī, m., Labienus (a Roman commander).

paene, adv., *almost*.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many*.

Lesson 70 will be found on p. 138.

II.—VOLO, NOLO, AND MALO.

§ 254. PRINCIPAL PARTS:—

volō, velle, volu-ī, *I will, am willing.*nōlō (ne-, *not*, + volō), nolle, nōlu-ī, *I will not, am unwilling.*mālō (mag-, as in *magis more*, + volō), malle, mālu-ī, *I am more willing, prefer.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.			
volens (gen. volent-is), willing.		nōlens (gen. nōlent-is), unwilling.	
None.			
INDICATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT	(I am willing) volō vis vult volumus vultis volunt	(I am unwilling) nōlō nōn vis nōn vult nōlumus nōn vultis nōlunt	(I prefer) mālō māvis māvult mālumus māvultis mālunt
IMPER- FECT	(I was willing) volēbam volēbās volēbat volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	(I was unwilling) nōlēbam nōlēbās nōlēbat nōlēbāmus nōlēbātis nōlēbant	(I was preferring) mālēbam mālēbās mālēbat mālēbāmus mālēbātis mālēbant
FUTURE	(I shall be willing) volam volēs volet volēmus volētis volent	(I shall be un- willing) (nōlam) nōlēs nōlet (nōlēmus) (nōlētis) (nōlent)	(I shall prefer) (mālam) (mālēs) (mālet) (mālēmus) (mālētis) (mālent)
PERFECT	(I was or have been willing) volu-ī, etc.	(I was or have been unwilling) nōlu-ī	(I preferred or have preferred) mālu-ī, etc.
PLUPER- FECT	(I had been willing) volu-eram, etc.	(I had been un- willing) nōlu-eram, etc.	(I had preferred) mālu-eram, etc.
FUTURE- PERFECT	(I shall have been willing) volu-erō, etc.	(I shall have been unwilling) nōlu-erō, etc.	(I shall have pre- ferred) mālu-erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT	(<i>I should be willing</i>) velim velis velit velimus velitis velint	(<i>I should be unwilling</i>) nōlim nōlis nōlit nōlimus nōlitis nōlint	(<i>I should prefer</i>) mālim mālis mālit mālimus mālitis mālint
	(<i>I should be willing</i>) vellem vellēs vellet vellēmus vellētis vellent	(<i>I should be unwilling</i>) nollem nollēs nollet nollēmus nollētis nollent	(<i>I should prefer</i>) mallem mallēs mallet mallēmus mallētis mallent
PERFECT	volu-erim, etc.	nōlu-erim, etc.	mālu-erim, etc.
PLU- PERFECT	(<i>I should have been willing</i>) volu-issem, etc.	(<i>I should have been unwilling</i>) nōlu-issem, etc.	(<i>I should have preferred</i>) mālu-issem, etc.
IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
PRESENT	<i>None</i>	(<i>Be unwilling</i>) nōli nōlite	<i>None</i>
FUTURE	<i>None</i>	(<i>Thou shalt be unwilling</i>) nōlitō nōlitō nōlitōte nōluntō	<i>None</i>
INFINITIVE.			
PRESENT	velle, to be willing	nolle, to be unwilling	malle, to prefer
PERFECT	volu-isse, to have been willing	nōlu-isse, to have been unwilling	mālu-isse, to have preferred

Obs. Volō, nōlō, and mālō have no supine or other parts which are formed from the supine base of verbs; nor have they any gerund.

NOTE.—Nōli and nōlite are frequently used with the present infinitive in prohibitions.

III.—*FERO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS.§ 255. PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fer-ō, fer-re, tul-ī, lāt-um, I bear.*BASES: *fer-* (present); *tul-* (perfect); *lāt-* (supine).

Obs. The perfect and supine bases of this verb are in no way connected with its present base, but are akin to *tollō, I raise*. The supine (*tlātum*) has lost an initial *t*.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT: *fer-ens* (gen. *ferent-is*),
*bearing*PERFECT: *lāt-us, lāt-a, lāt-um*,
*borne or having been borne*FUTURE: *lāt-ūrus, lāt-ūra, lāt-ūrum*, *about to bear*GERUNDIVE: *fer-endus, fer-enda*,
fer-endum, fit to be borne

INDICATIVE MOOD.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I bear.*)PRESENT. (*I am borne.*)

<i>fer-ō</i>	<i>fer-imus</i>
<i>fer-s</i>	<i>fer-tis</i>
<i>fer-t</i>	<i>fer-unt</i>

<i>fer-or</i>	<i>fer-imur</i>
<i>fer-ris</i>	<i>fer-imini</i>
<i>fer-tur</i>	<i>fer-untur</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I was bearing.*)IMPERFECT. (*I was being borne.*)

<i>fer-ēbam</i>	<i>fer-ēbāmus</i>
<i>fer-ēbās</i>	<i>fer-ēbātis</i>
<i>fer-ēbat</i>	<i>fer-ēbant</i>

<i>fer-ēbar</i>	<i>fer-ēbāmur</i>
<i>fer-ēbāris or -ēbāre</i>	<i>fer-ēbāmini</i>
<i>fer-ēbātur</i>	<i>fer-ēbantur</i>

FUTURE. (*I shall bear.*)FUTURE. (*I shall be borne.*)

<i>fer-am</i>	<i>fer-ēmus</i>
<i>fer-ēs</i>	<i>fer-ētis</i>
<i>fer-et</i>	<i>fer-ent</i>

<i>fer-ar</i>	<i>fer-ēmur</i>
<i>fer-ēris or fer-ēre</i>	<i>fer-ēmini</i>
<i>fer-ētur</i>	<i>fer-entur</i>

PERFECT. (*I bore or have borne.*)
*tul-ī, etc.*PERFECT. (*I was or have been borne.*)*lāt-us sum, etc.*PLUPERFECT. (*I had borne.*)
*tul-eram, etc.*PLUPERFECT. (*I had been borne.*)
*lāt-us eram, etc.*FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have borne.*)
*tul-erō, etc.*FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have been borne.*)
lāt-us erō, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should bear.*)PRESENT. (*I should be borne.*)

<i>fer-am</i>	<i>fer-āmus</i>
<i>fer-ās</i>	<i>fer-ātis</i>
<i>fer-at</i>	<i>fer-ant</i>

<i>fer-ar</i>	<i>fer-āmur</i>
<i>fer-āris or fer-āre</i>	<i>fer-āmini</i>
<i>fer-ātur</i>	<i>fer-antur</i>

IMPERFECT. (*I should be bearing.*)IMPERFECT. (*I should be borne.*)

<i>fer-rem</i>	<i>fer-rēmus</i>
<i>fer-rēs</i>	<i>fer-rētis</i>
<i>fer-ret</i>	<i>fer-rent</i>

<i>fer-rer</i>	<i>fer-rēmur</i>
<i>fer-rēris or fer-rēre</i>	<i>fer-rēmini</i>
<i>fer-rētur</i>	<i>fer-rentur</i>

ACTIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

tul-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have borne.*)

tul-issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*Bear.*)

fer fer-te

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must bear.*)

fer-tō

fer-tōte

fer-tō

fer-untō

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES. : fer-re, to bear

,, PERF. : tul-isse, to have borne

,, FUT. : lāt-tir-us esse, to be about to bear

GERUND : fer-endum, bearing, etc.

SUPINE : lāt-um, to bear; lāt-ū, in bearing

PASSIVE VOICE.

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

PERFECT.

lāt-us sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have been borne.*)

lāt-us essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Be borne.*)

fer-re fer-imini

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must be borne.*)

fer-tor

fer-tor

fer-untor

VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

INFIN. PRES. : fer-ri, to be borne

,, PERF. : lāt-us esse, to have been borne

,, FUT. : lāt-um iri, to be about to be borne

§ 236.

COMPOUNDS.

The following list shows the principal parts of the compounds of *ferō*; they are conjugated like the simple verb both in the active and in the passive:—

Compounded with

ab :	aufer-ō	-re	abstul-i	ablāt-um	bear away
ad :	affer-ō	-re	attul-i	allāt-um	bring
cum :	confer-ō	-re	contul-i	collāt-um	bring together
dis :	differ-ō	-re	distul-i	dilāt-um	separate
ex :	effer-ō	-re	extul-i	ēlāt-um	bring out
in :	infer-ō	-re	intul-i	illāt-um	bring in
ob :	offer-ō	-re	obtul-i	oblāt-um	offer
re :	refer-ō	-re	rettul-i (§ 270)	relāt-um	bear back
rē :	{ rēfer-t (§ 233)	-re	rētul-it	—	concern
sub :	suffer-ō	-re	sustul-i	sublāt-um	endure

Other preps. unchanged as in

dēfer-ō	-re	dētul-i	dēlāt-um	bear down
---------	-----	---------	----------	-----------

IV.—EO AND ITS COMPOUNDS.

§ 257. PRINCIPAL PARTS : eō, ire, iv-ī, it-um, I go.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PARTICIPLES { PRESENT : iens (gen. eunt-is), *going*.
 FUTURE : it-ūrus, it-ūra, it-ūrum, *about to go*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I go*)

eō imus

is itis

it eunt

IMPERFECT. (*I was going*)

ibam ibāmus

ibās ibātis

ibat ibant

FUTURE. (*I shall go*)

ibō ibimus

ibis ibitis

ibit ibunt

PERFECT. (*I went or have gone*)

ivi or ii ivimus or iimus

ivistī (iistī) or ivistis (iistis) or

istī istis

ivit, iit (or it) { ivērunt or iērunt
 ivēre or iērePLUPERFECT. (*I had gone*)

iv-eram or i-eram, etc.

FUTURE-PERFECT. (*I shall have gone*)

iv-erō or i-erō, etc

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should go*)

eam eāmus

eās eātis

eat eant

IMPERFECT. (*I should be going*)

irem irēmus

irēs irētis

iret irent

PERFECT.

iv-erim or i-erim, etc.

PLUPERFECT. (*I should have gone*)

iv-issem (i-issem) or issem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Go*)

i ite

FUTURE. (*Thou shalt or must go*)

itō itōte

itō euntō

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : ire, to go

PERFECT : ivisse (iisse) or isse,
 to have goneFUTURE : itūr-us esse, to be
 about to go

GERUND.

Nom. eundum, going, etc.

SUPINE.

Acc. it-um, to go

Obs. In the simple verb (but not in the compounds) the forms with **v** are more usual in tenses formed from the perfect base. The forms included in brackets () are comparatively rare.

§ 258.

COMPOUNDS.

ab-eō go away
 ad-eō approach
 co-eō come together
 in-eō enter
 inter-eō vanish
 intro-eō go in
 ob-eō traverse, die

per-eō perish
 prae-eō precede
 prōd-eō go forth
 praeter-eō go past
 red-eō go back
 sub-eō go up to endure
 trans-eō go across

FIO AND DO.

259. Fiō, *I become, am made*, takes the place of the passive of **faciō**, *I make*, in tenses formed from the present base. The other tenses of **fiō** are supplied by the passive voice of **faciō**, of which the supine base is **fact-**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **fiō, fieri, fact-us sum**.

PARTICIPLES { PERFECT : **fact-us, fact-a, fact-um**, *having become*.
 { GERUNDIVE : **faciend-us, -a, -um**, *fit to become*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I become*.)**fiō** ———**fis** ———**fit** **fiunt**IMPERFECT. (*I was becoming*.)**fiēbam** **fiēbāmus****fiēbās** **fiēbātis****fiēbat** **fiēbant**FUTURE. (*I shall become*.)**fiam** **fiēmus****fiēs** **fiētis****fiet** **fient**PERFECT : **fact-us sum**, etc.PLUPERF. : **fact-us eram**, etc.FUT.-PERF. : **fact-us erō**, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I should become*.)**fiam** **fiāmus****fiās** **fiātis****fiat** **fiant**IMPERFECT. (*I should become*.)**fierem** **fierēmus****fierēs** **fierētis****fieret** **fierent**PERFECT : **fact-us sim**, etc.PLUPERF. : **fact-us essem**, et

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*Become*.)**fi** **fite**FUTURE. (*None*).

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT : **fieri**, *to become*. PERFECT : **fact-us esse**, *to have become*.FUTURE : **factum iri**, *to be about to become*.

Obs.—Except in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, **fiō** follows the fourth conjugation ; it has, however, **ī** (long) in all parts except **fit**, **fieri**, and the imperfect subjunctive.

Compounds of **faciō** with a preposition are regularly conjugated in the passive, e.g. **afficiō**, *I affect* (compounded of the preposition **ad**, *to*, and **faciō**), has passive **afficior**.

260. Dō, *dare, dedī, datum, I give*, differs from a regular verb of the first conjugation in having **a** instead of **ā** after **d** (e.g. **damus, dabam**), except in the second person sing. of the present indicative and imperative active, **dās, dā**.

NOTE.—**Circumdō**, *I surround, I put around*, is conjugated like **dō**.

LESSON 70.

Learn the conjugation of **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō** (pp. 132, 133).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

261. RULE.—**Postquam**, *after*, introduces a temporal clause in which the verb is in the **indicative**.

postquam haec audivi, profectus sum.
after I had heard } *this, I set out.*
on hearing

Obs.—The Latin perfect is usually found after **postquam**, whereas in English the natural tense is the past-perfect, or *on* with the gerund may be used.

262. RULE.—After verbs of motion, **purpose** may be expressed by the **accusative supine** instead of by a final clause.

dux lēgātōs misit pācem *the leader sent ambassadors to*
petitum *beg for peace*

263. RULE.—The present subjunctive is used in questions as to the course of action to be pursued, the imperfect in questions as to the course which should have been pursued. The negative is **nōn**. This is called the **deliberative** or **dubitative** subjunctive.

quid faciam? *what am I to do?*
quid facerem? *what was I to do?*

Learn Vocabulary 70.

VOCABULARY 70.

accip-iō , -ere, accēp-i, accept-um (accept), <i>receive</i> .	mortifer , mortifer-a, mortifer-um, fatal, mortal.
consul-ō , -ere, consulu-i, consult-um, <i>consult the interests of</i> (with dat.).	nocturn-us , -a, -um (nocturnal), <i>nightly, by night</i> .
magis , adv., <i>rather</i> .	regred-iōr , -i, regress-us sum, <i>return</i> .

LESSON 71.

Learn the conjugation of **ferō** and compounds (pp. 134, 135).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*continued*).

264. The verb in a clause introduced by the conjugation **antequam**, *before*, or its equivalent **priusquam**, is indicative when mere sequence of events is denoted ; but it is **subjunctive** if the action expressed by the clause is represented as **purposely anticipated** or (when the principal sentence is negative) **purposely awaited**.

nec prius ille est relictus locus
quam finis est pugnandi
factus

*nor was that position abandoned
before an end was made of
fighting*

Rōmānus priusquam forēs obicerentur irrūpit *the Roman rushed in before the gates could be shut*

Galli nōn prius ducēs dimisē-
runt quam ab his esset con-
cessum arma uti caperent

*the Gauls did not send away the
chieftains before the latter had
consented to take up arms*

Obs.—1. Often after **antequam** or **priusquam** the perfect indicative is more naturally rendered by the English past-perfect; cp. § 224, NOTE.

Obs.—2. **Antequam, priusquam, postquam** may each be written as two words: **ante, prius, or post** is frequently placed in the principal sentence, **quam** introducing the clause. (Cp. the first and third of the above examples.)

Learn Vocabulary 71.

VOCABULARY 71.

aest-us, ūs, *m.* (estuary), *tide*.
bellum inferō, *make war upon*.
breviter, *adv.*, *briefly*.
coor-ior, -iri, coort-us sum, *arise*.
eōdem, *adv.*, *to the same place*.
extinguo-ō, -ere, extinx-i, ex-
stinct-um, *extinguish*.
Germān-us, -a, -um, *German*.

man-eō, -ēre, mans-i, mans-um
(mansion), *remain*.
pēs, ped-is, m. (pedal), *foot*.
pedem referō, take to flight.
solv-ō, -ere, solv-i, solūt-um (sol-
vent), *loose, pay*.
nāvēs solvō, set sail.

LESSON 72.

Learn the conjugation of **eō**, **fiō**, **dō**, and compounds (pp. 136, 137).

265. RULE.—Verbs meaning *to be appointed, to be named, to be thought*, are used with a complement (sometimes called a secondary predicate) in the same case as the subject. Such verbs are **creor**, *I am appointed* (magistrate, etc.), **appellor**, *I am called*, **videor**, *I seem*. The same rule applies to **fiō**.

Cicerō creābitur consul

Cicero will be appointed consul

dīcunt Cicerōnem consulem creātum iri

they say that Cicero will be appointed consul

Learn Vocabulary 72.

VOCABULARY 72.

discipul-us, -i, m., *disciple, pupil*.
eō, adv., *thither, to that place*.

lūd-ō, -ere, lūs-i, lūs-um (ludicrous), *play*.

mātūrius, adv., *earlier*.

ostend-ō, -ere, ostend-i, ostent-um (ostentatious), *show*.

unde, adv., *whence*.

venia, -ae, f. (venial), *pardon*.

vid-eō, -ēre, vid-i, vīs-um, *see*.

LESSON 73.

SOME IMPERSONAL VERBS.

266. Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular and in the infinitive.

267. I.—IMPERSONAL VERBS WITH AN OBJECT.

(a) With a direct object in the accusative, and an infinitive as subject.

dec-et, -ēre, *it beseems*.

iuv-at, -āre, iūv-it, *it delights*.

dēdec-et, -ēre, *it misbeseems*.

oport-et, -ēre, *it behoves*.

dēlect-at, -āre, *it pleases*.

oportet mē loquī, *it behoves me to speak*.

(b) With a direct object in the accusative, and a genitive as secondary object.

miser-et, -ēre, it moves pity.

pud-et, -ēre, it shames.

paenit-et, -ēre, it repents.

taed-et, -ēre, it disgusts.

pig-et, -ēre, it causes dislike.

pudet mē stultitiae meae

I am ashamed of my folly

(c) With an indirect object in the dative, and an infinitive as subject.

accid-it, -ere, accid-it, —, it happens.

conting-it, -ere, contig-it, —, it happens.

lib-et, -ēre, libitum est or libu-it, it pleases.

lic-et, -ēre, licu-it or licitum est, it is allowed.

**nōn cuivis hominī contingit
adire Corinthum.**

*it is not every man's luck to go to
Corinth.*

licet tibi loquī.

you may speak.

Obs.—**Accidit** is commonly used for unfortunate events, **contingit** of fortunate events.

268. II.—IMPERSONAL VERBS WITHOUT AN OBJECT.

These express natural phenomena :—

ning-it, -ere, ninx-it, it snows.

plu-it, -ere, pluit, —, it rains.

ton-at, -āre, tonu-it, it thunders.

269. It has already been pointed out (§ 185) that, in the case of **dēbeō** with an infinitive, the time is indicated by the tense of **dēbeō**, whereas in English it is shown by that of the infinitive. This is the case also with **possum**, **oportet**, and other verbs of similar meaning.

potuī hōc facere

I could have done this.

oportuit tē hōc facere

you ought to have done this.

Learn Vocabulary 73.

VOCABULARY 73.

avāriti-a, -ae, f., avarice.

| **quot, indecl. adj., how many?**

LESSON 74.

This Lesson may be postponed until after Lessons 75-80.

IMPERSONAL VERBS (*continued*).

270. (a) **Rēfert**, *it concerns*, where the English has a personal pronoun of the first or second person as object, is used with the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective. The same applies to the third person, when the pronoun is reflexive. With any other object, **interest** (see below) should be used.

quid hōc tuā rēfert ?	<i>in what respect does this concern you ?</i>
dixit illud suā rēferre	<i>he said it concerned himself</i>

(b) **Interest**, *it is the business of*, has the same construction as **rēfert** when the indirect object is of the first or second person, or third person reflexive; in the case of other words the genitive is used.

meā { **interest** } **haec fieri.** **omnium interest haec fieri**
 { **rēfert** }

it is { *my* } *interest that this should be done*
 { *everybody's* }

(c) The degree of importance is expressed by an accusative singular neuter (e.g. **quid**, *in what respect ?* **nihil**, *in no respect*), or by **magnī** (**magnus**, *great*), **parvī** (**parvus**, *small*), **quantī** (**quantus**, *as great as*), **plūris** (**plūs**, *more*), **maximī** (**maximus**, *very great*), **minimī** (**minimus**, *very small*).

(d) The subject of **interest** and **rēfert** may be (i) an infinitive, (ii) a dependent question, or (iii) in the case of **interest**, a clause introduced by **ut** or **nē**, or (iv) in the case of **rēfert**, a neuter pronoun.

meā maximī interest { **tē haec facere.**
 { **ut haec faciās.**

it is of the greatest importance to me that you should do this.

quid illius interest ubi sis ? *what does it matter to him where you are ?*

Obs.—With the exception of the use of a neuter pronoun as subject, all the constructions of **rēfert** can be used with **interest**, but not all the constructions of **interest** can be used with **rēfert**. Therefore, except with a neuter pronoun as subject, it is safer to use **interest**.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 271. The following verbs are defective, that is to say only the parts given below are in use.

Āiō, I say.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE : **āiens** (gen. **āient-is**), *saying*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT : **āiō** (*I say*), **ais**, **ait** ; **āiunt**.

„ IMPERFECT : **āiēbam** (*I was saying*), etc. (complete).

„ PERFECT : **ait**, *he said*.

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT : **āiat**, *he would say*.

Inquam, I say.

INDICATIVE PRESENT : **inquam, inquis, inquit** ; **inquimus, inquiunt**

„ IMPERF. : **inquiēbat**, *he was saying*.

„ FUTURE : **inquiēs** (*thou wilt say*), **inquiet**.

„ PERFECT : **inquiī** (*I said or have said*), **inquiistī, inquit**.

Fārī, to say. (The simple verb is only used in poetry.)

PARTICIPLE PRESENT : **fantem** (acc.), **fantī** (dat.), *saying*.

PERFECT : **fāt-us, fāta**, *having said*.

GERUNDIVE : **fand-us, -a, -um**, *fit to be said*.

INDICATIVE PRESENT : **fātur**, *he says*.

FUTURE : **fābor** (*I shall say*), **fābitur**.

PERFECT : **fāt-us est**, *he said or has said*.

PLUPERFECT : **fāt-us eram** (*I had said*), **fāt-us erat**.

IMPERATIVE PRESENT : **fāre**, *say*. INFIN. PRESENT : **fārī**, *to say*.

GERUND : **fandi, fandō** (*saying*). SUPINE : **fātū**, *in saying*.

Some other parts (present, imperfect, and future indicative) of the compounds of **fārī** occur.

The following have no present base in use :—

coep-ī, I began ; **memin-ī, I remember** ; **ōd-ī, I hate**.

They are regularly conjugated in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses, which (in the case of **meminī** and **ōdī**) are translated respectively as present, imperfect, and future. Some other parts are in use :—

From **coepī** : Perf. part. pass., **coept-us, -a, -um**, and tenses formed by it with **sum**.

„ **meminī** : Imperative, **mementō** (*remember*), **mementōte**.

„ **ōdī** : Future part., **ōsūr-us, -a, -um**, *about to hate*.

The following are isolated forms :—

(1) **Infit**, *he begins (to speak)*.

(2) **Quaesō, I entreat** ; **quaesumus** (used parenthetically like English *pray*).

(3) **Avē or avētō, hail!** : **avēte**. Infinitive, **avēre**, *to cry "hail."*

(4) **Salvē, hail!** ; **salvēte**. Ind. fut., **salvēbis**. Infin., **salvēre**.

(5) **Cedo, give (imperative)**.

VOCABULARY 74.

aliēn-us, -a, -um (alien), <i>belong- ing to another, of others.</i>	ita , adv., <i>so.</i>
facultās, facultāt-is , f. (faculty), <i>opportunity.</i>	perit-us, -a, -um , <i>experienced.</i>
	prōdūc-ō, -ere, prōdux-ī, prō- duct-um , <i>protract.</i>

LESSON 75.

ADVERBS.

272. Adverbs may for convenience be arranged in three classes :—

I. Adverbs expressing

(a) Place, time, degree, etc. ;

(b) Negation, interrogation, transition, etc.

II. Adverbs formed from pronominal roots ; e.g. **quō**, *whither*, from the root of **quī**, *who*.

III. Adverbs formed from adjectives ; e.g. **liberē**, *freely*, from **liber**, *free*.

I. (a) ADVERBS OF PLACE, TIME, DEGREE, ETC.

273. The following are examples :—

PLACE.

alibi , <i>elsewhere</i>	pōne , } <i>behind.</i>
circā , }	post , }
circum , } <i>around</i>	procul , <i>far</i>
citrā , <i>on this side</i>	prope , <i>near</i>
contrā , <i>opposite</i>	subter , <i>beneath</i>
cōram , <i>face to face</i>	super , }
extrā , <i>outside</i>	suprā , } <i>above</i>
infrā , <i>below</i>	sursum , <i>upwards</i>
intrā , }	ubique , <i>everywhere</i>
intus , } <i>inside</i>	ultrā , <i>beyond</i>
iuxtā , <i>close</i>	undique , <i>from all sides</i>
nusquam , <i>nowhere</i>	usquam , <i>anywhere</i>
pāssim , <i>hither and thither</i>	utrimque , <i>from both sides</i>
	versus , <i>facing</i>

TIME.

aliās, *at another time*
 aliquandō, *at some time*
 ante, } *before*
 anteā, }
 cottidiē, } *daily*
 quotidiē, }
 crās, *to-morrow*
 dēmum, *at length*
 diū, *long*
 heri, } *yesterday*
 here, }
 hodiē, *to-day*
 iam, *already*
 iamdūdum, } *a long time*
 iampridem, } *already*
 intereā, } *meanwhile*
 interim, }
 interdum, *sometimes*
 iterum, *again*
 māne, *in the morning*

modo, *just now*
 mox, *soon*
 numquam, *never*
 nunc, *now*
 nūper, *recently*
 ōlim, *at that time*
 parumper, *for a little while*
 post } *afterwards*
 posteā, }
 quando, *when?*
 quondam, *formerly*
 rursus, *again, back again*
 saepe, *often*
 semper, *always*
 simul, *at the same time*
 statim, *forthwith*
 tandem, *at length*
 tunc, } *then*
 tum, }
 umquam, *ever*

MANNER, DEGREE, ETC.

adeō, *so*
 aliter, *otherwise*
 ceu, *like as*
 clam, *secretly*
 frustrā, *in vain*
 ita, *so*
 modo, *only*

nimum } *too much*
 omninō, *altogether*
 paene, *almost*
 palam, *openly*
 parum (also used as a
 neuter substantive } *too little*
 nom. and acc. sing.)
 praesertim, *especially*.

prope, *nearly*
 quam, *as, than*
 quasi, *as if*
 quotiēs or quotiens, *as often as*
 satis (also used as an in-
 declinable substantive } *enough*
 or adjective)
 sic, *thus*
 tam, *so*
 tamquam or } *as it were*
 tanquam, }
 totiēs or totiens, *so often*
 ultrō, *further*
 usque, *all the way, even*
 ut or uti, *as*
 vix, *scarcely*

INTERROGATION, NEGATION, TRANSITION, ETC.

Interrogation, etc.

-ne (enclitic) introduces a question
nonne introduces a question expecting an affirmative answer
num introduces a question expecting a negative answer

quam, *how!*

quārē or **cūr**, *why?*

quōmodo, *how?*

quīn, *why not?*

quotiēs or **quotiens**, *how often?*

ut or **utī**, *how?*

utrum . . . **an**, *whether . . . or*

utrum . . . { **annōn** } *whether . . .*
 { **necne** } *or not*

Negation.

nōn, *not*

haud (rare with verbs), *not*

nē (in prohibitions), *not*

nē . . . **quidem**, *not even*

Transition, etc.

contrā, *on the other hand*

ergō,

ideō,

igitur (seldom placed first), } *there-*

item, *likewise*

praetereā, *besides*

proptereā, *therefore*

utinam introduces a wish

Obs.—The term enclitic applied to -ne and similar particles implies that they throw their accent back on to the words to which they are appended; e.g. **vidēs**, *you see* **vidēsne**, *do you see?*

II. ADVERBS FORMED FROM PRONOMINAL ROOTS.

274. Many adverbs are formed from the same roots as the demonstrative and relative pronouns; some are included in the above lists. Others are—

hic, *here*

istic,

illic,

ibi,

there

ubi, *where*

hūc, *hither*

istūc,

illūc,

eō,

thither

quō, *whither*

hinc, *hence*

istinc,

illinc,

inde,

thence

unde, *whence*

hāc, *this way*

illā,

eā,

that way

quā, *which way*

NOTE.—The adverbs in the right-hand column serve both as relatives and as interrogatives.

III.—ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES (INCLUDING PARTICIPLES).

275. From adjectives of the first class, *i.e.* those which follow the first and second declensions of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of -ē to the base of the adjectives.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
angustus , <i>narrow</i>	angust-	angustē , <i>narrowly</i>
ornātus , <i>adorned</i> (perf. part.)	ornāt-	ornātē , <i>ornately</i>
passive of ornō , <i>I adorn</i>)		
pulcher , <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-	pulchrē , <i>beautifully</i>
liber , <i>free</i>	liber-	liberē , <i>freely</i>

276. From some adjectives of the first class adverbs are formed by adding **-ō** to the base.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
rārus , <i>scanty</i>	rār-	rārō , <i>scantily</i>
consultus (perf. part. passive of)	consult-	consultō , <i>on purpose</i>
consulō , <i>I deliberate</i>)		

277. From adjectives of the second class, *i.e.* those which follow the third declension of substantives, adverbs are formed by the addition of **-iter** to the base of the adjective ; but if the base of the adjective ends in **-nt**, then **-er** is added instead of **-iter**.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective.	Base.	Adverb.
memor , <i>mindful</i>	memor-	memoriter , <i>by heart</i>
ācer , <i>sharp</i>	ācr-	ācriter , <i>sharply</i>
brevis , <i>short</i>	brev-	breviter , <i>briefly</i>
fēlix , <i>fortunate</i>	fēlic-	fēliciter , <i>fortunately</i>
prūdēns , <i>discreet</i>	prūdēt-	prūdēnter , <i>discreetly</i>
amans , <i>loving</i> (pres. 1)	amant-	amanter , <i>lovingly</i>
active of amō , <i>I love</i> }		

278. The accusative singular neuter of an adjective is often used as an adverb, sometimes even when a special form for the adverb exists.

EXAMPLES.

Adjective (Nom. Sing. Masc.)	Adjective (Acc. Sing. Neut.) and Adverb
multus , <i>much</i>	multum , <i>much</i>
dulcis , <i>sweet</i>	dulce (also dulciter), <i>sweetly</i> .
facilis , <i>easy</i>	facile , <i>easily</i> .
Also plērique (pl.), <i>very many</i>	plērumque , <i>very frequently</i> .

279. The following adverbs are irregularly formed :—

From audax ,	<i>bold,</i>	audacter ,	<i>boldly</i>
„ bonus ,	<i>good,</i>	bene ,	<i>well</i>
„ citus ,	<i>quick,</i>	cito ,	<i>quickly</i>
„ difficilis ,	<i>difficult,</i>	difficulter ,	<i>with difficulty</i>
„ magnus ,	<i>great,</i>	magnopere ,	<i>greatly</i>
„ malus ,	<i>bad,</i>	male ,	<i>badly</i>
„ validus ,	<i>strong,</i>	valdē ,	<i>strongly</i>

Obs.—**Magnopere** (also written as two words, **magnō opere**) properly means *with great labour* ; hence, *very much, greatly*.

280. RULE.—The third person singular of any tense of the passive of an **intransitive** verb modified by an adverb can be used **impersonally** to translate an English phrase containing a verbal noun and adjective.

acerrimē pugnātum est *fierce fighting took place*

Learn Vocabulary 75.

VOCABULARY 75.

approbō, -āre, *approve*.

certior fiō, *get information*.

col-ō, -ere, colu-ī, cult-um, culti-vale.

discurr-ō, -ere, discurr-ī and **discucurr-ī, discurs-um**, *run (in different directions)*.

longē, *adv., far*.

nōbil-is, -e, *nobly born*.

noctū, *adv., by night*.

nov-us, -a, -um (*novel*), *new*.

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōn-is, f., *siege*.

repente, *adv., suddenly*.

stō, stāre, stet-ī, stat-um, *stand, remain firm, persist in (with abl.)*.

tum dēum, *adv., then at length*.

utrimque, *adv., from both sides, on both sides*.

vac-ō, -āre (*vacant*), *have leisure (with abl.)*.

LESSON 76.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

281. Adverbs formed from adjectives have (where the meaning admits of it) three degrees of comparison—positive, comparative, and superlative: *e.g.* **breviter**, *briefly*; **brevius**, *more briefly*; **brevissimē**, *most briefly*. Where no standard of comparison is expressed or distinctly understood, the comparative may denote “considerably” or “excessively,” and the superlative “exceedingly”: *e.g.* **brevius**, *somewhat briefly* or *too briefly*; **brevissimē**, *very briefly*.

282. A **comparative** adverb is the **accusative singular neuter** of the corresponding comparative adjective (cp. § 278).

A **superlative** adverb is formed by adding **-ē** to the base of the corresponding superlative adjective, in accordance with the rule for forming adverbs from adjectives of the first class.

These rules apply whether the comparison of the adjective is regular or irregular.

EXAMPLES.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adjective.	sanctus , <i>religious</i>	sanctior	sanctissimus
Adverb.	sanctē , <i>religiously</i>	sanctius	sanctissimē
Adjective.	ācer , <i>sharp</i>	ācrior	ācerrimus
Adverb.	ācritē , <i>sharply</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
Adjective.	facilis , <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
Adverb.	facile , <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
Adjective.	bonus , <i>good</i>	melior	optimus
Adverb.	bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
Adjective.	malus , <i>bad</i>	pēior	pessimus
Adverb.	male , <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

283. The following are the only exceptions to the rules given in § 282 :—

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
	magnopere , <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē
	multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum

§ 284. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADVERBS NOT FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
diū,	<i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
nūper,	<i>recently</i>	—	nūperrimē
saepe,	<i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

285. Some words which are usually adverbs serve also as substantives denoting quantity and are constructed with a genitive ; *e.g.* **parum fortitudinis**, *too little bravery* ; **satis frumentī**, *enough corn*.

286. RULE.—The **genitive** is used with verbs of **condemning** and **accusing** to express the nature of the charge, and sometimes with verbs of **remembering** and **forgetting** to express that which is remembered or forgotten.

mē timōris arguunt	<i>they accuse me of fear</i>
numquam obliviscar noctis illius	<i>I shall never forget that night</i>

Obs.—With verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* that which is remembered or forgotten is often expressed by the accusative.

Learn Vocabulary 76.

VOCABULARY 76.

accūs-ō, -āre , <i>accuse</i> .	indulg-eō, -ēre, indulg-i, indult-um , <i>be indulgent, indulge</i> (with <i>dat.</i>).
aegrē ferō , <i>resent bitterly</i> (lit. <i>bear with difficulty</i>).	mord-eō, -ēre, momord-i, mors-um , <i>bite</i> .
ambit-us, -ūs, m. , <i>bribery</i> .	oblivisc-or, -i, oblīt-us sum , <i>forget</i> (with <i>gen. or acc.</i>).
argu-ō, -ere, argu-i, argūt-um , <i>accuse</i> .	quāl-is, -e , <i>of what kind ? what sort of ?</i>
cav-eō, -ēre, cāv-i, caut-um , <i>be-ware</i> .	spond-eō, -ēre, spopond-i, spons-um , <i>promise</i> .
cōpiōsē , <i>adv.</i> , <i>fully</i> .	vēnātōr, vēnātōr-is, m. , <i>hunter</i> .
ferōciter , <i>adv.</i> , <i>fiercely</i> .	
impūne , <i>adv.</i> , <i>with impunity</i> .	

The learner must now study Lesson 25 (on irregular adjectives), if this was omitted before, and should write Exercise 25.

LESSON 77.

THE NUMERALS.

Learn the table of numerals (p. 153), but do not commit to memory the portions printed in lighter type.

In the table a hyphen divides the base from the variable ending of such of the numerals as are declinable.

287. (1) There is one numeral **substantive** : **mīlia** (n.), *thousands*.

(2) There are three series of numeral **adjectives** :—

(a) **Cardinal**, corresponding to the English series *one, two, three*, etc. ;

(b) **Ordinal**, corresponding to the English series *first, second, third*, etc. ;

(c) **Distributive**, denoting *one a-piece, two a-piece, three a-piece*, etc.

(3) There is a series of numeral **adverbs** denoting *once, twice, three times*, etc.

NOTE.—The ending of the ordinals from 18 upwards is sometimes spelt **-ensim-us** instead of **-ēsīm-us**, and that of the adverbials from 5 upwards **-ens** instead of **-ēs** ; e.g. **vicensim-us**, **tricensim-us**, **quinq̄uēns**, **sexiens**.

DECLENSION OF NUMERALS.

288. CARDINALS.—**Unus** is declined like **nullus** (§ 81). The declension of **duo** and **trēs** is given in § 82.

289. The cardinals denoting **hundreds** from 200 to 900 are declined like the plural of **bonus** (§ 36), except that they usually have genitive plural in **-um**, not in **-ōrum** or **-arum** ; e.g. **ducentum**.

290. The other cardinal numerals, *viz.* **4** to **20**, the **tens** up to 100, and **mille**, 1000, are indeclinable.

291. The substantive **mīlia** is declined in the plural only :—

<i>N.V.A.</i>	mīlia
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlibus
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlibus

Obs. 1.—A declinable numeral qualifying **mīlia** must, of course, be in agreement with it, and the substantive dependent on **mīlia** is put in the genitive ; *e.g.* **tria mīlia equitum**, 3000 *horsemen*.

Obs. 2.—**Mille** is an indeclinable adjective ; therefore *a thousand horsemen* (nominative) is **mille equitēs**.

292. ORDINALS AND DISTRIBUTIVES.—These are declined like **bonus** (§ 36), with the exception of **alter**, *second* (*of two*), for which see § 81, and NOTE 1. The genitive plural of distributives generally ends in **-um**, not in **-ōrum** or **-ārum** ; *e.g.* **dēnum**.

293. ON COMPOUNDING NUMERALS.

21 to 99.—The smaller number follows the larger with-out **et** or precedes it with **et** ; *e.g.* **vīgintī quinque** or **quinque et vīgintī**, just as in English we say *twenty-five* or *five-and-twenty*.

The two numbers preceding each ten are commonly expressed by prefixing **duodē-**, **undē** respectively to it ; see 28 and 29 in the table. (**Dē** is a preposition denoting *from*.) Such expressions as **vīgintī octo** and **octo et vīgintī** occur, but are less usual.

101 and upwards.—The larger number, as a rule, precedes the smaller, and **et** *may* be inserted (except in distributives) ; *e.g.* **duo mīlia** (et) **quingentī** (et) **quadrāgintā equitēs** or **equitum duo mīlia** (et) **quingentī** (et) **quadrāgintā**, 2540 *horsemen*.

Obs.—The substantive is not put in the genitive if separated from **mīlia** by numerals which do not qualify **mīlia**.

294. RULE.—The great or small **value** at which a thing is held is expressed by the **genitive singular neuter** of adjectives such as those given in § 270 (c).

quantī quisque sē ipse facit,	<i>at whatever price each values him-</i>
tanti fit ab amicis	<i>self, at this price he is valued by</i>
	<i>his friends</i>

	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	ŭn-us, <i>one</i>	prīm-us, <i>first</i>	singul-i, <i>one a-</i>	semel, <i>once</i>
2	du-o	secund-us or alter*	bin-i [<i>piece</i>]	bis
3	tr-ēs	terti-us	tern-i or trin-i†	ter
4	quattuor	quart-us	quatern-i	quater
5	quinque	quint-us	quin-i	quinquiēs
6	sex	sext-us	sēn-i	sexiēs
7	septem	septim-us	septēn-i	septiēs
8	octo	octāv-us	octōn-i	octiēs
9	novem	nōn-us	novēn-i	noviēs
10	decem	decim-us	dēn-i	deciēs
11	undecim	undecim-us	undēn-i	undeciēs
12	duodecim	duodecim-us	duodēn-i	duodeciēs
13	tredecim	terti-us decim-us	tern-i dēn-i	terdecies
14	quattuordecim	quart-us decim-us	quatern-i dēn-i	quater decies
15	quindecim	quint-us decim-us	quin-i dēn-i	quindeciēs
16	sēdecim	sext-us decim-us	sēn-i dēn-i	sēdecies
17	septemdecim	septim-us decim-us	septēn-i dēn-i	septies decies
18	duodēviginti	duodēvicēsīm-us	duodēviciēn-i	duodēviciēs
19	undēviginti	undēvicēsīm-us	undēviciēn-i	undēviciēs
20	viginti	vicēsīm-us	viciēn-i	viciēs
21	ŭn-us et viginti or viginti ŭn-us	ŭn-us et vicēsīm-us or vicēsīm-us prim-us	viciēn-i singul-i	semel et viciēs
22	du-o et viginti or viginti du-o	alt-er et vicēsīm-us or vicēsīm-us alt-er	viciēn-i bin-i	bis et viciēs
28	duodētrigintā	duodētricēsīm-us	duodētriciēn-i	duodētriciēs
29	undētrigintā	undētricēsīm-us	undētriciēn-i	undētriciēs
30	trigintā	tricēsīm-us	triciēn-i	triciēs
40	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīm-us	quadrāgēn-i	quadrāgiēs
50	quinqūāgintā	quinqūāgēsīm-us	quinqūāgēn-i	quinqūāgiēs
60	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīm-us	sexāgēn-i	sexāgiēs
70	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīm-us	septuāgēn-i	septuāgiēs
80	octōgintā	octōgēsīm-us	octōgēn-i	octōgiēs
90	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīm-us	nōnāgēn-i	nōnāgiēs
100	centum	centēsīm-us	centēn-i	centies
200	ducent-i	ducentēsīm-us	ducentēn-i	ducenties
300	trecent-i	trecentēsīm-us	trecentēn-i	trecenties
400	quadrīngent-i	quadrīngentēsīm-us	quadrīngēn-i	quadrīngenties
500	quīngent-i	quīngentēsīm-us	quīngēn-i	quīngenties
600	sescent-i	sescentēsīm-us	sescentēn-i	sescenties
700	septīngent-i	septīngentēsīm-us	septīngēn-i	septīngenties
800	octīngent-i	octīngentēsīm-us	octīngēn-i	octīngenties
900	nongent-i	nongentēsīm-us	nongēn-i	nongenties
1000	mille	millēsīm-us	singul-a mil-lia	millies
2000	du-o mil-lia	bis millēsīm-us	bin-a mil-lia	bis millies

* Alter, *second (of two)*; secundus, *second (of a larger number than two)*.

† Trini (not terni) is used with substantives plural in form but singular in meaning; e.g. trinae aedēs, *three houses*.

296. RULE.—**Tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris**, are also used to denote the **price** at which a thing is bought or sold. In the case of all other words the price is expressed by the **ablative**.

quantī hōc emptum est? *at what price was this bought?*
parvō *At a small price*

297. RULE.—**Extent of space** is expressed by the **accusative** case.

fossam quindecim pedēs lātam *he constructed a trench fifteen feet*
perduxit *broad*

298. RULE.—The **predicative dative** expresses that which a person or thing **serves as**, or that in which a thing results.

maximō mihi ūsuī eris *you will be of very great service*
 to me

haec tibi sunt cūrae *these things are an anxiety to you*

Learn Vocabulary 77.

VOCABULARY 77.

angusti-ae, -ārum, f. pl., narrow-
ness.

circumd-ō, -are, circumdēd-ī, cir-
cumdat-um, surround.

collaud-ō, -āre, bestow praise on.

conscrib-ō, -ere, conscrips-ī,
conscript-um, enrol.

conspic-or, -ārī, come in sight of.

dist-ō, -āre, —, —, be distant.

ēgred-ior, -ī, ēgress-us sum, quit.

extru-ō, -ere, exstrux-ī, ex-
struct-um, raise, construct.

fac-iō, -ere, fēc-ī, fact-um, make,
value, esteem.

inter sē, among themselves, one
from another.

lāt-us, -a, -um (latitude), wide,
broad.

nancisc-or, -ī, nact-us sum, get.

ōv-um, -ī, n. (oval), egg.

pass-us, -ūs, m., pace.

perdūc-ō, -ere, perdux-ī, per-
duct-um, lead through, carry
or construct (a wall, trench,
etc.).

praesertim, adv., especially.

vend-ō, -ere, vendid-ī, vendit-um
(vend), sell.

LESSON 78.

PREPOSITIONS.

299. Most Latin prepositions (like all English ones) take the accusative case. The ablative, however, is used with some prepositions (Lesson 79), and a few take either case (Lesson 80).

300. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

ad , to		inter , between, among
adversum or	} <i>opposite, towards</i>	intrā , within
adversus ,		iuxtā , close by
ante , before		ob , because of
apud , with (a person), at the house of		penes , in the power of
circā ,	} <i>around</i>	per , through
circum ,		pōne , behind
circiter , about (of number)		post , after
cis	} <i>this side of</i>	praeter , beyond
citrā ,		prope , near
contrā , against		propter , near, on account of
ergā , towards (a person)		secundum , following on
extrā , outside		suprā , above
infrā , below		trans , across
		ultrā , on the other side of

301. The following lines contain the above twenty-eight prepositions, which are used with the **accusative** only :—

ante , post , cis , citrā , ultrā ,	propter , ob , secundum , ergā ;
trans and per ; adversus , contrā ;	ad and apud , prope , iuxtā ;
praeter , pōne ; infrā , suprā ;	penes , inter , intrā , extrā .
circum , circiter , and circā ;	

302. **RULE.**—The genitive of a substantive accompanied by an adjective in agreement may be used to describe some characteristic or quality, and this construction is accordingly known as the **genitive of quality**.

Titus Manlius vir erat priscæ severitātis	<i>Titus Manlius was a man of old-fashioned sternness</i>
Caesar quadrāgintā diērum iter prōcessit	<i>Caesar advanced forty days' march</i>

Learn Vocabulary 78 (p. 156).

VOCABULARY 78.

altitūdō, altitūdin-is, f. (altitude),
height, depth.

consist-ō, -ere, constit-ī, constit-um, *take up a position.*

equitāt-us, -ūs, m., *cavalry* (collective).

incol-ō, -ere, incolu-ī, incult-um, *dwell.*

inopi-a, -ae, f., *scarcity.*

invit-us, -a, -um, *unwilling.*

opprim-ō, -ere, oppress-ī, oppress-um, *overwhelm.*

pondus, ponder-is, n. (ponderous),
weight.

Rhoda-n-us, -ī, m., *Rhone.*

sax-um, -ī, n., *rock, stone.*

solum, -ī, n., *soil.*

veterān-us, -a, -um, *veteran.*

LESSON 79.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

Revise the rules about conditional sentences (§§ 182-192).

303. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

ā (before a consonant)
ab (before a vowel or **h**)
abs (only with **tē**, *thee*)
cōram, *in the presence of*
cum, *with*
dē, *down from, concerning*
ē or **ex**, *out of*

palam, *in the presence of*
prae, *in front of*; with neg. *on account of*
prō, *before, instead of*
procul, *far from*
sine, *without*
tenus, *as far as*

Rhyme :—**ā, ab, abs, cum, ex** and **ē, cōram, palam, procul, dē, sine, tenus, prō**, and **prae**.

NOTE 1.—**Tenus** is also found with the genitive case.

NOTE 2.—**Ab** (not **ā**) must be used before a vowel or **h**, and is not uncommon before some consonants. **Ex** is used before a vowel or a consonant; **ē** before consonants only.

304. The usual place for a preposition is, of course, immediately before its substantive (or pronoun), but some prepositions are occasionally found after their substantives, **tenus** being always so placed.

305. Cum always follows the personal pronouns **mē, tē, nobis, vobis, sē**, and is then enclitic (Vocab. 8, *Obs.*) ; e.g. **mēcum**, *with me*. **Cum** is generally enclitic also with the relative pronoun (**quō, quā, quibus**), but *may* precede ; e.g. **quōcum** or **cum quō**, *with whom*.

Learn Vocabulary 79.

VOCABULARY 79.

affirm-ō, -āre, *affirm*.

Collin-us, -a, -um, *Colline* (the name of one of the gates of Rome).

crēditor, crēditōr-is, m., *creditor*

dēflu-ō, -ere, dēflux-i, dēflux-um, *flow down*.

despic-iō, -ere, despex-i, despect-um, *look down*.

ērudīt-iō, ēruditiōn-is, f., *learning*.

rēs gestae, *exploits*.

respond-eō, -ēre, respond-i, respons-um, *reply*.

LESSON 80.

PREPOSITIONS (*concluded*).

306. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH SUBSTANTIVES IN THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

clam (rarely with abl.), *without the knowledge of*

in { with acc., *into*
 „ abl., *in*

sub { with acc. (denoting motion *up to from beneath*), *up to*
 „ abl. („ rest *under*), *below*

super (with abl. rare and mostly poetic), *over*

subter („ in poetry only), *under*

Rhyme :—To **super, subter, clam**, we give

Most commonly accusative.

If **in** and **sub** should *motion* show,

With them accusative must go ;

But when they mean *rest* at a place,

The ablative's the proper case.

CONJUNCTIONS.

307. Conjunctions are of two kinds—**co-ordinating** and **subordinating**. A co-ordinating conjunction joins two words or phrases, two principal sentences, or two clauses dependent on the same principal sentence; a subordinating conjunction joins a dependent clause to its principal sentence.

I. CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

308. The following are in common use :—

et,		sed,	
-que (enclitic; Vocab. 8, Obs.)	} and	autem (not placed first),	} but
ac (before a consonant only),		at,	
atque (before any letter),		aut,	
etiam	} also	vel,	} or (§ 253)
necnōn,		-ve (enclitic)	
quoque,		aut . . . aut,	
et . . . et,	} both .	vel . . . vel,	} either .
cum (or quum) . . . tum,		sive . . . sive,	
nec or neque, nor		seu . . . seu,	
nec . . . nec,	} neither nor	enim (not placed first),	} for
neque . . . neque,		nam,	
tamen (seldom placed first), yet,		namque,	
however			

II. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

309. The sections to which reference is made contain particulars as to the use of the conjunctions in questions.

(With Indicative or Subjunctive.)

si, if (§§ 182-192)

nisi, unless (§ 183)

etsi,

etiāmsi, } although (§§ 232, 234)

cum, { with indic., when (§ 222)
with subj., when (§ 223),
since (§ 229), although
(§ 234)

antequam, } before that (§ 264)
priusquam,

dum, { with indic., whilst, until
(§§ 250-252),
with subj., until (§ 252)

dōnec, until

quōd, } because (§§ 226, 228)
quia,

quoniam, since (§§ 226, 228)

(With Indicative only.)

quamquam, although (§ 233)

ubi

ut or uti, } when (§ 224)

(With Subjunctive Only.)

ut or uti, in order that, so that,
although (§§ 198, 203, 235)

nē, lest (§ 198, 235)

postquam, after (§ 261)

quōd, that (thereby)

quōminus, that (thereby) . . . not
(§ 247)

quā, that (thereby) . . . not, but
that (§§ 208, 247)

quamvis, } although (§ 234)
licet,

VOCABULARY 80.

abd-ō, -ere, abdid-ī, abdit-um, <i>hide</i> (trans.).	moen-ia, -ium, <i>n. pl.</i> , walls (of a city).
accēd-ō, -ere, access-ī, access-um (accession), <i>approach</i> .	nās-us, -ī, <i>m.</i> (nasal), nose.
admov-eō, -ēre, admōv-ī, admōt-um, <i>move up</i> .	pet-ō, -ere, petiv-ī or peti-ī, petit-um, <i>seek, ask</i> .
bib-ō, -ere, bib-ī, — (bibulous), <i>drink</i> .	profund-us, -a, -um (profound), <i>deep</i> .
cad-ō, -ere, cecid-ī, cās-um (case) <i>fall</i> .	recip-iō, -ere, recēp-ī, recept-um, <i>receive</i> .
cognosc-ō, -ere, cognōv-ī, cog- nit-um, <i>recognise</i> .	ru-ō, -ere, ru-ī, rut-um, <i>rush</i> .
dēscend-ō, -ere, dēscend-ī, dē- scens-um, <i>descend</i> .	sin-ō, -ere, siv-ī, sit-um, <i>allow</i> ; perf. part. pass., <i>situated</i> .
divid-o, -ere, divis-ī, divis-um, <i>divide</i> .	spēlunc-a, -ae, <i>f.</i> , cave.
fund-ō, -ere, fūd-ī, fūs-um, <i>pour</i> ; perf. part. pass., <i>stretched</i> .	spons-us, -ī, <i>m.</i> , betrothed, lover.
immin-eō, -ēre, —, — (imminent), <i>overhang</i> .	terg-um, -ī, <i>n.</i> , back.
iug-um, -ī, <i>n.</i> , yoke.	testūdō, testūdīn-is, <i>f.</i> , tortoise (a defence made by interlock- ing shields).
	vert-ō, -ere, vert-ī, vers-um (con- vert), <i>turn</i> (trans.)

The learner must now study Lesson 74 (on impersonal and defective verbs), if this was omitted before, and should write Exercise 74.

HINTS.

Some of these hints apply only to the latter exercises ; they should therefore be revised from time to time as the learner works through his book.

I.—ON TRANSLATING LATIN SENTENCES INTO ENGLISH.

(1) Look for the verb, distinguishing (in a complex sentence) between the principal verb and that of a dependent clause.

(2) If the verb is in the first or second person, the termination by itself suffices instead of a subject. Sometimes this is the case also if the verb is in the third person, but with a third person verb you will usually find a subject in the form of a substantive, or an adjective used substantivally, or a pronoun—of course in the nominative case (unless the verb is in the infinitive, § 172).

(3) If the verb is transitive, look for an object in the accusative. If it is intransitive, there may be an indirect object in the dative; with copulative verbs ("to be," etc.) there will probably be a completion of the predicate in the same case as the subject.

(4) Assign adjectives and adjectival pronouns to the substantive with which they agree, and the genitives to the substantive, etc., on which they depend.

(5) Any words which still remain unaccounted for will very likely be adverbial in character, perhaps a proposition with its case, perhaps an ablative of instrument or ablative absolute. If the verb is of the second person, there may be a substantive in the vocative. The subject or object may have a substantive in apposition with it.

II.—ON TRANSLATING ENGLISH SENTENCES INTO LATIN.

(1) Analyse the sentence.

(2) See that your verb agrees with the subject in number and person; also, if the verb is in a perfect tense passive or deponent, see that the participle is in the right number and gender. In a dependent clause be careful of the mood; and if you use the subjunctive, remember the rule for the sequence of tenses. See, too, that you use the right voice.

(3) If the Latin verb is transitive, put its object in the accusative. Beware of doing the same when you are rendering an English transitive verb (e.g. "obey") by an intransitive Latin verb (e.g. *pareo*, "I am obedient").

(4) Copulative verbs take a complement in the same case as the subject. So too with *quam*, "than," the words denoting the things compared must be in the same case.

(5) Be sure that every adjective agrees with that to which it refers either as attribute or as predicate.

(6) The *normal* Latin order is—subject, indirect object, direct object, adverb or adverbial expression, verb. An attribute other than an adjective of quantity commonly follows its substantive. In a complex sentence the dependent clause or clauses may be inserted in the principal sentence, but not in such a way as to leave a number of verbs together at the end.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

A.—1. Saltas. 2. Vocant. 3. Cursas. 4. Errat. 5. Clamant. 6. Saltamus. 7. Erratis. 8. Vocas. 9. Ambulamur. 10. Cantat. 11. Vocatis. 12. Cursat. 13. Erras. 14. Ambulat. 15. Saltatis. 16. Erramus. 17. Voco. 18. Clamatis. 19. Cantas. 20. Saltant. 21. Clamamus. 22. Vocat. 23. Amant. 24. Erro. 25. Ambulatis. 26. Clamas. 27. Amamus. 28. Vocamus. 29. Errant. 30. Ambulas.

B.—1. You are walking. 2. You (pl.) sing. 3. He is shouting. 4. I am calling. 5. They are dancing. 6. We are mistaken. 7. They love. 8. You (pl.) dance. 9. We are calling. 10. You (pl.) shout. 11. We are walking. 12. He sings. 13. You (pl.) call. 14. I dance. 15. They shout. 16. He dances. 17. You are mistaken. 18. You (pl.) love. 19. We are shouting. 20. He walks. 21. I am singing. 22. They are calling. 23. We dance. 24. They love. 25. I am calling. 26. You are shouting. 27. They are walking. 28. We sing. 29. They are mistaken. 30. They are running to and fro.

EXERCISE 2.

A.—1. Amabit. 2. Festinabat. 3. Arabant. 4. Peccabamus. 5. Vigilabitis. 6. Saltabimus. 7. Cantabam. 8. Clamabo. 9. Errabunt. 10. Saltabas. 11. Amabamus. 12. Festinabimus. 13. Peccabitis. 14. Arabo. 15. Saltabatis. 16. Vigilabant. 17. Clamabas. 18. Cantabis. 19. Errabam. 20. Saltabit. 21. Festinabatis. 22. Amabitis. 23. Saltabunt. 24. Vigilabo. 25. Peccabant. 26. Errabis. 27. Saltabamus. 28. Clamabit. 29. Cantabat. 30. Arabas.

B.—1. They will hasten. 2. You were sinning. 3. You will shout. 4. I shall command. 5. We were dancing. 6. He will watch. 7. They were labouring. 8. You (pl.) were singing. 9. We shall plough. 10. He was watching. 11. I shall sing. 12. You will hasten. 13. He was commanding. 14. You (pl.)

were shouting. 15. They will dance. 16. You (pl.) were watching. 17. I shall plough. 18. You will labour. 19. You (pl.) will watch. 20. They were ploughing. 21. He will command. 22. You (pl.) will shout. 23. We were singing. 24. He will hasten. 25. They were dancing. 26. You (pl.) will love. 27. You will plough. 28. They were commanding. 29. They will command. 30. We were ploughing.

EXERCISE 3.

A.—1. Laudavit. 2. Clamavi. 3. Superabit. 4. Laboravistis. 5. Festinate. 6. Vulneravere. 7. Saltavisti. 8. Pugnaverunt. 9. Vigila. 10. Dubitavimus. 11. Saltabamus. 12. Pugnate. 13. Saltavistis. 14. Festinavimus. 15. Arate. 16. Clamavistis. 17. Laudavimus. 18. Laboraverunt. 19. Superate. 20. Festinaverunt. 21. Pugnavimus. 22. Salta. 23. Vulneravi. 24. Vigilate. 25. Festinavistis. 26. Dubitaverunt. 27. Aravi. 28. Ambulavisti. 29. Vulnerabimus. 30. Erravistis.

B.—1. They overcame. 2. You have wounded. 3. Watch (pl.). 4. He fought. 5. I shouted. 6. They will praise. 7. Hasten. 8. You (pl.) hesitated. 9. We have blamed. 10. You (pl.) are overcoming. 11. They have wounded. 12. I have overcome. 13. You wounded. 14. Fight (pl.). 15. We watched. 16. We shouted. 17. He will plough. 18. You (pl) hastened. 19. Hesitate. 20. You have overcome. 21. Sing. 22. You (pl.) have fought. 23. We ploughed. 24. You watched. 25. He has loved. 26. They laboured. 27. Watch. 28. You (pl.) ploughed. 29. He hesitated. 30. We have shouted.

EXERCISE 4.

A.—1. Feminae saltant. 2. Nautae filia clamavit. 3. Puella nautam amat. 4. Regina nautas laudavit. 5. Poetae, rosas amatis. 6. Puellae nautas laudabant. 7. Puellae audaciam nautarum laudabunt. 8. Sapientia nautae procellam superat. 9. Nautae, pugnas laudabatis. 10. Puellae rosas laudant. 11. Silvas amamus. 12. Turba clamavit. 13. Reginae sapientia turbam superavit. 14. Filias poetarum amamus. 15. Poeta reginam laudabit. 16. Regina, rosas amas. 17. Poeta, audaciam feminarum lauda. 18. Nautae, feminam vulneravistis. 19. Audacia turbae sapientiam reginae superavit. 20. Poetae, silvas reginae laudavistis.

B.—1. The sailor hesitated. 2. The poets were singing. 3. The queen is walking. 4. The girls are dancing. 5. The sailors

will watch. 6. We like roses. 7. You praise wisdom. 8. Boldness overcomes wisdom. 9. The woman wounded the sailor. 10. The poets were praising roses. 11. Poet, you loved the girl. 12. The sailors will overcome the storm. 13. The queen will praise wisdom. 14. Poets will praise wisdom. 15. The poets love woods. 16. The poet loved the queen's daughter. 17. The wisdom of the sailors will overcome the storm. 18. The queen was praising the poet's wisdom. 19. The daughters of the queen praised the boldness of the crowd. 20. The queen's boldness overcame the poet's wisdom.

EXERCISE 5.

A.—1. Nautae patriam* amant. 2. Nauta agricolae pecuniam donavit. 3. Puellae, reginae rosas indicat. 4. Hastis pugnavi-mus. 5. Feram hasta vulneravi. 6. Agricola insulam habitat. 7. Audaciam poetae culpabimus. 8. Agricola reginam rosis delectat. 9. Puellae agricolis hastas donabunt. 10. Reginae sapientiam pecunia superabitis. 11. Insulae nautas delectabant. 12. Agricola audaciam nautarum laudaverunt. 13. Nauta vitam agricolae laudabat. 14. Agricola feminis rosas donabunt. 15. Nautae, reginam audacia delectabatis. 16. Cantate, poetae; saltate, puellae. 17. Regina nautis pecuniam donabit. 18. Nauta filiam poetae hasta vulneravit. 19. Nautis pecuniam donabo. 20. Poetae, audaciam turbae sapientia superate.

B.—1. The girls will dance. 2. The farmer was ploughing. 3. We inhabit an island. 4. I shall point out the boldness of the women. 5. The girl pointed out the roses to the farmer. 6. You have wounded a wild beast with *your*† spear. 7. The queen blames *her* native land. 8. I gave the girl a rose. 9. The woman gives money to the sailor. 10. Sailors delight women by *their* boldness. 11. The poet wounded the farmer with a spear. 12. You (pl.) overcame the queen by *your* wisdom. 13. The queen's daughters were praising the sailors' boldness. 14. The farmer's daughters were giving roses to the poets. 15. The queen will delight the poet by *her* wisdom. 16. The farmers wound the wild beasts with spears. 17. The poet was praising the queen's wisdom. 18. Woman, you

* The Latin for the possessive adjective *my, your, his, etc.*, is often omitted if it can be easily understood; *e.g.* here it is clear that the native land which sailors love is *their* native land, and the word *their* should be added in translating.

† Words in italics in this and following exercises need not be translated.

will give roses to *your* daughter. 19. Woman, *your* daughters will give roses to the sailors. 20. Farmers, overcome the wild beasts of the island with spears.

EXERCISE 6.

A.—1. Procella crit.* 2. Pugna in silva fuit. 3. Agricolae sumus. 4. Nauta fuisti. 5. Erant in insula aquilae. 6. Regina es. 7. Poetae filiae in Gallia sunt. 8. In Italia fuimus. 9. Nautae in insula erunt. 10. Nautarum audacia victoriae causa est. 11. Regina sum. 12. Poetae sumus. 13. Filiae nautarum estis. 14. Silvae in insulis fuerunt. 15. Turba in via erat. 16. Nautae in oris insulae sunt. 17. Columbae in insulis sunt. 18. Agricolae in silva crunt. 19. Feminae reginae erunt. 20. Nautae, poetae sumus.

B.—1. You have been queen. 2. I shall be a sailor. 3. Rome is in Italy. 4. The queen's folly was the cause of the battle. 5. *There* are doves in the woods. 6. The sailors are on the shore of the island. 7. *There* were crowds in the streets. 8. The queen was in Gaul. 9. We have been sailors. 10. You are poets. 11. *There* were roses in the woods. 12. *There* is a crowd of sailors on the shore of the island. 13. The queen's folly will be the cause of victory. 14. The girls were in the wood. 15. We are farmers' daughters. 16. *There* were eagles in Gaul. 17. The queen of the island is in Italy. 18. You are farmers. 19. *There* will be wild beasts in the woods of the island. 20. Girl, you will be queen.

EXERCISE 7.

A.—1. Nauta filium culpabat. 2. Domini filii servos laudabant. 3. Medici filio equum donabo. 4. Medicus morbos superat. 5. Sapientia medicorum morbum non superabit. 6. Agricolarum hortos laudavimus. 7. Medice, servi dominum vulneraverunt. 8. Amici, non inimici, sumus. 9. Filius reginae equos medici laudebat. 10. In insula sunt tauri et equi. 11. Nauta filio gladium donabit. 12. Medice, avum gladio vulneravi. 13. Filii reginae avum gladio necavere. 14. Fluvios insulae laudabimus. 15. Dominus medicis pecuniam donabit. 16. Sapientia medicorum reginam delectabat. 17. Agricolae filios et nautae filias amavimus. 18. Servi, amicos domini necavistis. 19. Medicorum filii in horto ambulant. 20. Dominus filiae equum donavit.

* When the third person of *sum* stands as a verb of complete predication, it is often translated by *there is, there are, there was, there will be, etc.*

B.—1. The farmer's bulls were in the island. 2. Rivers and woods delight poets. 3. The disease will overcome the doctors' wisdom. 4. The doctor's son was walking in the garden. 5. The girl loves *her* grandfather. 6. Slaves, slay your master with a sword. 7. The doctor's sons are walking in the gardens. 8. The farmer's horses will delight the lord's son. 9. I like horses and bulls. 10. The queen's sword delights the girls. 11. Slave, you have slain *your* master with a sword. 12. We were praising the rivers of the island. 13. You do not love the enemies of *your* friends. 14. The doctor's daughters are dancing in the garden. 15. The lord's sons were walking in the woods. 16. We gave money to the doctor. 17. The queen's grandfather loved (*use the imperfect*) poets. 18. Bulls and horses delight farmers. 19. Women do not fight with swords. 20. We will kill the queen's sons with a sword.

EXERCISE 8.

A.—1. Agricolaе agros arabant. 2. Regina, insulam genero donabis. 3. Pueri libros, puellae rosas laudaverunt. 4. Feminae liberos culpant. 5. In agris erravi. 6. Servos ministrosque culpavisti. 7. Magistrorum libri puerum delectaverunt. 8. Agricolaе agros hastis superaverunt. 9. Agricolarum agros non laudavimus. 10. Generi soceros non semper amant. 11. Ministri feram gladio necabunt. 12. Stultitiam puerorum culpavi. 13. Viri feminis pecuniam donaverunt. 14. Reginae gener liberos poetae culpavit. 15. Servi agros domini arant. 16. Puerorum libri magistrum non delectabunt. 17. Viri gladios, feminas libros laudabant. 18. Pueri agros hastis vulneraverunt. 19. Nautae in silvis errabunt. 20. Magister libros generorum laudavit.

B.—1. The boys were praising the masters' wisdom. 2. The children will dance in the garden. 3. The queen gave gardens to her servants. 4. The men wounded the wild boars with spears. 5. Farmers like fields *and* poets *like* books. 6. The Gauls slew the women and children. 7. You (pl.) will give a book to the girl *and* a horse to the boy. 8. The masters did not always praise the boys. 9. Servants, you have slain the queen's son-in-law with a sword. 10. The farmers' horses will be in the fields. 11. The wild boars overcame the servants. 12. I do not praise the fields of Gaul. 13. The queen was blaming the folly of *her* son-in-law. 14. Books do not always delight children. 15. Master, I was walking in the farmer's fields. 16. The doctor's wisdom did not overcome the carpenter's disease. 17. Roses *delight* girls, swords delight boys. 18. I praised the woman *but* blamed the men. 19. We wounded the wild boar with a spear. 20. The queen was always giving money to her son-in-law.

EXERCISE 9.

A.—1. Oppida aedificatis. 2. Bella non laudamus. 3. Agricolae proelia non amant. 4. Reginae dona culpabas. 5. Venena medicorum laudavi. 6. Praemia nautis donate. 7. Scuta in templo sunt. 8. Romani oppidum spoliabunt. 9. Templum in insula aedificabimus. 10. Stultitia saepe est initium belli. 11. Romani oppida et templa spoliavere. 12. Aurum et argentum reginam delectant. 13. Poetae, dona deorum laudate. 14. Scuta gladiosque in templo dedicavimus. 15. Nauta, proelia belli narra. 16. Feminae aquam, viri vinum laudant. 17. Dona magistri pueros delectabant. 18. Dominum veneno necabimus. 19. Romani oppida et agros spoliabunt. 20. Viri pueris praemia donaverunt.

B.—1. We blame wars. 2. Tell the queen's deeds, poets. 3. We praise the joys of life. 4. You blame the gifts of the gods. 5. Boy, give the sailors wine. 6. I shall not praise the rewards of folly. 7. We are building a town in the island. 8. Wine was the beginning of joy. 9. You (pl.) were praising the towns of Gaul. 10. Relate the battle to *your* father-in-law. 11. Doctors overcome diseases by drugs. 12. The queen was giving rewards to the poets. 13. The poets' joy delighted the queen. 14. The boys were handling the shields and swords of the men. 15. The servants will kill the queen with poison. 16. You will build towns in the woods. 17. In the earth are gold and silver. 18. The queen's anger will be the beginning of the war. 19. Pillage the temples, slay the men. 20. Farmers do not often handle swords and shields.

EXERCISE 10.

A.—1. Silvas amoenas Italiae laudavimus. 2. Verba poetae docti turbam confirmaverunt. 3. Pueri in horto amoeno erant. 4. Facta amicorum perfidorum culpamus. 5. Ira reginae patriae noxia est. 6. Vitia reginae belli causa erant. 7. Verba puerorum stultorum non laudavisti. 8. Magnae turbae in viis clamabant. 9. Viri feminas timidas multis verbis confirmavere. 10. Praemia magna nautis bonis donabimus. 11. Romani templa magna in multis oppidis aedificaverunt. 12. Regina, aurum multum in templo dedicavisti. 13. Puerorum gaudium magistro gratum erit. 14. Viri verba feminarum timidarum non laudant. 15. Poeta reginae bonae facta splendida narravit.

B.—1. I blamed the words of the treacherous sailor. 2. The vices of the wicked lords will be the cause of the war. 3. There were many eagles in the large island. 4. The anger of the queen

will overcome the timid sailors. 5. The drugs of the learned doctor are not pleasing to the boy. 6. Sailors, you have overcome many dangers by *your* great boldness. 7. You (pl.) do not love treacherous friends. 8. The queen encouraged the learned poet with splendid gifts. 9. I was walking in the pleasant woods. 10. In Gaul *there* are many long rivers. 11. We will build splendid temples in the towns. 12. Master, you did not blame the deeds of the bad boys. 13. The dangers of the long way were not pleasing to the timid women. 14. I will give a large sum of money to the clever doctors. 15. We were blaming the deeds of the foolish sailors.

EXERCISE 11.

A.—1. Pueri aegri sunt. 2. Puellas pulchras amamus. 3. Agnos teneros immola. 4. Aquam puellae aegrae donavi. 5. Oculi reginae pulchrae nigri sunt. 6. Amicos asperos et perfidos non amamus. 7. Agricolaes tauros nigras et equos albos laudaverunt. 8. Sapientia viri docti feminas pulchras delectavit. 9. Romani agros agricolarum miserorum vastabunt. 10. Filiae nautae aegri pecuniam donavi. 11. Pericula viae asperae sunt multa. 12. Puellae, rosas albas rubrasque deae dedicavistis. 13. Nautae puellas donis pulchris delectaverunt. 14. Poetae, facta splendida reginae pulchrae narrate. 15. Servis aegris rosas donabo.

B.—1. Give red roses to the girl. 2. I have sacrificed a black bull. 3. The temple is sacred. 4. The eyes of the beautiful girls were large. 5. We blamed the rough words of the sailor. 6. The red roses and white lilies will delight the sailor's eyes. 7. Queen, you gave much gold and silver to the black slaves. 8. The rough way was hurtful to the delicate woman. 9. You will give roses to the sick woman. 10. The slaves killed the sacred doves. 11. The cold winds will be hurtful to the tender lambs. 12. The Romans are building beautiful towns and large temples. 13. Wretched farmers, you are ploughing small fields. 14. The daughters of beautiful women are not always beautiful. 15. The sailor overcame the farmer with harsh words.

EXERCISE 12.

A.—1. Vulnerabamini. 2. Culpabamur. 3. Amaris. 4. Regina laudatur. 5. Oppida spoliuntur. 6. Oppida a Gallis aedificantur. 7. Praemiis splendidis a regina honorabar. 8. A bonis non amamini. 9. Agricola a nauta superabatur. 10. Somno et cibo

recreabamini. 11. A medico docto culpamur. 12. Marce, a regina amaris. 13. Puer a nauta castigatur. 14. Puellae tenerae via longa defatigantur. 15. Apri ab agricolis hastis vulnerabantur.

B.—1. You were being chastised. 2. We are being wounded. 3. Marcus, you are blamed. 4. Towns were being built. 5. Bulls are being sacrificed. 6. The women are loved by *their* sons. 7. The splendid deeds of the beautiful queen were being narrated by the poet. 8. Boys, you are blamed by the master. 9. We were being delighted by the poet's words. 10. Sailors, you are praised by the queen. 11. The girl is being wounded by the slave with a sword. 12. You are delighted with the poet's books. 13. Marcus, you were being chastised by the master. 14. Riches are desired by the wretched farmers. 15. You are praised by women, *but* you are blamed by men.

EXERCISE 13.

A.—1. Amabimini. 2. Culpata sum. 3. Laudaberis. 4. Nautae, superabimini. 5. Oppida spoliata sunt. 6. Tempa deorum a Gallis spoliabuntur. 7. Regina, a malis laudaberis, a bonis culpaberis. 8. Vita rustica ab agricolis semper laudabitur. 9. Dominus a servis necatus est. 10. Feminae benevolentia medici delectatae sunt. 11. Puer ab avo castigabitur. 12. Nautae, praemiis splendidis honorabimini. 13. Ab amicis multis culpati sumus. 14. Oppida a Gallis habitabuntur. 15. Facta reginae malae a bonis culpata sunt.

B.—1. You will be chastised. 2. We shall be praised. 3. Queen, you have been overcome. 4. The beautiful girls have been praised. 5. The bulls will be sacrificed. 6. Rewards will be given to the skilful physicians. 7. The poet was honoured by the queen's friendship. 8. Town life will never be praised by doctors. 9. The towns were pillaged by the Gauls. 10. We shall be praised by our enemies *and* blamed by our friends. 11. The danger was overcome by the queen's boldness. 12. You will be delighted with the rivers and woods of the island. 13. Girls, you will be delighted with the roses and lilies of the garden. 14. The men were overcome by the women's tears. 15. You will be wounded by a black slave.

EXERCISE 14.

A.—1. Nautae navem coronis ornabant. 2. Cives classem comparabunt. 3. Clades reginae nuntiata est. 4. Navis, cives conservavisti. 5. Oppidum turri firmabitur. 6. Cives turres aedificabant. 7. Poeta, reginae cladem nuntiabis. 8. Nautae,

nubes spectate. 9. Colles civium oculos delectant. 10. Insula vallibus et collibus abundat. 11. Naves a civibus comparabantur. 12. Puellae, vestibus pulchris delectabimini. 13. Hortos magnos civibus donavimus. 14. Cives, castra turribus firmate. 15. Oppida hostium templis splendidis ornata sunt.

B.—1. The ship will be overcome by the winds. 2. The camp will be pillaged by the enemy (pl.). 3. We dedicated the fleet to Neptune. 4. Queen, you have been wounded by a treacherous citizen. 5. Boys, you will be delighted with the hills and valleys of Gaul. 6. The citizens will get together money and garments. 7. The ships' prows have been adorned with garlands. 8. Sailor, you will be delighted with the citizens' gardens. 9. Queen, cheer the timid citizens. 10. The winds will be hurtful to the fleet. 11. We will give ships to the citizens. 12. The enemy were looking at the valleys and hills of the island. 13. The town is being strengthened by large towers. 14. The queen will be delighted with the beautiful garment. 15. Citizens, build towers.

EXERCISE 15.

A.—1. Cives, pontem turribus firmate. 2. Dentes vulpium longi et albi sunt. 3. Silvas in montibus specto. 4. Multae urbes in montibus aedificatae sunt. 5. Athenis templa splendida in montibus aedificata sunt. 6. Incolae montium glandes vorant. 7. Gadibus cives miseri glandes vorabant. 8. Aqua fontis feminas recreavit. 9. Aqua fontium frigida erat. 10. Cives, urbem pontibus et turribus firmavistis. 11. Urbes turribus firmatae sunt. 12. Romae vitam rusticam laudabam. 13. Cives templa donis splendidis ornaverunt. 14. Gabiis templa a civibus donis splendidis ornabuntur. 15. Tarenti ab incolis urbis educaberis.

B.—1. Romulus built the city. 2. The Romans are building many cities in Italy. 3. The enemy (pl.) will behold the towers of the cities. 4. The fox will wound the sailor with his teeth. 5. The citizens will strengthen the city with towers. 6. The sailors were praising the towers of the city. 7. You have beheld many mountains, sailors. 8. At Corinth you beheld many mountains. 9. At Gades the citizens are educated by the poets. 10. At Athens many fountains were dedicated to the goddess. 11. I beheld a city on the mountain. 12. At Rome you (pl.) praised temples and fountains, at Gades islands and ships. 13. Many citizens have been wounded by the teeth of the foxes. 14. At Gabii you (pl.) were delighted by mountains and valleys. 15. At Gades you will be honoured with splendid gifts.

EXERCISE 16.

A.—1. Sedilia multa in hortis reginae sunt. 2. Venti classem incitabunt. 3. Cubilia ferarum in montibus erant. 4. Nautae in mari nabant. 5. Agricolae vulpes retibus superabunt. 6. Violentia maris naves superavit. 7. Equus animal pulchrum est. 8. Vectigalia deae dedicata sunt. 9. Venti frigidi animalibus noxii erunt. 10. Nautae fessi cubilia laudaverunt. 11. Cives hortos sedilibus ornant. 12. Equus calcari incitabitur. 13. Romae animalia multa sacra erant. 14. Vulpes ab agricolis rete superabitur. 15. Gadibus mare et naves laudabas.

B.—1. I will prepare beds for the sailors. 2. The violence of the storm was hurtful to the nets. 3. The lord's spurs were sharp. 4. The boys will overcome the foxes with nets. 5. The sailor blamed the violence of the sea. 6. Many animals are swimming in the river. 7. You drive forward *your* horse with spurs. 8. We will give ships and nets to the sailors. 9. Beds will be welcome to the tired women. 10. Citizens do not like taxes. 11. The foxes overcame the farmer's net with their teeth. 12. The sailor has beheld many seas. 13. The citizens will be delighted with the seas and fountains. 14. At Corinth I used to* swim in the sea. 15. At Athens the citizens used to sacrifice many animals to Neptune.

EXERCISE 17.

A.—1. Aestate paludes siccae erunt. 2. Virtutem militum laudabimus. 3. Naves tempestate quassatae sunt. 4. Crassus pedites in hibernis collocabit. 5. Nauta tempestates hiemis culpabat. 6. Galli principibus non obtemperant. 7. Hieme urbes, castra aestate laudamus. 8. Crasse, equites revoca. 9. Trabes pontis longae sunt. 10. Filii principum Romae educabuntur. 11. Galli agros aestate peragrabant. 12. Milites, civitatem virtute conservavistis. 13. Pedites a Crasso in hibernis collocati sunt. 14. Aestate multae ranae in paludibus erunt. 15. Equites, equos calcaribus incitate.

B.—1. The storms of winter shattered the fleet. The foxes wander about the woods in winter and summer. 3. We placed the booty in the marsh. 4. The chiefs of the state were treacherous. 5. The cavalry will be recalled by Crassus. 6. In winter the soldiers praised winter quarters. 7. Citizens, obey the chief.

* Use the imperfect tense : e.g. *I used to live at Rome, Romae habitabam.*

8. The city has been strengthened by marshes and mountains. 9. The infantry were wandering in the woods. 10. The soldiers' valour was being praised by the chiefs. 11. The fleet will be shattered by the violence of the storms. 12. The swords of the infantry were sharp. 13. Sailor, you will not praise the sea in winter. 14. The deeds of the cavalry will be praised by Crassus. 15. In winter we dance, in summer we walk.

EXERCISE 18.

A.—1. Puellae flores amant. 2. Crasse, sermonem oratoris laudavisti. 3. Athenis sermonibus oratorum delectatus sum. 4. Passeres in ramis arborum specto. 5. Leones silvas et montes insulae habitabant. 6. Romae consules legibus non semper obtemperabant. 7. Dei virtutem viris, feminis pulchritudinem donaverunt. 8. Leones gregem pastoris in montibus vorabant. 9. Viri et feminae sunt homines. 10. Regis filii Corinthi educantur. 11. Consul dentibus leonum vulneratus est. 12. Pueri, nidum passeris spoliavistis. 13. Consul agros regis perfidi vastabat. 14. Aestate pulchritudine florum delectaberis. 15. Leones a pastoribus retibus superati sunt.

B.—1. I love *my* mother. 2. You do not always obey *your* father and mother. 3. Soldiers, you blamed the cowardice of the leaders. 4. In summer the flocks will wander about the fields. 5. The king's fleet has been shattered by storms. 6. The woods abound with flowers. 7. Leaders, you have not obeyed the king. 8. We praised the beauty of the flowers. 9. The cowardice of the cavalry will be overcome by the consul's valour. 10. Sons are always loved by *their* mothers. 11. Treacherous shepherds, you will be punished by the judges. 12. The leaders placed the soldiers in winter quarters. 13. The lairs of the lions were in the mountains. 14. Cavalry, you are being recalled by the consul. 15. The orator's conversation excited the king's valour.

EXERCISE 19.

A.—1. Dux foedera violabat. 2. Nautae litora insulae peragrabant. 3. Pater scelera filii laudavit. 4. Carmina poetae oratorem non delectaverunt. 5. Virtutem consulum carminibus celebrabimus. 6. Milites periculis itineris perturbati sunt. 7. Multa cadavera post proelium spectavimus. 8. Puellae, capita coronis ornavistis. 9. Agricolae rus, nautae mare laudant. 10.

Foedus a rege perfido violatum est. 11. Dedecus est praemium scelerum. 12. Frigus hiemis greges teneros excruciauit. 13. Milites, oneribus et longo itinere excruciatu estis. 14. Aestate puellae in litore curuo saltant. 15. Regina perfida scelerum praemiis delectata est.

B.—1. The king praised the poet's songs. 2. Judges, you did not blame the consul's crime. 3. The leaders of the Gauls are violating the treaties. 4. The flashes of lightning were frightening the flocks. 5. The flocks will be frightened by the flashes of lightning. 6. Poets, celebrate the king's deeds by *your* songs. 7. We beheld the dead bodies of the lions on the shore. 8. I shall not praise the rewards of crimes. 9. Poet, you are always praising past times. 10. The consuls were tortured by *their* wounds. 11. The dangers of the march frightened the soldiers. 12. The slaves were carrying burdens on their heads. 13. The soldiers will be overcome by cold and wounds. 14. Sailors, behold the beauty of the winding shore. 15. The soldiers will relate to the citizens the dangers of *their* past marches.

EXERCISE 20.

A.—1. Servi onera gravia in capitibus portabant. 2. Agricola frigus hiemis acris culpabat. 3. Filiae agricolarum aestate alacres sunt. 4. Carthagini vita servorum tristis erat. 5. Fulgura milites fortes non perturbavere. 6. Horatii carmina dulcia et brevia sunt. 7. Pulchritudinem equorum celerum laudavimus. 8. Miles fortis vulneribus gravibus exanimatus est. 9. Equi aurigarum alacrum certamine incitati sunt. 10. Aestate fontis aqua dulcis gregibus grata erat. 11. Omnes cives oratione acri Ciceronis hodie incitabuntur. 12. Amici fideles tristi feminae dona utilia donabunt. 13. Omnes virtute ducis alacris conservati sumus. 14. Veis omnes cives facta fortia fidelis servi laudant. 15. Cicero orationibus acribus, Horatius carminibus dulcibus Romanos delectabat.

B.—1. The winter was keen. 2. There will be a fierce contest at Veii to-day. 3. The horse is keen and swift. 4. The sad woman was weeping in the street. 5. Poets, you have sung sad songs. 6. We urge forward swift horses with spurs. 7. Queen, to-day you are cheerful, yesterday you were sad. 8. The eager soldier is tormented by the pain of his severe wounds. 9. Farmer, you praise long summers *and* short winters. 10. All the citizens praised the sweet songs of Horace. 11. The eager boys will overcome the fox with *their* swift arrows. 12. The gifts of faithful friends are always

welcome. 13. Crassus, you will overcome all the dangers of the march with *your* swift horses. 14. All the citizens will be sad at Carthage to-day. 15. Horace celebrated the joys of country life by *his* sweet songs.

EXERCISE 21.

A.—1. Reginam infelicem catenis onerabimus. 2. Leo rapax sagitta celeri superabitur. 3. Omnes Caesarem felicem appellabant. 4. Patres filiorum sapientium felices sunt. 5. Patrem filii sapientis felicem appello. 6. Caesar Gallos vectigalibus ingentibus onerabit. 7. Rex infelix, scelera reginae catenis digna sunt. 8. Dux audax hostes rapaces fugavit. 9. Cives prudentes, oratori sapienti obtemperate. 10. Omnes pulchritudinem praestantem reginae laudabant. 11. Cadaver leonis ingentis in litore spectavimus. 12. Crasse, copias ingentes hostium fugavisti. 13. Caesar principes fideles praemiis ingentibus oneravit. 14. Filios patrum sapientium felices puto. 15. Scelera turpia militum praemiis indigna putavimus.

B.—1. A wise king will praise a wise plan. 2. Wise leaders do not blame wise plans. 3. The wise plan of the leaders are worthy of praise. 4. We thought the wise plan of the leaders worthy of praise. 5. The forces of the Gauls were immense. 6. All Caesar's plans will be bold. 7. The prudent leaders were blaming Caesar's bold plans. 8. The rapacious enemy (pl.) will be overcome by the bold soldiers. 9. Cicero's speech will be worthy of the praise of wise *men*. 10. You (pl.) loaded the unhappy leader with chains. 11. You (pl.) will be delighted by the words of the prudent orators. 12. All *men* think Cicero wise. 13. The unhappy woman gave an immense sum of money to the rapacious leader. 14. All *men* call an unfaithful friend base. 15. The songs of the greedy poet are unworthy of the queen's praise.

EXERCISE 22.

A. 1. Divites sed infelices sumus. 2. Caesaris scelerum immemor es. 3. Post proelium Galli consulem superstitem gladiis exanimaverunt. 4. Cur luna sole minor est? 5. Urbem maiorem in monte aedificabimus. 6. Lacrimae reginae inopis regem excruciant. 7. Virtus ducum vigilum a Caesare laudabatur. 8. Caesar milites superstites praemiis ingentibus oneravit. 9. Clamores Gallorum feminam inopem perturbant. 10. Amici divitum non semper fideles sunt. 11. Divites amicorum pauperum interdum immemores sunt. 12. Maiorem laudem poetis quam militibus donamus. 13. Agri agricolarum inopum a Crasso vastabuntur.

14. Cur nautae maiora dona Neptuno quam Marti dedicant?
 15. Matris laus duci dulcior erit quam reginae praemia.

B.—1. Soldiers, be watchful. 2. The sun is larger than the moon. 3. Why do you give rewards to the rich? 4. Why did you give greater rewards to the rich than to the poor? 5. I will give better gifts to the boy than to the girl. 6. The leaders of the Gauls put to flight the surviving infantry. 7. The poor are sometimes happier than the rich. 8. The watchful leaders were preparing greater forces. 9. Give money to the helpless sailor. 10. We are not unmindful of the queen's kindness. 11. I beheld a watchful soldier on the tower. 12. Nothing is sweeter in summer than woods and fountains. 13. We do not always think the life of rich *men* happy. 14. The mother of the surviving leader will dedicate the arms of her son to Mars. 15. The soldiers were overcome by the tears of the helpless women.

EXERCISE 23.

A.—1. Gradus turris numeravi. 2. Exploratores currus hostium numerabunt. 3. Pericula itineris exercitui noxia erunt. 4. Dux currus in cornu dextro collocavit. 5. Galli multos milites arcubus vulneraverunt. 6. Umbra quercuum greges delectat. 7. Pastores, fructibus dulcibus horti recreabimini. 8. Nauta, portus insulae culpavisti. 9. Caesar fines Gallorum cum magno exercitu intravit. 10. Puer stultus folia quercus numerabat. 11. Genua valida taurorum agricolis utilia sunt. 12. Sagittae manum reginae et genu regis vulneraverunt. 13. Currus et arcus a ducibus Gallorum parabantur. 14. Carmina Horatii in manibus omnium civium sunt. 15. Hieme Caesar exercitum in hibernis collocabat, aestate agros hostium vastabat.

B.—1. Farmers praise oaks in summer. 2. The ships were entering the harbour. 3. Horns are useful to bulls. 4. Rich women praise white hands. 5. The Roman army entered the territories of the Gauls. 6. Caesar will place the cavalry on the wings. 7. Boy, you will be delighted by the soldier's bow. 8. Spies, why did you not count the enemy's chariots? 9. The consul is sacrificing a bull on the steps of the temple. 10. Boys, you will be delighted by the fruit of the trees. 11. The girls were praising needles, the boys were praising bows. 12. Nothing is more useful to men than sight. 13. Caesar will give immense rewards to the army. 14. The knees of the spy were wounded by an arrow. 15. The farmer's bull wounded the shepherd's son with *its* horn.

EXERCISE 24.

A.—1. Spes remedium est multorum dolorum. 2. Crassi filii in acie pugnabant. 3. Milites segnitiam ducem culpabant. 4. Fide amicorum delectamur. 5. Omnes res in insula abundant. 6. Dierum praeteritorum immemor es. 7. Speciem virtutis non laudamus. 8. Exercitus in magna planitie pugnabant. 9. Multos dies agros Gallorum vastabamus. 10. Dies aestate longi, hieme breves sunt. 11. Mater faciem filiae pulchram putavit. 12. Cras planitiem intrabimus et turres urbis spectabimus. 13. Caesar animos militum spe praedae confirmavit. 14. Facie pulchra puellae delectaberis, Marce. 15. Rerum multarum immemor sum, sed non fidei militum.

B.—1. The farmer praised the long days of summer. 2. Farmers, you will be delighted by the long days of summer. 3. The king is lord of all things. 4. We have inhabited the plain *for* many years. 5. The spies beheld the enemy's line of battle. 6. The soldiers were being delighted by the hope of booty. 7. You (pl.) will never be unmindful of the loyalty of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers will blame the apathy of the leader *for* many days. 9. The consul was wounded in battle (*acies*) by the leader of the enemy. 10. Soldiers, you were praising the queen's beautiful face. 11. The treacherous citizens did not praise Cicero's loyalty. 12. The general will overcome the apathy of the soldiers by the hope of rewards. 13. The treacherous queen was delighting the citizens by a semblance of benevolence. 14. The leaders will place the cavalry on the right wing of the line. 15. We are forgetful of many things, but not of the apathy of the consuls.

EXERCISE 25.

A.—1. Alii alia clamant. 2. Mors nemini grata est. 3. Reditum alterius exploratoris exspectamus. 4. Utri consulum frumentum suppeditavistis? Neutri. 5. Boni soli felices sunt. 6. Totam noctem in turri vigilavi. 7. Alios culpamus, alios laudamus. 8. Dux duas naves longas in portu spectavit. 9. Uno solo proelio Gallos superabimus. 10. Uter foedus violavit? Neuter. 11. Caesar praemia alia aliis donabit. 12. Amicus perfidus a nullo amatur. 13. Altera puellarum pulchra, altera sapiens est. 14. Puer tria cadavera in litore spectavit. 15. Alter fratrum alterum necavit.

B.—1. Two consuls were created at Rome. 2. The leader related the disaster to the whole army. 3. Some *things* delight some *men*, others *delight* others. 4. *Only* one man-of-war is in the

harbour. 5. The sight of other captives dismayed the soldiers. 6. No one saw any traces of the contest. 7. One of the *two* chiefs was providing corn, the other wine. 8. I was walking *for* three hours in the woods. 9. In which wing shall we place the cavalry? 10. The deeds of one of the *two* are worthy of praise, *those* of the other *are* worthy of blame. 11. To which of the *two* shall I give the reward? To neither. 12. We overcame the enemy *in* two battles. 13. I see the tracks of one horse *only*. 14. The Romans with one ship overcame two ships of the enemy. 15. Three spies were counting the enemy's forces.

EXERCISE 26.

A.—1. Milites pericula itineris longissimi culpabant. 2. Cur verba oratoris eloquentissimi culpas? 3. Cur verba prudentissima oratorum culpavisti? 4. Cras feliciores erimus, hodie tristissimi sumus. 5. Dona splendidiora poetæ dona. 6. Animi militum spererum feliciorum confirmabuntur. 7. Milites consilia audacissima Caesaris laudabant. 8. Ferrum auro utilius est. 9. Pueri fructibus dulcissimis delectabantur. 10. Marcus, dux fortissimus, fines Gallorum vastabat. 11. Ciceronem, oratorem eloquentissimum, laudavimus. 12. Patres pueris prudentiores sunt. 13. Cives omnes facta Ciceronis, consulis prudentissimi, laudabant. 14. Aestate dies longissimi, noctes brevissimæ sunt. 15. Cives, dona splendidissima Crasso, viro fortissimo, donate.

B.—1. The teeth of the lions are very sharp. 2. The learned king praised the poems of Horace. 3. The beeches were higher than the oaks. 4. The cruel queen will torture the slaves. 5. Give (pl.) more useful gifts to the poor woman. 6. The horse is a very strong animal. 7. The boughs of the oaks were very long. 8. We praised the very prudent words of Cicero. 9. The dangers of the march will be very welcome to the brave leader. 10. Gold is sometimes a very dangerous gift. 11. The learned master will chastise the very foolish boys. 12. The brave leader Caesar was blaming the soldiers' apathy. 13. The shrewd spies were worthy of more splendid gifts. 14. Prosperity is sometimes more dangerous than adversity. 15. We will lay waste the territories of the Gauls, *our* cruel enemies.

EXERCISE 27.

A.—1. Milites verbis benevolentissimis reginæ delectantur. 2. Galli agros agriculturalum miserrimorum vastant. 3. Greges regis pinguiissimi sunt. 4. Montes Helvetiæ asperrimi et maxime ardui

sunt. 5. Puella magis pia est quam trater. 6. Veterrima inimicitia inter Gallos et Romanos est. 7. Omnes viri puellas pulcherrimas laudant. 8. Aestas gratior est pauperrimis quam hiems. 9. Nihil est pulchrius rosa. 10. Fabulas maledicentissimas saepe narras. 11. Feminis egentissimis vestes donate. 12. Rex benevolentior regina erat. 13. Milites ducem, hominem miserrimum, catenis oneraverunt. 14. Vinum veterrimum amamus. 15. Dominus, vir benevolentissimus, servo aegerrimo multa donavit.

B.—1. Lilies are more beautiful than roses. 2. The stag is a very beautiful animal. 3. The Roman laws are very ancient. 4. The boy was very dutiful. 5. A very scandalous story is told about Balbus. 6. Women are more delicate than men. 7. Nothing is more beautiful than a lion. 8. The very foreseeing will never be very poor. 9. The eloquent orator was exciting the soldiers by his very eager words. 10. Farmers' daughters are more energetic in summer than in winter. 11. Give money to the needy sailor. 12. The rivers of Switzerland are very swift. 13. We think the life of slaves very wretched. 14. The dangers of the very rough way fatigue the infantry. 15. The very distinguished exploits of the leader will be related to the queen.

EXERCISE 28.

A.—1. Catilina nequissimus hominum fuit. 2. Soror fratris simillima est. 3. Nihil est difficilius virtute. 4. Minima saepe optima sunt. 5. Oppidum maximum in insula ditissima habitamus. 6. Iuniores senioribus obtemperant. 7. Agricola, vir pauperrimus, agros maiores optavit. 8. Adulatio semper pessima est. 9. Plurimi poetae senectutem laudaverunt. 10. Spes rerum meliorum pauperrimos confirmat. 11. Vinum veterrimum optimum putamus. 12. Amicus perfidus peior hoste est. 13. Caesar urbem turribus plurimis firmavit. 14. Columbae aquilarum dissimillimae sunt. 15. Nautae dona plura Neptuno quam Marti dedicaverunt.

B.—1. The fox is more slender than the stag. 2. The largest things are not always the best. 3. Nothing is baser than flattery. 4. Mothers and daughters are sometimes very unlike. 5. Queen, give more things to the very poor (pl.) than to the very rich (pl.). 6. The fox is smaller than the lion. 7. Nothing is better than the love of friends. 8. The poet recited very many songs. 9. The elders are wiser than the younger men. 10. The joys of old age are very small. 11. The soldiers are dismayed by the fear of worse things. 12. A faithful friend is the best gift of the gods. 13. The

infantry are excited by the hope of very great booty. 14. The base Catilina prepared very many forces. 15. The life of a very rich person is full of fears.

EXERCISE 29.

A.—1. Proximo anno plurima oppida oppugnata sunt. 2. Cato ad extremam senectutem in horto cottodice ambulabat. 3. Postumus filius patris sum. 4. Superioribus proeliis hostes semper superavistis, milites. 5. Dux Romanus in Hispania citeriore maximas copias comparat. 6. Britannia ultima provincia est. 7. Maximae silvae in Hispania ulteriore sunt. 8. Dux ultimo die belli vulneratus est. 9. Oppidum in summo colle aedificamus. 10. Milites in inferiore parte vallis pugnant. 11. Primo vere agricolae tauros in agris immolant. 12. Postrema verba ducis recita, poeta. 13. Virtus est summum bonum. 14. Inferiores partes insulae mari propiores sunt. 15. Primus inter primos sum.

B.—1. On the first day of the year I shall sacrifice a bull to Neptune. 2. In the previous year we overcame the Gauls. 3. I see woods on the tops of the mountains. 4. The remotest territories of the Gauls are near Britain. 5. In former years I used to long for very many *things*. 6. The soldiers are fighting in the lowest part of the valley. 7. In the beginning of spring *there* will be very many frogs in the marshes. 8. The leader laid waste Hither Gaul. 9. The last (pl.) will be killed by the enemy's (pl.) horsemen. 10. Until extreme old age the king used to swim (impf.) daily. 11. *There* are great crowds in the higher part of the town. 12. You will never be unmindful of very rich friends. 13. The citizens chastised the priest on the lowest step of the temple. 14. A worse generation wishes for riches. 15. Citizens, strengthen the outermost wall with towers.

EXERCISE 30.

A.—1. Caesaris consilia nobis nota erant. 2. Cives me laudant, te culpant. 3. Cur mihi pecuniam donavistis? 4. Homo improbus numquam sui immemor est. 5. Duces numquam vestri immemores erunt, milites. 6. Multi nostrum Athenis educati sumus. 7. Me equi, libri te delectant. 8. Mihi patria, tibi vita cara est. 9. Galli sumus, regina, ego et tu. 10. Scelera Catilinae a vobis condemnata sunt. 11. Amicitia mihi carior est argento. 12. Tu mei numquam

immemor eris. 13. Multi vestrum Ciceronem stultum putatis. 14. Oppida Gallorum a nobis expugnata sunt. 15. Balbus, homo stultissimus, semper se laudat.

B.—1. We were walking, you were swimming. 2. Girls, adorn yourselves with roses. 3. All *men* love themselves. 4. I will never be unmindful of you (pl.). 5. Many of us have fought in Gaul. 6. Queen, the words of the wise poet were pleasing to you. 7. Marcus, the judges will condemn you. 8. My son and I have always been very friendly to you. 9. Catilina's crimes will never be praised by me. 10. Master, why do you chastise me? 11. The dishonourable Crassus will never give you money. 12. The praise of the brave general was very pleasing to me. 13. Cicero was praised by you (pl.) *and* blamed by me. 14. Many of you beheld the dead body of Caesar. 15. You praise yourself *and* are blamed by your friends.

EXERCISE 31.

A.—1. Nostri urbi appropinquant. 2. Caesar fines Gallorum cum exercitu suo intravit. 3. Carminibus tuis, poeta, delector. 4. Totum diem in silvis tuis ambulavi. 5. Virtus vestra, milites, patriam nostram conservavit. 6. Vita mea in manibus tuis est. 7. Filiae meae totam noctem saltaverunt. 8. Regina maritum sua manu necavit. 9. Res prosperae patriae nostrae perniciosissimae erunt. 10. Cur filios meos castigavisti, magister? 11. Amici mei aere alieno me liberaverunt. 12. Studia tua cive bono indigna sunt. 13. Oculi tui glauci, mei nigri sunt. 14. Nostri Poenorum fines intraverunt et oppida spoliaverunt. 15. Amicis nostris, Caesar, inimicissimus es.

B.—1. Verginius sacrificed his own daughter. 2. My plans are known to you. 3. Our *men* will lay waste the lands of the Gauls. 4. The praise of my friends is very pleasing to me. 5. Caesar placed his *men* in winter quarters. 6. Your very prudent words cheered the minds of our *men*. 7. My children are dearer to me than life. 8. All *men* praise your wisdom. 9. Soldiers, I shall never be unmindful of your valour. 10. All *men* love their own children. 11. Your wisdom is known to us by fame. 12. Our friends will give you very splendid gifts. 13. The treacherous leader slew the queen with his own sword. 14. My son, I am delighted by your deeds. 15. Gauls, our *men* will storm your towns.

EXERCISE 32.

A.—1. Cur illos pueros castigas? 2. Hae puellae eximia pulchritudine erunt. 3. Fama huius cladis animos militum perturb-

bavit. 4. Cur pecuniam huic servo donavisti? 5. Multos passeret in ramis illarum arborum specto. 6. Illo die pater tuus mihi hos libros donavit. 7. Haec classis a rege comparatur. 8. Huic uxorem eximia virtute donabimus. 9. Hos libros puellae, illos puero dona. 10. Studia ista cive Romano indigna puto. 11. Haec mox consuli nuntiabuntur. 12. Spes harum rerum me confirmavit. 13. Illa pocula in hac mensa colloca. 14. Agri illius agricolae a nostris vastati sunt. 15. Haec oppida, Caesar, ab istis militibus oppugnabantur.

B.—1. The spies reported these *things* to the leader. 2. In that year this town was stormed. 3. Caesar will be greatly delighted by these things. 4. This king was a *man* of extraordinary valour. 5. I never liked that friend *of yours*. 6. I praise this, I blame that. 7. Give me those books *of yours*. 8. This island is inhabited by Greeks. 9. This poet's son was reading aloud *his* father's poems. 10. We are praised by these *and* blamed by those. 11. The daughters of those women were of extraordinary beauty. 12. After this victory we shall soon overcome those enemies *of yours*. 13. By these words the general encouraged the minds of his *men*. 14. The pursuits of that young man are unworthy of such great abilities (sing.). 15. The inhabitants of this island have always been of a corrupt disposition.

EXERCISE 33.

A.—1. Id oppidum flumini finitimum est. 2. Poeta ea facta multis carminibus celebravit. 3. Agricola et servi eius summa diligentia agros arabant. 4. Id donum tibi ipsi donabo. 5. Ipse Cicero ea non laudabit. 6. Poeta idem carmen semper recitat. 7. Eodem die Galli a Caesare proelio equestri superati sunt. 8. Eo tempore Caesar cum equitibus urbi appropinquabat. 9. Numquam eius dici immemor fui. 10. Maiores nostri ipsi eo modo pugnant. 11. Puellae fessae sunt : vinum eis dona. 12. Amici nostri nobis cariores sunt quam ipsa vita. 13. Cur semper carmina eorundem poetarum recitas? 14. Avus meus eadem semper narrat. 15. Marcus et uxor eius filiam suam necaverunt.

B.—1. That woman does not love her own daughter. 2. The slaves slew the cruel **master** and his son. 3. The king himself is approaching the city with speed. 4. At that time our ancestors used to inhabit those regions. 5. We are the sons of the same father. 6. Their territories border (*say* are bordering) on Gaul. 7. The same *things* will not always be dear to the same *men*. 8. On the same day Caesar overcame the enemy (pl.) in a cavalry engagement. 9. That is the dead body of a lion. 10. A brave man will

never tell his own exploits himself. 11. We ourselves beheld those *things*. 12. The Germans themselves and their wives were fighting with the greatest valour. 13. The queen and her son are getting together forces with the greatest diligence. 14. I love my friends and am dear to them. 15. The same woman slew her sister and her *sister's* daughter.

EXERCISE 34.

A.—1. Quid exploratores duci nuntiaverunt? 2. Quod donum optas? 3. Cur hodie eos culpas quos heri laudabas? 4. Exploratores ea quae spectaverunt Caesari nuntiaverunt. 5. Quis umquam scelera tanta laudabit? 6. Is est cui pecuniam donavisti. 7. Poeta cuius carmina laudas pauperrimus est. 8. Urbes quarum turres spectavimus a Graecis habitantur. 9. A quo vulneratus est? Ab amico quem semper amavit. 10. Is qui doctus est dives est. 11. Carmina quae poeta recitavit non laudavimus. 12. Oppidum quod habitamus a Caesare oppugnabitur. 13. Nos qui hodie superati sumus cras proelium redintegrabimus. 14. Ea quae viris grata sunt molesta feminis saepe sunt. 15. Classis quam rex summa diligentia comparavit eodem anno tempestatibus quassata est.

B.—1. What animal is immortal? 2. What has dismayed you? 3. Who ever thought Cicero foolish? 4. We love those who love us. 5. To whom (pl.) are the dangers of the march pleasing? 6. What is more useful than iron? 7. The Gauls laid waste the lands which were near the river. 8. The girls were praising the poet whose songs they were singing. 9. We inhabit an island which abounds with all things. 10. By what words, soldiers, shall I overcome your apathy? 11. You are blaming to-day those whom you were praising yesterday. 12. Those *things* which you have related to us are false. 13. The soldiers whom Caesar placed in winter quarters are laying waste our fields. 14. What shall I give to the woman whose husband is ill? 15. The enemy (pl.) whom we overcame yesterday are besieging the town to-day.

EXERCISE 35.

A.—1. Aliquod carmen recita, poeta. 2. Quilibet, milites, quisque* rogare. 3. Si a quibus civibus culpor, omnia bona mea consulibus donabo. 4. Aliqui numquam felices sunt. 5. Milites si quos spectavit, spe pradeae incitavit. 6. In hoc bello quidam milites se immolaverunt. 7. Hic poeta quaevis facta carminibus

**Quisque* may be used with a plural verb.

celebrat. 8. Haec puella sapientior est quam quisquam vestrum. 9. Si cui condiciones pacis molestae sunt, cives, bellum redintegrate. 10. Aliquod vos, milites, perturbavit. 11. Carmina cuiusdam poetae semper pulchra sunt. 12. Catilina amicos non amavit nec cuiquam carus fuit. 13. Milites, si qui superstites erunt, in hibernis collocabo. 14. Si qui nautae huc errant, suam quisque patriam laudant. 15. Cives aliquos spectavi qui servum, hominem miserrimum, excruciabant.

B.—1. A certain spy brought false tidings (*say* reported false *things*) to Caesar. 2. Give me something. I will give you nothing. 3. Poet, read aloud any poem you like. 4. If Caesar besieges any town, he takes it. 5. The dangers of the way are very great and not pleasing to any one. 6. Certain things we shall never tell you. 7. The farmers were ploughing each his own fields. 8. If any slave relates (*fut.*) these *things* to the lord, he will be tortured. 9. I gave roses to each girl. 10. Tullia is more beautiful than any of *her* sisters. 11. The king has got together some ships. 12. Nor will Cicero tell these *things* to any one. 13. The words of a certain woman dismayed the king. 14. We are praised by all and not blamed by any one. 15. I walked all day in certain woods and did not see any one.

EXERCISE 36.

A.—1. Utinam Lutetiae hodie essem! 2. Utinam ne temerarii fuissetis! 3. Patre nostro, viro fortissimo, digni simus. 4. Ne milites ignavi sint. 5. Noli, regina, patria tua esse indigna. 6. Utinam verba vatis falsa sint! 7. Boni cives semper fuimus; ne hodie perfidi simus. 8. Utinam ne filiae talis patris essemus! 9. Utinam exploratores mendaces sint! 10. Nolite, poetae, laudis cupidi esse. 11. Utinam, filii mei, in acie Romana heri fuissetis! 12. Miles quondam agricola fuerat. 13. Noli filius stultior patris stulti esse. 14. Utinam, puellae, sapientiores essetis! 15. Ne duces proditores patriae nostrae sint.

B.—1. The boys had been very foolish. 2. Would that we were Roman citizens! 3. Soldiers, do not be boastful. 4. Let not poets be greedy of money. 5. Would that I had not been consul! 6. Women, would that you were men and soldiers! 7. O that the words of the spies might be true! 8. Queen, do not be unmindful of past times. 9. Sailors, do not be rash. 10. Let not friends be treacherous. 11. Would that my sons had been at Paris yesterday! 12. Let us not be unworthy of Caesar's praise. 13. O that the men-of-war might be in the harbour! 14. Boy, do not be talkative. 15. Would that you were not false prophets!

EXERCISE 37.

A.—1. Nonne Caesar urbi appropinquabat? 2. Num columbae cum aquilis pugnant? 3. Vinumne desideras? 4. Quales libros puero donabo? 5. Emendavitne puer mores? 6. Nonne principes frumentum suppeditaverant? 7. Num feminae regnabunt? 8. Qualem orationem laudaveratis, cives? 9. Cur magister filios medici castigaverat? 10. Nonne rex, homo crudelissimus, legationem nostram repudiabit?

B.—1. Had not our men always overcome the Greeks? 2. Shall Romans supply corn to the enemies of the Roman people? 3. Do you praise Cicero's orations? 4. By what sort of words had the general stirred up the soldiers? 5. You did not praise treacherous friends, did you? 6. Does not a country life delight farmers *and* a town *life* merchants? 7. Why did Caesar reject the embassy of the Gauls? 8. Will you not amend your characters, boys? 9. Shall a king reign at Rome? 10. Did not the gods create all things?

EXERCISE 38.

A.—1. Num columbae cum aquilis pugnant? 2. Non ignorabamus cur Romani cum Gallis pugnarent. 3. Rogavi cur cives templum Neptuno aedificarent. 4. Dubitamus quales amicos laudetis. 5. Pueri rogabunt nonne mater aegrotet. 6. Quando consules templa hostium spoliabunt? 7. Duces rogant cur frumentum Gallis suppeditemus. 8. Carmina vestra semper recitatis, poetae. 9. Agricolaе rogaverunt num exercitus Gallorum appropinquaret. 10. Agricolaе ignorabant quantam praedam ex agris nostri portarent.

B.—1. The hostages are asking if Caesar is approaching. 2. The captives were asking whether the Roman cavalry were approaching. 3. O queen, the king has asked whether you are sick. 4. The physician asked whether the merchant was sick. 5. The master is not aware what kind of books delight boys. 6. Let us ask what kind of rewards delight soldiers. 7. Tell your mother why I am chastising you. 8. The spies were not unaware how great forces were in our town. 9. Do you not know why the generals are preparing forces? 10. We do not know why the sailors adorn the prows of the ships with garlands.

EXERCISE 39.

A.—1. Mercatores ignorabant quo milites praedam portavissent. 2. Orator narravit cur Catilina coniuravisset. 3. Roga cur pueri lapides iactaverint. 4. Nonne in Italia hiemavistis, milites?

5. Cur mortem filiae non deploravisti? 6. Milites ignorabant quando Galli certamen redintegraturi essent. 7. Agricola roga-verat num servi ararent. 8. Nolite, pueri, lapides iactare. 9. Narra nobis, explorator, ubi sint hostium equites. 10. Utinam signa recuperavissemus!

B.—1. The consul asked why the slaves had conspired. 2. Did you ask why the father did not lament the death of *his* son? 3. Did not our men fight bravely to-day? 4. We were unaware why the citizens had shouted. 5. The soldiers had asked whether Caesar would winter in Gaul. 6. Would that the spies had counted the forces of the enemy! 7. Generals, you have not recovered the standards, have you? 8. Do you doubt, consuls, why we shouted? 9. Show us what kind of a temple you (pl.) have built. 10. Let us ask whether the tempest has shattered the ships.

EXERCISE 40.

In the case of sentences 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, write down both in Latin and in English the direct form of the dependent statement.

A.—1. Consul negat hostes agros nostros vastavisse. 2. Difficile est vitia superare. 3. Exploratores nuntiaverunt Gallos appropinquare. 4. Verisimile est Caesarem oppidum oppugnaturum esse. 5. Notum omnibus est reginam copias comparaturam esse. 6. Non credibile est Ciceronem erravisse. 7. Certum erat nostros audacissime pugnasse. 8. Non credibile est magistrum talia laudaturum esse. 9. Facile est amicos amare. 10. Rex negavit reginam aegrotare.

Before translating the following sentences into Latin state with regard to each whether it does or does not contain a dependent statement.

B.—1. Do you ask why it is pleasant to walk in woods? 2. Do you deny, spies, that Caesar has placed his *men* in winter quarters? 3. It is not credible that the girls will blame *their* mother. 4. Announce (pl.) to the citizens that Catilina is preparing forces. 5. You think (do you not?) that the gods created the world? 6. It is probable the boys are mistaken. 7. It is known to all that Caesar will overcome the Gauls. 8. It is not credible that the Gauls will overcome Caesar. 9. Do not deny, sailor, that the storm has shattered the ships. 10. The poet used frequently to say (imperf.) his own poems were worthy of the highest praise.

EXERCISE 41.

A.—1. Omnibus laborandum est. 2. Dux dictitabat laborandum esse omnibus. 3. Spes pugnandi milites confirmavit. 4. Exploratores ducem incitandi causa falsa nuntiaverunt. 5. Vobis, exploratores, vigilandum est. 6. Hodie pugnando hostes superabimus. 7. Cicero cupidinem regnandi saepe culpavit. 8. Hostes appropinquant, milites; nobis festinandum est. 9. Poeta cives delectandi causa carmina recitavit. 10. Signa recipiendi causa bellum redintegremus.

B.—1. Soldiers, you must fight. 2. The desire of reigning has been hurtful to many. 3. Boys, you must work. 4. By watching we shall overcome our vices. 5. Who will deny that spies must keep watch? 6. Caesar prepared forces for the sake of besieging the town. 7. Boys must obey. 8. The pursuit of walking is salutary. 9. The art of educating is difficult. 10. We entered the territories of the Gauls for the sake of renewing the war.

EXERCISE 42.

A.—1. Sacerdotes templum intraverunt taurum Marti immolandi causa. 2. Vita regnantium plena sollicitudinis est. 3. Otium dulce est aegrotantibus. 4. Vinum pugnantibus apportate, ministri. 5. Dux, vir fortissimus, suos in proelium incitabat. 6. Non ignoramus Gallos Romam oppugnaturus esse. 7. Hodie iterum Gallos, homines perfidissimos, superaturi sumus. 8. Noli mortem ducis pugnantibus nuntiare. 9. Saepe mihi in silvis ambulanti de vita humana multa narrabat. 10. Vigilandum est nobis omnibus; Gallos enim nuntiant urbi appropinquare.

B.—1. Our men are destined to overcome the attack of the enemy. 2. Caesar was attacking the town with all his forces. 3. The citizens are about to fight in the market-place. 4. I never give money to those who ask. 5. The anger of lovers (participle) is not always the renewal of love. 6. The shouts of those who were fighting dismayed the citizens. 7. I did not know when the carpenters would strengthen the towers. 8. Caesar is destined to reign. 9. The heat of the sun is annoying to those who are fighting. 10. All are asking whether the king will sacrifice *his* daughter.

EXERCISE 43.

A.—1. Homines, si valent, felices esse debent. 2. Filios monete, patres. 3. Dux milites in hibernis collocare debebat. 4. Amicos si habemus, omnia habemus. 5. Nisi paremus parentibus, deis non

placemus. 6. Si ille orator orationem habebat, magna turba in foro erat. 7. Patri placere debetis, pueri. 8. Ego taceo, tu loquax es. 9. Si vales, laborare debes. 10. Linguam, puer, coerceto; corpus exerceto.

B.—1. If we do not obey *our* parents, we are worthy of blame. 2. You ought to have brought true tidings to the leader. 3. Boy, control *your* tongue. 4. If the soldiers* were frightening the girls, they were worthy of punishment. 5. Cicero was making a speech in the market place. 6. If we injure our friends, we injure *them* unwittingly. 7. Why used you never to admonish the boy? 8. The boy used never to obey me. 9. Ask this man if he is ill. 10. Boys, be silent.

EXERCISE 44.

A.—1. Minae nautarum puellas terruerant. 2. Nisi ducis mortem omnes celaveritis, cives in officio non retinebitis. 3. Milites impetum hostium multos dies sustinuerant. 4. Cur magister te pecuniam rogavit? Filium meum linguam Latinam docuerat. 5. Virtute vestra, milites, dignitatem rei publicae sustinuistis. 6. Si reginae placuerimus, pecunia numquam egebimus. 7. Num poeta umquam linguam coercuit? 8. Minas Catalinae numquam timueramus. 9. Quomodo legati milites in fide retinuerant? 10. Cives poetam trucidabunt, nisi interdum tacebit.

B.—1. If you did not obey the master, you were very foolish. 2. Cicero himself had taught the boy eloquence. 3. If the farmer exercises his body, he will be well. 4. If you kept the general in ignorance concerning the disaster, you deserved punishment. 5. I had always feared the queen's anger. 6. Consul, unless you control your tongue, you will not please the citizens. 7. If you were in need of all things, why did you not ask me for money? 8. Caesar had with difficulty kept the soldiers in the camp. 9. We had taught the boys the Latin language. 10. How will the consul retain the citizens in *their* duty?

* Say: "The soldiers, if they were frightening the girls, were worthy of punishment." In a Latin complex sentence the dependent clause is often placed between the subject of the principal sentence and its verb; and if the subject of the clause is the same as that of the principal sentence, it is not expressed, but is understood from the principal sentence. Compare the first sentence in the Latin above (43, A. 1).

EXERCISE 45.

A.—1. Ego, si pater essem, filiis bonum exemplum praeberem. 2. Pompeius, si dimicet, praedones superet. 3. Utinam hodie valeremus! 4. Si taceatis, rei publicae noceatis. 5. Dux rogavit num nostri impetum Gallorum sustinerent. 6. Utinam Cicero cives in officio retineat! 7. Legati, si exercitum in castris continerent, consuli non parerent. 8. Si pallerem, cives me ignavum putarent. 9. Cives rogaverunt, poetae, cur numquam taceretis. 10. Si corpus cottidie exerceamus, valeamus.

B.—1. If I were well, I should be fighting in the Roman line to-day. 2. If the men-of-war were to hold on *their* course, Pompeius would overcome the pirates. 3. Would that Catilina were not injuring the state! 4. Captives, if you were not foolish, you would be silent. 5. The mother asked why the girl was blushing. 6. *Your* parents would blame you (pl.) if you were to set a bad example to your brothers. 7. If the lieutenants were expecting a rising, they would not be keeping their *men* in winter quarters. 8. Soldiers, let us obey Caesar's commands. 9. The queen asks where the dead bodies of the leaders are lying. 10. Our men ought not to have robbed the dead bodies of the enemy.

EXERCISE 46.

A.—1. Utinam patres filios litteras docerent! 2. Si corpus exercuissem, non aegrotarem. 3. Utinam dux milites in hibernis continuisset! 4. Caesar rogabit num iussis parueris. 5. Si cladem statim nuntiavissemus, milites stupeficerent. 6. Utinam gubernator cursum tenuisset! 7. Utinam tanta praemia meruissemus! 8. Omnes rogant ubi sicarii latuerint. 9. Utinam, poeta, numquam litteris studuisses! 10. Nostri impetum sustinuissent, nisi clamores hostium iumenta perterruissent.

B.—1. If this man had devoted himself to literature, he would have been a very famous poet. 2. If our men had sustained the enemy's charge, the Gauls would not have besieged the camp. 3. Would that I had not displeased my wise father! 4. Would that you (pl.) were not setting a bad example to the citizens! 5. If we had needed money, we should have taught the citizens' sons Latin. 6. If the spies had been silent, our men would have been safe and sound to-day. 7. If you had not blushed, I should have thought you innocent. 8. Soldiers, the general is asking whether you deserved rewards. 9. If we had abstained from acts of violence, we should not have injured the state. 10. The consuls asked if the lieutenant had kept the soldiers in allegiance.

EXERCISE 47.

A.—1. Regina sperat filios suos praemia merituos esse. 2. Militibus notum erat cadaver ducis in ripa laeva fluminis iacere. 3. Omnibus amore monendi displicetis. 4. Dux sperat se hostes perterriturum. 5. Coercendo linguam molestias saepe vitabis. 6. Fama est anguem nigram duci apparuisse. 7. Caesar negavit suos frumento egere. 8. Consul in foro erat orationem habendi causa. 9. Magister negat se poctam litteras docuisse. 10. Oratores dictitant Gracciam omnibus artibus florere.

B.—1. All must grieve sometimes. 2. The master devoted himself to the art of teaching. 3. The leader announced to the senate that our men had not sustained the charge of the cavalry. 4. The consul denied that he would hold a levy. 5. The desire of having is baneful. 6. The hostages announce that such great calamities have thrown the enemy into a panic. 7. Boys must be silent. 8. We shall give splendid gifts to those who deserve *them*. 9. Were not the spies hiding on the bank of the river? 10. I shall walk in the woods for the sake of exercising *my* body.

EXERCISE 48.

A.—1. Intelleximus te in urbe Lutetia esse. 2. Legatos ad Caesarem Athenas mittemus. 3. Ariovistus suos trans flumen Rhenum ducebat. 4. Multi numquam bene scribunt. 5. Bellum in Germanos gerimus. 6. Duces dicebant milites laude dignos esse. 7. Rex fretum ponte iunxit. 8. Nos et fortunas civitatis fidei Caesaris permittimus. 9. Princeps ab urbe Cathagine domum discedebat. 10. Multi fortes ante te vixerunt.

B.—1. I was writing a letter to you yesterday. 2. We shall send hostages to the king in the camp. 3. The general understood that the spies' words were false. 4. *There* are many very wise men in the city of Corinth. 5. I shall send messengers to my father at Paris. 6. The ambassadors were saying that they were in need of lands. 7. Caesar was bridging (*say* was joining with a bridge) the river Rhine. 8. Do you not say that our men have sustained the enemy's charge? 9. Tell me, boys, why you do not obey *your* father. 10. Hostages, you will depart home to-morrow.

EXERCISE 49.

A.—1. Feminis et liberis parcite. 2. Ab Italia ad te scribam. 3. Nonne greges ad montes agitis, pastores? 4. Numquam pueris mendacibus credimus. 5. In ripis fluminis Rheni constitimus. 6. Roma in Galliam contendit. 7. Praedones magnam partem

praedae in paludibus reliquerant. 8. Nostri in castra hostium irrumpebant. 9. Vincemus, si copias trans Rhenum duxerimus. 10. Orator domum ab urbe Athenis contendebat.

B.—1. The consuls were hastening from Rome to Carthage. 2. We had halted on the hills. 3. Our men drove the enemy headlong. 4. The cavalry will gradually retire from the battle. 5. Caesar, we did not believe the spies. 6. The leaders send messengers from the camp to the city. 7. Soldiers, leave the baggage and fight. 8. The enemy were breaking into our camp. 9. I shall depart from Italy to-morrow. 10. We fell upon the enemy in the woods.

EXERCISE 50.

A.—1. Dux militibus imperavit ut e portis castrorum erumperent. 2. Utinam nostri vicissent! 3. Dux principes monebit ne Germanos trans Rhenum ducant. 4. Dicite mihi, milites, cur e castris eruperitis. 5. Vos monemus, pueri, ne tanta pericula contemnatis. 6. Utinam mihi crederes! 7. Servis pecuniam donabo ut vinum emant. 8. Si epistolam legissem, Athenas ex Italia contendissem. 9. Iussis meis parete, milites, ut hostes vincatis. 10. Dux suis imperavit ut inermibus parcerent.

B.—1. The senate ordered the consuls to wage war against the Germans. 2. Caesar is holding a levy in order to send an army into Switzerland. 3. Beware lest the spies invent false tidings. 4. Would that the storms had not dashed the ships of war on the shore! 5. Cicero asks why we believed the slave. 6. I ordered my son to send a letter to Caesar at Marseilles. 7. If we had led our men across the river, we should have conquered the enemy. 8. I begged Catilina not to hasten to Rome. 9. The spies advise us not to bridge the river. 10. The Gauls prepared forces in order to drive us out of Gaul.

EXERCISE 51.

A.—1. Castra muro et turribus dextra laevaue munient. 2. Caesar ex captivis comperit magnas copias hostium convenisse. 3. Omnes sciunt reginam cras Romam venturam esse. 4. Parentes filios puniunt ut mores emendent. 5. Cupido dormiendi milites superavit. 6. Clamores magni exercitus audiveramus. 7. Captivos vinximus, milites, ne portas castrorum clauderent. 8. Nostri totis castris custodiebant. 9. Scitis Gallos Massiliam, urbem opulentissimam, terra marique munire. 10. Castra munientibus ardor solis molestus est.

B.—1. The exiles had come from the flourishing city of Marseilles. 2. We found a suitable place in order to pitch a camp. 3. We know that the Gauls are fortifying the towns by land and sea. 4. Cicero's speech was pleasing to those who heard. 5. Tomorrow we shall come to the renowned city of Athens. 6. The Gauls denied that they had come to an understanding with the enemies of the Roman people. 7. They buried the dead body of the leader in the middle of the wood. 8. We opened the gates of the camp that our men might not fight a pitched battle in an unfavourable place. 9. Bind the captives, soldiers; bury the dead bodies. 10. Boy, have you slept all night (*say the whole night*)?

EXERCISE 52.

A.—1. Tam perfidi sunt principes Gallorum ut cum hostibus suorum consenserint. 2. Adeo stulti erant milites ut portas castrorum aperuissent. 3. Tantus fuit pavor militum ut legatos catenis vincirent. 4. Caesar Massiliam advenit ut proditores puniat. 5. Nolite cadavera hostium sepelire. 6. Milites tam fessi erant ut in stationibus dormirent. 7. Utinam vera ex exploratoribus comperisses! 8. Caesaris oratio tam diserta fuit ut animos militum molliret. 9. Tantus pavor tota urbe est ut cives portas aperiant. 10. Accidit ut Cicero verba proditorum audivisset.

B.—1. The ambassadors were so eloquent that they mitigated the anger of the multitude. 2. The soldiers are so tired that they have slept all day. 3. The attack of the cavalry was so sudden that our men had not yet fortified the camp. 4. It happens that we have got the start of the enemy by a shorter way. 5. The leader had halted in order to bury the dead bodies. 6. Would that you had arrived yesterday, my friends! 7. So great was the uproar that the soldiers did not hear the leader's voice. 8. I have come to Rome to find a friend. 9. So great was the panic at Athens that no one slept. 10. Would that my father had punished me *when I was a boy*!

EXERCISE 53.

A.—1. Effecimus ut nemo fugere cuperet. 2. Quid cupitis? Cupimus proditorem interficere. 3. Senatus Caesarem legionibus praeficiet. 4. Pavor tam repentinus erat ut nostri ad unum fugerent. 5. Milites arma corripiebant et ad portas currebant.

6. Nostri tela in fugientes iaciebant. 7. Vix fuga salutem nobis pariemus. 8. Caesar legatos rogabit num pacem cupiant. 9. Hostes incolas oppidi interficiebant nec inermibus parcebant. 10. Caesar conventum Massiliae egit ut consilium de motu Gallorum caperet.

B.—1. Caesar had set lieutenants over the legions. 2. The enemy, shaking their shields and throwing javelins, were falling upon our men. 3. Our men immediately snatch up arms. 4. We shall do everything (*say* all things) to satisfy you. 5. We were killing the captives lest they should flee. 6. The queen besought the gods that she might bring forth a son. 7. Bind (*pl.*) the slaves lest they kill *their* lord. 8. Soldiers, I command you to snatch up your arms. 9. Caesar was taking council concerning the safety of the state. 10. We know that Catilina desires riches before all *things*.

EXERCISE 54.

A.—1. Utrum a rege an a regina culpabare? 2. Utrum consilio an casu mundus creatus est? 3. Utrum minis an praemiis superbamini, consules? 4. Utrum factis an verbis delectaris, regina? 5. Utrum gladio an sagitta vulneratus es, imperator? 6. Utrum ab hostibus an a nostris agri agricolarum vastabantur? 7. Utrum aestate an hieme vita rustica delectamur? 8. Utrum terra an mari urbs oppugnabitur? 9. Utrum Romae an Massiliae consules exspectantur? 10. Utrum retibus an sagittis apri superati sunt?

B.—1. Had true or false *tidings* been brought by the spies? 2. Shall we be loved by friends or by enemies? 3. Soldiers, will the fame of the Roman legions be extended by valour or by cowardice? 4. Had cavalry or infantry been got together by the consul? 5. Was the flourishing city of Marseilles built by Greeks or by Romans? 6. Boys, are you being educated at Athens or at Rome? 7. Slaves, were you being overcome by soldiers or by sailors? 8. Will the Gallic war be carried on by Caesar or by the consuls? 9. Shall we be assaulted by the friends or by the enemies of the Roman people? 10. Had the camp been strengthened by a wall or by an earthwork?

EXERCISE 55.

A.—1. Rogamus utrum factis an verbis regina delectetur. 2. Dubito, consules, utrum minis an praemiis superati sitis. 3. Non dubitabamus quin Romani superaturi essent. 4. Cicero rogat

utrum consilio an casu mundus factus sit. 5. Non dubitamus quin omnia a deis creata sint. 6. Roga utrum Romae an Massiliae consules expectentur. 7. Dubium erat utrum retibus an sagittis apri superati essent. 8. Non dubium erat quin castra fossa firmarentur. 9. Agricolaе rogant utrum a nostris an a Gallis agri vastentur. 10. Nemo est quin aestate vita rustica delectetur.

B.—1. It was doubtful whether true or false *tidings* had been brought by the spies. 2. Tell me, boys, whether you are being educated at Athens or at Rome. 3. Poet, Cicero is asking whether you were educated at Marseilles or at Carthage. 4. There was no doubt but that the walls were being shattered by the battering-ram. 5. Catilina, I ask whether you are loved by the friends or by the enemies of the Roman people. 6. We asked whether kings or consuls had been elected (*creo*) at Rome. 7. *There* was no one who was not dismayed by so great a disaster. 8. No one knew whether we had been overcome by force or by guile. 9. Caesar asked whether the war was being managed by himself or by his *men*. 10. There was no doubt but that the merchant-vessels had been fastened at (*ad*) anchor.

EXERCISE 56.

A.—1. Ariovistus magnis copiis comparatis suos trans flumen Rhenum duxit. 2. Speramus urbem mox expugnatum iri. 3. Donis splendidis a regina honorabere, poeta. 4. Muro ariete quassato nostri in urbem irruerunt. 5. Caesar Germanis superatis in Galliam contendit. 6. Nostri arce expugnata urbem ceperunt. 7. Exploratoribus in silvis collocatis numerum hostium comperiemus. 8. Obsides negaverunt suos clade perturbari. 9. Vastatis Gallorum agris Caesar copias in Italiam reduxit. 10. Legatis convocatis Caesar consilia aperuit.

B.—1. The ships having been fastened at anchor, Caesar landed his *men*. 2. The body of the general having been burned, the lieutenant delivered a short speech in the presence of the soldiers. 3. A council having been summoned, Caesar narrates the disaster to his men. 4. You believe, do you not, that the world was created by the gods? 5. They shall (use imperative) be praised by the good *and* blamed by the bad. 6. This opinion having been approved by all, the general made it known that the citadel would be besieged. 7. The men-of-war having been shattered by the storm, our men are vainly awaiting reinforcements. 8. The city having been

stormed, our men slew the citizens. 9. Having cheered the minds of the soldiers, Caesar hastens against the enemy. 10. The disaster having been announced, panic seized our *men*.

EXERCISE 57.

A.—1. Animi civium verbis gratis confirmandi sunt. 2. Duces pronuntiaverunt praedam pugnantis reservandam esse. 3. Habetis, milites, occasionem pristinae famae recipiendae. 4. Virtutem ante omnia cupiendam esse putamus. 5. Caesar nuntios Romam misit ad cladem nuntiandam. 6. Dux suos confirmavit spe belli redintegrandi. 7. In litore cottidie ambulo causa valetudinis conservandae. 8. Principes sollicitandis et perturbandis Gallorum animis motum universum comparabant. 9. Omnes dicunt Pompeium in Italiam contendisse causa classis comparandae. 10. Putamus fortunam belli hodie non iterum tentandam esse.

B.—1. Soldiers, the citadel must be stormed to-day. 2. Ariovistus was instigating his *subjects* to (*ad*) reject the rule of the Roman people. 3. He said he had a plan for (*say of*) liberating the state. 4. He hastens into Gaul for the sake of summoning a council. 5. In the Gallic war the valour of the soldiers was greatly to be praised. 6. The Carthaginians entrusted to Hannibal the chief responsibility of carrying on the war. 7. The spies hid in the woods for the sake of numbering the enemy. 8. Our men greatly injured the enemy by laying waste *their* fields. 9. The words of the lieutenant were adapted to (*ad*) cheer the soldiers' minds. 10. Let us send a ship to Carthage to (*ad*) bring back Hannibal.

EXERCISE 58.

A.—1. Cum auxilia ad castra pervenerint, nostri magno clamore in hostes irrumpent. 2. Nuntii dicunt naves in portu tempestate retentas esse. 3. Cum dux cladem nuntiaverit, milites perterrebuntur. 4. Crassi auctoritas divitiis magnis augebatur. 5. Cives obsessa urbe pacem oraverunt. 6. Caesar pronuntiavit praedam deletum iri. 7. Cum comitia habita erunt, Caesar in Galliam contendet. 8. Magister multa dixit causa pueri monendi. 9. Insula mari undique continetur. 10. A stultis sapientes habemini.

B.—1. When he dies he will be praised by all. 2. They say the earth moves (*pass.*) round the sun. 3. My sons shall be taught (*imperative*) by the wisest masters. 4. The elections having been held, Caesar departed from Rome. 5. When the city is stormed, it will be destroyed. 6. I used to swim in the sea daily for the

sake of exercising my body. 7. When he is at Rome, he is taught by Cicero. 8. We know that the minds of all will be stirred by the words of the ambassadors. 9. All the hills were being held by the enemy. 10. When you have beheld the dead body of the leader, you will be deeply moved.

EXERCISE 59.

A.—1. Cum eloquentiam doceremur, orationem cottidie apud magistrum habebamus. 2. Milites rogaverunt cur praeda deleta esset. 3. Utinam ab amicis amemur, ab hostibus timeamur! 4. Cum milites coerciti et in officio contenti essent, Caesar Romam discessit. 5. Utinam linguam Latinam doctus esses! 6. Rogemus, commilitones, cur in castris a duce ignavo retineamur. 7. Cum ab omnibus timerer, infelicissimus hominum eram. 8. Si sapiens esses, iram cohiberes. 9. Hostes impetum repentinum facient, ut perterreamini. 10. Cum oppidum terra marique obsideretur, cives Caesarem auxilium oraverunt.

B.—1. When the city had been destroyed, the general distributed the booty among his *men*. 2. Tell me, leaders, whether you are loved or feared. 3. When the elections had been held, the consuls sent reinforcements to Caesar. 4. I sent my sons to Rome to be taught eloquence by Cicero. 5. The soldiers ask why the merchant-vessels are kept in harbour. 6. When the enemy had been thrown into a panic, our men charged. 7. If the ships had not been kept in the harbour, we should have overcome the pirates. 8. As soon as the enemy had been put to flight, the general called his men back. 9. He gave orders to the soldiers that the camp should be moved. 10. Would that you might be advised to obey your father!

EXERCISE 60

A.—1. Urbes a Gallis incendebantur, ne a nostris oppugnarentur. 2. Catilina intellexit se ab omnibus deseri. 3. Non opus est verbis: tibi nec creditur nec credendum est. 4. Hodie victi sumus; cras vincemus. 5. Tibi ab omnibus fautum est, quia ab omnibus diligeris. 6. Legati ad Caesarem mittuntur, quod militibus frumento opus est. 7. Naves subducuntur, quod hiems appropinquat. 8. Caesar obsidibus adductis suos trans flumen reduxit. 9. Dux pronuntiavit praedam omnem incensum iri. 10. Exploratoribus creditum est, quod falsa numquam nuntiaverant.

B.—1. The ships having been beached, the camp is pitched on the shore. 2. The leader led back his *men* into Italy, because a

great part of the summer had been spent. 3. You (pl.) are esteemed by many, but you are envied by Catilina. 4. Our men will be conquered, since the line of battle is being drawn up in an unfavourable place. They say that the river Rhine will be bridged by Caesar. 6. Cavalry, you will be left in Gaul, because there is need of a garrison. 7. The gates are being shut because the enemy are approaching. 8. They say that the camp has been pitched on a hill. 9. We were being driven out of Gaul because reinforcements had not arrived. 10. The corn having been consumed, our men are in need of supplies.

EXERCISE 61.

A.—1. Cum magna pars aestatis in bello gerendo consumpta esset, Galli pacem orabant. 2. Caesar intellexit cur talia dicerentur. 3. Naves, cum subductae essent, tempestate non quassatae sunt. 4. Exploratores dixerunt se falsa nuntiavisse quod numquam sibi crederetur. 5. Vincite, milites, ne vincamini. 6. Nostri dixerunt se victos esse quod acies loco iniquo instructa esset. 7. Cum vici undique incenderentur, intelleximus hostes agros suos vastare. 8. Caesar imperavit ut naves longae postero die deducerentur. 9. Captivos laudavi quod amicos non tradidissent. 10. Utinam a bono rege regeremur!

B.—1. As the Roman legions have been disbanded, you have an opportunity, Gauls, of recovering *your* liberty. 2. We destroyed the bridge in order that the leader might be cut off from the army. 3. As the towns were being burned on all sides by the enemy, our men were in need of provisions. 4. O that we may always be esteemed by the citizens! 5. Tell me, citizens, why you believed the traitors. 6. There is no doubt that the towns are being burned by the Gauls. 7. When a great part of the day had now been spent, the general led back his forces into the camp. 8. Caesar asked whether the hostages had been brought. 9. He ordered that the hostages should be led into Italy. 10. There is no doubt that you are being deserted by all.

EXERCISE 62.

A.—1. Artibus liberalibus, Marce, Athenis erudiere. 2. Etsi artibus liberalibus eruditus es, mores tui non emolliti sunt. 3. Quamquam insontes sumus, in carcere custodimur. 4. Cives speraverunt legatos non auditum iri. 5. Quamquam portae apertae erant, nemo ex urbe excessit. 6. Etsi scelera multa admisimus, a iudicibus iniustis non puniemur. 7. Castra fossa

et vallo munientur. 8. Hostes intellexerunt castra a nostris egregie munita esse. 9. Custodiemini, sicarii; opus est testibus. 10. Loco idoneo reperto castra posita sunt.

B.—1. Although the citadel had been admirably fortified, nevertheless it will be stormed by Caesar. 2. On hearing their leader's words (§ 212, *Obs.*), our men shouted. 3. The captives escaped, although they had been bound and were being guarded by soldiers. 4. They say that the character is refined by the liberal arts. 5. The dead body of the traitor was never found. 6. Although we are not heard by you to-day, we shall nevertheless be heard to-morrow. 7. Leaders, send reinforcements to us for the sake of guarding the citadel. 8. The boys were being punished, although they said that they were innocent. 9. Having disclosed his plan (§ 212), Caesar gave orders that all should quit the camp. 10. I believe that the camp will be fortified to-morrow.

EXERCISE 63.

A.—1. Quamvis erraverit, fratris sui minas non timet. 2. Puer, quamvis saepissime peccavisset, rogavit cur puniretur. 3. Num rogas, puer, cur puniari? 4. Si filius meus esses, saepius punitus esses. 5. Cum milites fessi sint, dux imperat ut castra muniantur. 6. Etsi vita nostra omnino morte finiatur, tamen bene vivamus. 7. Quamvis a iudicibus iniustis non puniti sitis, tamen aliquando puniimini. 8. Regina inperavit, puellae, ut vestibus albis vestiremini. 9. Barbari cadaver ducis abriperunt, ne sepeliretur. 10. Utinam obsidibus nostris a rege parcatur!

B.—1. If the ship holds on her course, we shall come safe into harbour to-morrow. 2. Ambassadors, Caesar commands you to depart. 3. Even if you had been innocent, you would have been punished. 4. May *our* life not be wholly ended by death! 5. Although the king had ordered the dead bodies to be buried, nevertheless they were burnt. 6. Tell me, consuls, why the elections have not yet been held. 7. Even if you had devoted yourself to the liberal arts, your character would not have been refined. 8. If the boys had been punished oftener, they would be wiser. 9. Although the camp has not been fortified, it will not be stormed by a cowardly leader. 10. The Britons are so uncivilised that they are clothed with skins.

EXERCISE 64.

A.—1. Cum incendia undique conspicerentur, timebamus ne hostes agros nostros vastarent. 2. Timemus ut bellum mox conficiatur. 3. Obsides timebant ne tela in castra iacerentur. 4. Cives

capta urbe ad unum interfecti sunt. 5. Vates dixerat urbem postero die captum iri. 6. Nonne timebas ne civium bona diriperentur? 7. Timebamus, legati, ut incolumes perveniretis. 8. Caesar consilium urbis capiendae aperuit. 9. Pater tuus timet ne sapientia deficiaris. 10. Cives timent ne a duce hostium interficiantur.

B.—1. Caesar having been slain by the traitors, we have need of a leader. 2. We fear that the enemy's camp will not be pillaged by our men. 3. We feared that we should be killed by the assassins. 4. Riches are desired by all. 5. Caesar commanded that the men-of-war should be repaired. 6. He feared lest we should be seriously affected by the leader's words. 7. Do you fear, leaders, that we are lacking in valour? 8. They say the infantry have been slain to a man. 9. I fear that women will always be lacking in judgment and reason. 10. There is no doubt that our camp was pillaged by the enemy.

EXERCISE 65.

A.—1. Milites cohortare, Caesar, ut virtutem pristinam retineant. 2. Dux, haec ita eventura esse suspicatus, omnia antea comparaverat. 3. Tu vereris ne puer haec conetur, ego vereor ut conetur. 4. Femina gavisus est quod filius haec facere ausus erat. 5. Rex pollicetur se in itinere non commoraturum esse. 6. Verebar ne illis pecuniam pollicerere. 7. Dux nos cohortabatur ne pabulandi causa longius vagaremur. 8. Nonne tu haec conari ausus es quae ego saepissime feci? 9. Tibi pecuniam magnam pollicitus te vera nuntiaturum arbitratus sum. 10. Hic casus dextram eius gladium educere conantis moratus est.

B.—1. The leader was promising money to the soldiers. 2. Our men did not dare to quit the standards. 3. Caesar led his men across the river for the sake of foraging. 4. Spies, reconnoitre the enemy's camp. 5. He left Crassus in Gaul to defend the harbours. 6. The Britons promise to surrender the town to him. 7. Fearing lest through their initiative the whole state should fall away, he bade the legions winter there. 8. The Gauls, thinking that Caesar had departed, promised that they would attack the Roman camp. 9. A few, who had escaped from the battle, were attempting to reach the camp by uncertain routes. 10. Will you not admit, citizens, that you owe all *things* to him?

EXERCISE 66.

A.—1. Pedites se sequi iussit. 2. Rogo, puer, cur donis decorum abutaris. 3. Dux verebatur ne sui Gallos longius insequerentur. 4. Haec regi dicite, filii mei, ne irascatur. 5. Galli, Caesarem in

Italiam profectum esse arbitrati, liberatam recipere conantur. 6. Suspicio, exploratores, vos ducem vestrum prodere. 7. Non dubium erat quin nostri Gallos longius persecuti essent. 8. Pater me monuit ut pecunia bene utar. 9. Dicite nobis, equites, cur hostes fugatos non persecuti sitis. 10. Num officio functus es quo te functurum esse pollicitus es?

B.—1. Why do you use Greek characters? 2. The Britons fed on milk and flesh. 3. Having discharged this duty, we shall enjoy ease. 4. Certain men, having escaped from the battle, reached the camp on the same day. 5. Caesar will set out to-morrow with a light-armed legion into the enemy's territories. 6. We did not dare to pursue the Gauls further. 7. Let us use the gifts of the gods well. 8. The leader sent certain men to the enemy for the sake of parleying. 9. When he had said this (*say* these things), he set out for Rome. 10. When he had put the enemy to flight, our men burnt the neighbouring towns.

EXERCISE 67.

A.—1. Romae natus est, Carthagini mortuus est. 2. Vereor ne hostes equitibus nostris fugatis castra adorianentur. 3. Nonne omnibus aliquando moriendum est? nonne pro patria moriturus sum? 4. Commilitones, ibi opprimini ut Britannos adorianentur. 5. Spero hostes castris non potituros. 6. Mater non patietur filiam e complexu suo eripi. 7. Milites veriti sunt ne dux fortunam belli iterum eodem die experiretur. 8. Bellum quod in Gallia ortum est a Caesare administrabitur. 9. Rex, cum se moriturum esse intellexisset, omnia sua inter filios partitus est. 10. Cur tam exiguum manum adoriri non audemus?

B.—1. The brave die once, the cowardly very often. 2. Will not Caesar try the fortune of war a second time? 3. There is no doubt that the queen is dead. 4. Comrades, let us not advance further, let us wait here. 5. Would that the enemy had not gained possession of the standards! 6. We shall die for *our* native land. 7. The leader was angry because his men were advancing too far. 8. Will you (pl.) suffer the enemy to set foot in *your* camp? 9. The lieutenants were daily measuring out corn to the soldiers, fearing it would fail altogether. 10. Caesar orders the lieutenants to collect all *their* forces (use abl. abs.) *and* attack the camp unexpectedly.

EXERCISE 68.

A.—1. Nonne saltare potestis, puellae? Possumus. 2. Impetum hostium sustinere non poteramus. 3. Verba ducis prae clamoribus

militum audire non potuimus. 4. Epistolam, si potero, cras ad te mittam. 5. Exploratores negaverunt se castra hostium speculari potuisse. 6. Nostri retineri non potuerunt quin pontem dirimerent. 7. Dux rogat num sui signa recipere potuerint. 8. Nihil obstat quin naves cras deducantur. 9. Spero me duci persuasurum ut civibus parcat. 10. Dubitari non potest quin dei animos hominum flectere possint.

B.—1. Will you be able to accompany me to-morrow? I shall. 2. Were you able to persuade the boy to learn these verses by heart? I was not. 3. We cannot give you what you ask. 4. I was not able to understand many *things* which I learned by heart as a boy. 5. The lieutenant wrote to Caesar that he could not without great danger lead the legion out of winter quarters. 6. The soldiers could not be restrained from charging the enemy. 7. What prevents our being able to set out to-morrow? 8. We should have done this if we had been able. 9. I have no doubt that Caesar can bridge the river. 10. What hindered you from being able to send me a letter?

EXERCISE 69.

A.—1. Vos afuistis, nos autem affuimus. 2. Si poterimus, patriae proderimus. 3. Dicunt Catilinam illo die vel consilio vel casu afuisse. 4. Opperiemur dum custodes discedant. 5. Dum adsumus, non audet loqui. 6. Utinam heri in senatu affuisses! 7. Sapiens omnibus vel amicis vel hostibus prodesse debet. 8. Dicite mihi, milites, utrum Crassus an Labienus legioni praesit. 9. Multis rebus interfui quibus deesse non potui. 10. Caesar, dum naves exspectat, aedificia quae supererant diremit.

B.—1. I have always benefited the state, but you have injured it. 2. Were you present or absent, Catilina? 3. As long as he lives, he will never do good to the state. 4. So many ships had been sent to Britain that few were left in the harbour. 5. I hope Labienus will be at the head of the legion. 6. As long as Caesar is present in Gaul, the states will not dare to fall away. 7. The Gauls were begging for peace on the ground that a very small part of the summer was left. 8. I shall do nothing until you are present. 9. But we are in the midst of so many dangers that nothing can benefit either you or me. 10. Unless Caesar himself had been at the head of the legions, no one of us would have been living to-day.

EXERCISE 70.

A.—1. Postquam istam epistolam accepi, domum statim proficisci quam Romae manere malui. 2. Si regredi vis, statim discede. 3. Nemo est quin rei publicae obesse nolit. 4. Vultisne, pueri, carmina huius poetae ediscere? Nolumus. 5. Nolite, cives, vobis magis quam rei publicae consulere. 6. Postquam intellexi eum proficisci nolle, rogavi cur domi manere mallet. 7. Postquam exploratores haec nuntiaverunt, ducem rogavimus num in castra hostium nocturnum impetum facere vellet. 8. Utinam Caesar voluisset me legionibus praeficere! 9. Postquam intellexit se mortiferum vulnus accepisse, dixit se mori malle quam vivere. 10. Utinam, cives, semper nolitis rei publicae obesse!

B.—1. Tell us, boys, what you prefer to do. 2. On perceiving this, he was unwilling to advance further. 3. We wish to do all that we can. 4. He prefers to consult his own interest rather than that of the state. 5. Would that Catilina had preferred to benefit his country! 6. After Caesar had gone away, the soldiers were unwilling to winter in Gaul. 7. Do not attack the enemy's towns while Caesar is absent. 8. The leader asked whether the soldiers were willing to follow him. 9. They answered that they were willing and had always been willing. 10. Who doubts that we are willing and have always been willing to follow you?

EXERCISE 71.

A.—1. Peditibus auxilium afferte, equites. 2. Bellum populo Romano sine causa intulistis. 3. Naves onerariae longius aestu delata erant. 4. Legati se ad suos haec relatores esse dixerunt. 5. Rogemus cur Gallis bellum intulerint. 6. Barbari ante pedem rettulerunt quam nostri impetum facerent. 7. Signa conferte, pedem referre nolite. 8. Ferunt Caesarem frumentum ex agris contulisse. 9. Non prius bellum inferemus quam haec ad hostes deferantur. 10. Tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut naves eodem unde erant profectae referrentur.

B.—1. Why do you put off *your* journey? 2. Every one is asking why you are putting off *your* journey. 3. The master took those books of yours away because (as he thought) they were harmful to boys. 4. I bade the slave take away the things he had brought. 5. Let water be brought for extinguishing the fire (*ad* with gerundive construction). 6. Caesar will make war upon the Gauls before the Germans can bring aid. 7. Having weighed anchor (*abl. abs.*), he set sail. 8. Caesar ordered his lieutenants to bring him aid. 9.

Caesar briefly harangued his men before he ordered the standards to be borne against the enemy. 10. Hostilities must not be begun before these things can be reported to the senate.

EXERCISE 72.

A.—1. Quid faciamus? Hostes coeunt, nostri pereunt. 2. Utinam legati redeant! Utinam ne abiissent! 3. Utrum casu an consilio haec fiunt? 4. Poeta Romam ibat filium visum. 5. Abeamus ne peiora fiant. 6. Omnia parata sunt ad flumen transeundum. 7. Dic nobis quae Romae hodie fiant. 8. Athenas ivissem, nisi consul factus essem. 9. Redite, legati, eo unde profecti estis. 10. Nonne scis te eo abiturum unde nemo umquam rediit?

B.—1. What were we to do? Whither were we to go? 2. The boy has gone out to play. When will he return? 3. Will Catilina become consul? I hope he will never become consul. 4. Caesar is reported to have crossed the river Rhine with large forces. 5. He said he would not go away before the ambassadors returned. 6. Who will go to ask Caesar for pardon? 7. I will show you what I am willing to do. 8. You will cross the river, my sons, when you return home. 9. If you had returned earlier, you would have become consul. 10. My sons had gone to Rome in order to become Cicero's pupils.

EXERCISE 73.

A.—1. Stultum iuvat de se loqui. 2. Oportet omnes tempore bene uti. 3. Avaritiae tuae patrem tuum taeduit. 4. Oportuit te cum hostium duce colloqui. 5. Nonne reginae, mulieris miserrimae, te miseret? 6. Quid dicam ut te stultitiae tuae vel pudeat vel poeniteat? 7. Accidit ut illo die in senatu adessem. 8. Licet stulto semper loqui, sapientem autem oportet cogitare quae sibi sint dicenda. 9. Utinam mihi contigisset filium sapientem habere! 10. Legati rogaverunt num sibi discedere liceret.

B.—1. Is it not your good luck to have many friends? 2. You ought to have consulted the interest of the state rather than that of your friends. 3. You will be permitted to do such *things*, but a Roman citizen will not. 4. Your father is disgusted at your crimes. 5. If it rains to-morrow, I shall remain at home. 6. Why do you ask if it is seemly for women to fight in line of battle? 7. He said he pitied the captives. 8. It is thundering to-day, yesterday it was snowing. 9. May you some day be ashamed of such pursuits! 10. I fear I shall not be allowed to go away from Rome.

EXERCISE 74.

A.—1. Nostra interest hanc navem cras deduci. 2. Militum maximi interest ducem peritum esse. 3. Quid mea refert utrum me ames an oderis? 4. Catilinae magni intererat ut Cicero interficeretur. 5. Nostra parvi refert te haec meminisse. 6. Num tua interest quot naves comparatae sint? 7. Mea, inquit, maximi refert Ciceronem fieri consulem. 8. Quid nostra plurimi referat nobis solum notum est. 9. Caesaris maximi interest ut facultas pugnandi hostibus detur. 10. Dixit bellum producere hostium maximi interesse.

B.—1. It is of very little consequence to me that all will hate me. 2. Was it not of importance to you to remember this? 3. We think it of the greatest importance to sailors to know *how* to swim. 4. It is of more consequence to everybody (*omnes*) to *blame* their own vices than to blame *those* of others. 5. What is of more importance to us than so to live that we can die without fear? 6. "It is of the greatest consequence," said he, "both to you and to the state that these things should happen (*say* be done) thus." 7. Do not remember how important it is to you that these things should happen thus: remember only of how much consequence it is to the state. 8. Of what consequence is it to a wise man whether death is the end or the beginning of all things? 9. Doctors say that it is not to their interest that their friends should always be well. 10. Was it of more consequence to me or to Caesar that the Gallic war should be protracted?

EXERCISE 75.

A.—1. Hic longe nobilissimus et ditissimus omnium Gallorum est. 2. Ne pessimi quidem hominum omnino mali sunt. 3. Vix credibile est te hac sententia stare malle. 4. Legati contra dixerunt se frustra conatos esse de his rebus certiores fieri. 5. Unde venisti? Inde veni unde tu nuper regressus es. 6. Tum repente conclamatum est, et strepitus quasi magnae multitudinis auditus est. 7. Nusquam tam difficulter agri coluntur. 8. Me iuvabit laboribus parumper vacare. 9. Omnia quibus ad proximum diem opus est noctu comparentur. 10. Tu id non modo non prohibebas, verum etiam approbas.

B.—1. Then at length our men, thrown into panic by the novel kind of fighting, turned their backs. 2. I acknowledge those things to be true, but these are not to be believed. 3. The enemy, having delayed a little while, charged our men a second time. 4. Not even

Caesar will persist *in* this plan, when he had been informed about these things. 5. When the din was heard, the cavalry, who were not far distant, hastened thither. 6. Not even savages would have done such things on purpose. 7. There was severe fighting on both sides. 8. I fear that the matter will turn out badly. 9. There was running hither and thither. 10. I will now say openly what I have thought secretly.

EXERCISE 76.

A.—1. Saepius tibi indulgisti. 2. Patrem tuum Carthagini nuperrime vidi. 3. Scelerum multorum saepissime accusatus numquam condemnatus est. 4. Cave ne amici tui hoc postea aegerime ferant. 5. Num diutius manere nos oportet? 6. Magis factis quam verbis delector. 7. Caesar rogavit quis apud Germanos plurimum auctoritatis haberet. 8. Quid morte minus timendum est fortibus? 9. Me avaritiae arguunt: minime qualis homo sim sciunt. 10. De his rebus copiosissime, de illis brevissime, de omnibus optime locutus est.

B.—1. The fight was very fierce and very long. 2. I am greatly delighted that (*say* because) that friend of yours has been condemned for bribery. 3. Caesar ordered his *men* not to remain longer in the camp. 4. Cicero has said all these things excellently. 5. This man had the greatest influence among (*apud*) the Gauls. 6. Have you forgotten those *things* which you promised very recently? 7. No one can always indulge himself with impunity. 8. You dance better than your brother. 9. I go to Rome more frequently than to Athens. 10. The wolf bit the hunter very fiercely.

EXERCISE 77.

A.—1. Decem milia peditum et mille equites in Gallia conscripsit. 2. Milites tertiae decimae legionis fossam quingentos quadraginta pedes longam perduxerunt. 3. Emi hodie libros tres, primum magno, secundum pluris, tertium minoris. 4. Legionem quartam decimam praesidio impedimentis reliquit. 5. Aggerem pedes trecentos triginta longum, pedes octoginta altum exstruxit. 6. Cum iam triginta milia passum ab urbe abesset, castra posuit. 7. Tredecim milia peditum et equites octingentos comparavit. 8. Duas fossas quindecim pedes latas, undecim altas, centum quadraginta duos longas perducebat. 9. Castra turribus circumdedit, quae pedes centum septuaginta inter se distabant. 10. Militum milibus quinquaginta et principibus ducentis uno proelio interfectis diutius resistere non possumus.

B.—1. *There* were a thousand cavalry and three thousand infantry in the army of the Gauls. 2. He lingered twenty-five days in that place, waiting for (*say* until he should get) suitable weather. 3. Having himself advanced by night nine miles (*say* nine thousand paces), he came in sight of the enemy's camp. 4. He bestowed praise especially on the soldiers of the seventeenth legion. 5. Caesar said that the island of Britain was eight hundred miles long. 6. On the fifth day he raised an earthwork sixteen feet high, two hundred and twenty-one feet long. 7. At what price do you sell a dozen eggs? At a small price, but at more than yesterday. 8. He surrounds the winter quarters by a rampart nine feet high and a trench fifteen feet wide. 9. Having quitted the camp at the third hour, they advanced on that day thirty miles. 10. The first said he valued the sword at a very high price, the second at less, the third at very little.

EXERCISE 78.

A.—1. *Copiae* hostium prope castra iam constiterant. 2. Propter inopiam frumenti et ob alias causas legiones inter plures civitates distribuit. 3. Nihil praeter spem nobis relictum est. 4. Dixit se et suos penes Caesarem esse. 5. Intra fossam murum aedificaverunt, in quo saxa magni ponderis collocabant. 6. Benevolentiae tuae erga nos non obliviscemur. 7. Pauci nostrorum qui extra munitiones pabulandi causa progressi erant hostes effugerunt. 8. Caesar auxilia pone castra in silvis collocavit. 9. Ipse intermiscuit legionum quattuor veteranarum in colle instruxerat, ita ut supra se duas legiones quas nuperrime cis Rhodanum conscripserat collocaret. 10. Obsides eorum penes nos mox erunt.

B.—1. The Gauls who dwell on the other side of the Rhine differ among themselves in language, customs, and laws. 2. The soldiers being excited because of that circumstance (*yes*), there was very fierce fighting all day. 3. The Germans attempted to march through our province. 4. Construct (pl.) a trench of sixteen feet around the winter quarters. 5. *There* was left one way through Gaul, by which (*qua*) on account of its narrowness they could not go, if the Gauls were unwilling (use abl. abs.). 6. These *people* are outside the province on the other side of the Rhone. 7. The ambassadors show that nothing beyond the soil of the ground (*ager*) has been left to them. 8. After this victory Caesar accomplished a twenty days' march across the river. 9. He left two legions on this side of the river to construct a trench eighteen feet wide and of very great depth. 10. He placed all the cavalry to the number of three thousand near the camp.

EXERCISE 79.

A.—1. Num ea coram populo affirmare ausus es? 2. Hostes haud procul porta Collina castra posuerunt. 3. Curate, cives, ut illis praemium propter virtutem detur. 4. Non sine magna spe gloriae adipiscendae illuc profecti sumus. 5. Ex urbe clam egressi, haud procul castris hostium proditores convenerunt. 6. De summo monte despicientes viginti urbes et oppida conspeximus. 7. Unus e captivis respondisse dicitur se malle liberum mori quam vivere servum. 8. Nonne videtis igitur unius viri consilio ortum esse novum populum? 9. Ego tecum vixi : nonne tu mecum vis mori? 10. Multa pro te coram iudicibus de rebus gestis, de virtute tua dixi.

B.—1. I will go with you as far as the gates of the city. 2. The camp was not far distant from the river Rhone. 3. He paid the money to the creditor in the presence of the people. 4. O that the state may never be without citizens like you! 5. You, Marcus, are worthy of praise beyond all your fellow-soldiers. 6. The general was drawing up the line before the camp. 7. Will you not slip out of the camp with me by night? 8. The rivers flow down from the mountains. 9. Not even for a friend am I willing to die. 10. The lieutenants were informed about these things through spies.

EXERCISE 80.

A.—1. Nostri testudine facta sub moenia accesserunt. 2. Supra caput montes imminentes, sub pedibus flumen profundum conspeximus. 3. Multi terga verterunt et sese in proximas silvas abdiderunt. 4. Post proelium captivi sub iugum missi sunt. 5. Super cadavera hominum et equorum ruimus. 6. In insula mons altissimus et subter monte spelunca est. 7. Turres sub moenia admoveri iussit. 8. Nasus subter oculos situs est. 9. Omnis Gallia in tres partes divisa est. 10. Nova legio conscribenda est, militum enim supra decem milia illo die ceciderunt.

B.—1. The maiden recognised *her* lover's shield over *her* brother's shoulders. 2. The line having been drawn up, he placed the cavalry on the right wing. 3. With a great shout all rush upon* the enemy. 4. All whom our men captured under arms they slew. 5. Let us not remain on the hill; let us descend into the plain. 6. Towards† night the enemy turned their backs. 7. The boy drank the wine without the knowledge of his father. 8. Stretched beneath yonder oak let us talk of past times. 9. I love this *man* much, for *there* is in him the greatest virtue *and* the greatest kindness towards all. 10. Therefore I ask from you that you should receive him into your friendship.

* "To rush upon" = *ruere in* with acc.

† *Sub* with acc.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES TO THE EXERCISES.

N.B.—For numerals see the table on p. 153. For words irregularly inflected, and for the construction of conjunctions, etc., see also Index II. at the end of the book.

I.—LATIN-ENGLISH.

ā, ab, *prep.* (with *abl.*), from, (of agent) by.
abdō, -ere, abdidī, abditum, hide.
abripīō, -ere, abripuī, abreptum, seize, carry off.
abstineō, -ēre, abstinuī, abstentum, abstain.
absum, abesse, āfuī, be absent.
abundō, -āre, abound.
abūtor, abūsus sum, abuse (with *abl.*).
accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessum, approach.
accidit, -ere, accidit, it happens.
accipīō, -ere, accēpi, acceptum, receive.
accūsō -āre, accuse.
ācer, ācris, ācre, keen, ardent, fierce.
aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle.
acus, -ūs, f., needle.
acūtus, -a, -um, sharp.
ad, prep. (with *acc.*), to, until ; **ad ūnum**, to a man.
addūcō, -ere, adduxī, adductum, bring.
adeō, adv., so.
adipiscor, -i, adeptus sum, obtain.

administrō, -āre, manage, ad minister, carry on.
admittō, -ere, admisi, admissum, commit (crime).
admoveō, -ēre, admōvi, admōtum, move up (*trans.*).
adorior, -iri, adortus sum, attack.
adsum, adesse, adfui, be present.
adulātiō, adulātiōnis, f., flattery.
adveniō, -ire, advēni, adventum, arrive.
adventō, -āre, be on the point of arriving.
adversus, -a, -um, adverse ; **rēs adversae**, adversity ; **adversus, adversum, prep.**, opposite, towards.
aedificium, -i, n., building.
aedificō, -āre, to build.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill.
aegrē ferō, resent bitterly.
aegrōtō, -āre, be ill.
aerārium, -i, n., treasury.
aes, aeris, n., bronze, money.
aestās, aestātis, f., summer.
aestus, -ūs, m., tide.
aetās, aetātis, f., age, generation.
afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, bring.

- afficiō, -ere, affēci, affectum, affect.**
affirmō, -āre, affirm.
affligō, -ere, afflīxi, afflictum, dash.
ager, agrī, m., field.
agger, aggeris, m., earthwork.
agnus, -i, m., lamb.
agō, -ere, ēgi, actum, drive.
agricola, -ae, m., husbandman.
āiō, defect., say.
alacer, alacris, alacre, cheerful, energetic, active.
albus, -a, -um, white.
aliās, adv., at another time.
alibi, adv., elsewhere.
aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another, of others; aes aliēnum, n., debt.
aliquandō, adv., some day.
aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, and adj. aliqui, aliquae, aliquod, some one, some.
aliter, adv., otherwise.
alius, -a, -ud, one (of several), another (of several).
alter, altera, alterum, the one (of two), the other (of two), the second (of two).
altitudō, altitudinis, f., height, depth.
altus, -a, -um, high.
ambitus, -ūs, m., bribery.
ambō, -ae, -ō, both.
ambulō, -āre, walk.
amicitia, -ae, f., friendship.
amicus, -a, -um, friendly; amicus, -i, m., friend.
amō, -āre, love.
amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant.
amor, amoris, m., love.
amplector, -i, amplexus sum, embrace.
amplificō, -āre, extend, amplify.
an, conj., or (in double questions)
ancora, -ae, f., anchor.
anguis, -is, m., snake.
angustiae, -ārum, f. pl., narrowness.
animal, animālis, n., animal.
animus, -i, m., mind.
annus, -i, m., year.
anser, anseris, m., goose.
ante, adv., before; prep. (with acc.), before.
anteā, adv., beforehand.
antequam, conj., before.
antiquus, -a, -um, ancient.
aper, apri, m., wild boar.
aperiō, -īre, aperui, apertum, open (trans.).
appāreō, -ēre, appear.
appellō, -āre, call.
apportō, -āre, carry (to).
approbō, -āre, approve.
appropinquō, -āre, approach.
aptus, -a, -um, fit, adapted.
apud, prep. (with acc.), in the presence of, among.
aqua, -ae, f., water.
aquila, -ae, f., eagle.
āra, -ae, f., altar.
arbitror, -ārī, think.
arbor, arboris, f., tree.
arcus, -ūs, m., bow.
ardor, ardōris, m., heat.
arduus, -a, -um, lofty.
argentum, -i, n., silver, money.
arguō, -ere, argui, argūtum, accuse.
ariēs, arietis, m., ram, battering-ram.
Ariōvistus, -i, m., Ariovistus (a German chief).
arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms.
armiger, armigera, armigerum, bearing arms.
arō, -āre, to plough.
ars, artis, f., art; pl., the arts.
arx, arcis, f., citadel.
asper, aspera, asperum, rough, harsh.
at, conj., but.
Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens.
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., influence, authority.
audācia, -ae, f., boldness.
audacter, adv., boldly.

audax, **audācis**, bold.
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare.
audiō, -īre, hear.
auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum, bear away.
augeō, -ēre, auxi, auctum, increase (trans.).
auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer.
aurum, -i, *n.*, gold.
aut, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.* (to be placed after the first word), but, however.
auxilium, -i, *n.*, help, aid; *pl.* **auxilia**, -ōrum, reinforcements.
avāritia, -ae, *f.*, avarice.
avidus, -a, -um, greedy.
avis, -is, *f.*, bird.
avus, -i, *m.*, grandfather.
barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous, uncivilised.
bellum, -i, *n.*, war; **bellum inferō**, make war upon.
bene, *adv.*, well.
benevolentia, -ae, *f.*, goodwill.
benevolus, -a, -um, benevolent.
bibō, -ere, bibi, —, drink.
bonus, -a, -um, good.
bonum, -i, *n.*, good; *n. pl.* **bona**, -ōrum, goods, property.
brevis, -e, short, brief.
breviter, *adv.*, briefly.
Britanni, ōrum, *m.*, Britons.
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.
cadāver, **cadāveris**, *n.*, dead body, corpse.
cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsum, fall.
caelum, -i, *n.*, heaven.
Caesar, **Caesaris**, *m.*, Caesar.
calamitās, **calamitātis**, *f.*, calamity.
calcar, **calcāris**, *n.*, spur.
canis, -is, *c.*, dog.
cantō, -āre, sing.
capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum, take.
captivus, -i, *m.*, captive.
caput, **capitis**, *n.*, head.
carcer, **carceris**, *m.*, prison.
carmen, **carminis**, *n.*, song, poem.

carō, **carnis**, *f.*, flesh.
Carthāgō, **Carthāginis**, *f.*, Carthage (a city of Africa).
cārus, -a, -um, dear.
castigō, -āre, chastise.
castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.* camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, chance.
catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain.
Catilina, -ae, *m.*, Catilina (a Roman who conspired against the state).
Catō, **Catōnis**, *m.*, Cato (a celebrated Roman).
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause; **causā** (with *gen.*), for the sake of, on account of.
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, **cautum**, beware.
celebrō, -āre, celebrate.
celer, **celeris**, **celere**, swift.
celeritās, **celeritātis**, *f.*, speed.
cēlō, -āre, keep in ignorance concerning.
certāmen, **certāminis**, *n.*, contest.
certior fiō, get information.
certus, -a, -um, certain.
cervus, -i, *m.*, stag.
ceu, *adv.*, like as.
cibus, -i, *m.*, food.
Cicerō, **Cicerōnis**, *m.*, Cicero (a Roman orator).
circā, *adv.*, *prep.* (w. *acc.*), around.
circiter, *prep.* (with *acc.*), about (of number).
circum, *adv.*, *prep.* (with *acc.*), around.
circumdō, -are, **circumdedi**, **circumdatum**, surround.
cis, *prep.* (w. *acc.*), on this side of.
citerior, **citerius**, hither, nearer.
citrā, *adv.*, on this side; *prep.* (with *acc.*), on this side of.
civis, -is, *c.*, citizen.
civitās, **civitātis**, *f.*, state.
clādēs, -is, *f.*, disaster.
clam, *adv.*, secretly; *prep.* (with *acc.*), without the knowledge of.

clāmō, -āre, shout.
clāmor, clāmōris, m., shout, cheer.
clārus, -a, -um, illustrious, renowned, famous.
classis, -is, f., fleet.
claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum, shut.
clāvis, -is, f., key.
coepl, coeptum, began.
coerceō, -ēre, control, curb.
cōgitō, -āre, meditate.
cognoscō, -ere, cognōvi, cognitum, get to know, recognise.
cōgō, -ere, cōgēi, coactum, collect.
cohibeō, -ēre, restrain.
cohortor, -ārī, exhort.
collaudō, -āre, bestow praise on.
Collinus, -a, -um, Colline (the name of one of the gates of Rome).
collis, -is, m., hill.
collocō, -āre, place, put.
colloquor, -ī, collocūtus sum, parley.
colō, -ere, colui, cultum, cultivate.
columba, -ae, f., dove.
combūrō, -ere, combussi, combustum, burn (trans.).
comitia, -ōrum, n. pl., election; **comitia habeō**, hold an election.
comitor, -ārī, accompany.
commeātus, -ūs, m., supplies.
commilitō, commilitōnis, m., a fellow-soldier, comrade.
commoror, -ārī, linger.
commoveō, -ēre, commōvi, commōtum, stir, move (trans.).
comparō, -āre, prepare, get together.
comperiō, -īre, comperi, comper-tum, ascertain.
complexus, -ūs, m., embrace.
concēdō, -ere, concessi, concessum, yield, consent.
concidō, -ere, concidi, —, fall.
concilium, -ī, n., council.

conclāmō, -āre, shout (together).
condemnō, -āre, condemn.
condiciō, condiciōnis, f., condition; **pl.**, terms.
conferō, conferre, contuli, collātum, bring together.
conficiō, -ere, confeci, confectum, finish.
confidō, -ere, confisus sum, be confident.
confirmō, -āre, strengthen, cheer.
confiteor, -ērī, confessus sum, confess, admit.
coniūrō, -āre, conspire.
cōnor, -ārī, attempt.
conscribō, -ere, conscripsi, conscriptum, enrol.
consentiō, -īre, consensi, consensum, come to an understanding (with).
conservō, -āre, preserve.
consilium, -ī, n., counsel, plan, purpose, design.
consistō, -ere, constitui, constitutum, take up a position, settle, halt.
conspectus, -ūs, m., sight, appearance.
conspiciō, -ere, conspexi, conspectum, behold, observe.
conspicor, -ārī, come in sight of.
constituō, -ere, constitui, constitūtum, appoint.
consul, consulis, m., consul (a Roman magistrate).
consulō, -ere, consului, consultum, consult the interests of (with *dat.*).
consultō, adv., on purpose.
consūmō, -ere, consumpsi, consumptum, spend, consume.
contemnō, -ere, contempsi, contemptum, despise.
contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum, hasten.
contineō, -ēre, continui, contentum, contain, keep (in a place).
contingit, -ere, contigit, it happens.

contrā, *adv.*, opposite ; *prep.* (with *acc.*), against.
conveniō, -ire, **convēni**, **conven-**
tum, assemble.
conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly,
 council ; **conventum agō**, hold
 a council.
convocō, -āre, call together,
 summon.
coorior, -iri, **coortus sum**, arise.
cōpia, -ārum, *f. pl.*, forces,
 troops.
cōpiōsē, *adv.*, plentifully, fully.
cor, **cordis**, *n.*, heart.
cōram, *adv.*, face to face ; *prep.*
 (with *abl.*), in the presence of.
Corinthus, -i, *f.*, Corinth.
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of
 army).
corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland.
corpus, **corporis**, *n.*, body.
corripio, -ere, **corripui**, **cor-**
reptum, snatch up.
cottidiē, *adv.*, daily.
crās, *adv.*, to-morrow.
Crassus, -i, *m.*, Crassus (a Roman
 general).
crēdibilis, -e, credible.
crēditor, **crēditōris**, *m.*, a creditor.
crēdō, -ere, **crēdidī**, **crēditum**,
 believe (with *dat.*).
cremō, -āre, burn, cremate.
creō, -āre, create, appoint.
crūdēlis, -e, cruel.
crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, leg.
cubile, -is, *n.*, bed, lair.
culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame.
culpō, -āre, blame.
cum, *prep.* (with *abl.*), with.
 accompanied by.
cum, *conj.*, when, since, although.
cum . . . tum, both . . . and.
cupidō, **cupidinīs**, *f.*, desire.
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous,
 greedy.
cupiō, -ere, **cupivī**, **cupitum**,
 desire.
cūr, *adv.*, why ?
cūrō, -āre, take care.

currō, -ere, **cucurri**, **cursum**, **run**.
currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.
cursō, -āre, run to and fro.
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course ; **cursum**
tenēre, hold on one's course.
curvus, -a, -um, curved, wind-
 ing.
custodiō, -ire, guard, keep.
custōs, **custōdis**, *m.*, guard.
dē, *prep.* (with *abl.*), down from,
 concerning ; **dē imprōvisō**, un-
 expectedly.
dea, -ae, *f.*, a goddess.
dēbeō, -ēre, owe, ought.
decet, -ēre, it beseems.
dēclārō, -āre, declare.
dēdecet, -ēre, it misbeseems.
dēdecus, -coris *n.*, disgrace, in-
 famy.
dēdicō, -āre, dedicate.
dēdō, -ere, **dēdidī**, **dēditum**, sur-
 render.
dēducō, -ere, **dēduxī**, **dēductum**,
 lead down, launch.
dēfatigō, -āre, fatigue.
dēferō, **dēferre**, **dētuli**, **dēlātum**,
 bear down.
dēficiō, -ere, **dēfēcī**, **dēfectum**,
 fall away, fail ; *passive* (with
abl.), be lacking in.
dēfluō, -ere, **dēfluxī**, **dēfluxum**,
 flow down.
dēlectō, -āre, to delight ; *impers.*
dēlectat, it pleases.
dēlectus, -ūs, *m.*, levy.
dēlēō, -ēre, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum**, de-
 stroy.
dēliberō, -āre, deliberate.
dēligō, -āre, fasten.
dēmum, *adv.*, at length.
dens, **dentis**, *m.*, tooth.
dēplōrō, -āre, lament, deplore.
descendō, -ere, **descendī**, **descen-**
sum, descend.
dēsērō, -ere, **dēsērui**, **dēsertum**,
 desert.
dēsīderō, -āre, long for, desire.
dēspiciō, -ere, **dēspexī**, **dēspect-**
um, look down on.

dēsum, dēfui, dēesse, be absent, be neglectful.

dēterior, dēterius, worse; **dēterimus, -a, -um**, worst.

deus, -i, m., a god.

dexter, dextra, dextrum, right, on the right hand; **dextra, -ae, f.** (sc. *manus*), right hand.

dīcō, -ere, dixi, dictum, say.

dictitō, āre, say frequently.

diēs, -ēi, m. or (in *sing.*) *f.*, day.

differō, differre, distuli, dilātum, separate.

difficilis, -e, difficult.

dignitās, dignitātis, f., dignity.

dignor, -ārī, deem worthy (with *abl.*).

dignus, -a, -um, worthy (with *abl.*).

diligentia, -ae, f., diligence.

diligō, -ere, dilexi, dilectum, esteem.

dīmīcō, -āre, fight a pitched battle.

dīmīttō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmīssum, disband.

dirīmō, -ere, dirēmī, diremptum, break down, destroy.

diripiō, -ere, diripuī, direptum, pillage.

discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessum, depart.

discipulus, -ī, m., pupil, disciple.

discurrō, -ere, discurrī and **discucurrī, discursum**, run in different directions.

disertus, -a, -um, eloquent.

displiceō, -ēre, displease (with *dat.*).

dissimilis, -e, unlike.

distō, -āre, —, —, be distant.

distribuō, -ere, distribuī, distribūtum, distribute.

dītor, dītius, richer; **dītissimus, -a, -um**, richest.

diū, adv., long.

dīves, dīvitis, rich.

dīvidō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisum, divide.

dīvītae, -ārum, f. pl., riches.

dō, dare, dedi, datum, give.

doceō, -ēre, docui, doctum, teach.

doctus, -a, -um, learned, skilled.

doleō, -ēre, grieve.

dolor, dolōris, m., pain, grief, indignation.

dominus, -ī, m., master, lord.

domus, -ūs, (abl. sing. domō), f., house; **domī, at** home;

domum, home, homewards.

dōnec, conj., until.

dōno, -āre, give (as a present).

dōnum, -ī, n., gift.

dormiō, -ire, sleep.

dubitō, -āre, doubt, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful.

dūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum, lead.

dulcior, dulciōris, sweeter.

dulcis, -e, sweet.

dum, conj., while, as long as, until.

duo, -ae, -o, two.

dux, ducis, m., leader, general.

ē, ex, prep. (with *abl.*), out of, from.

ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidici, —, learn by heart.

ēduco, -āre, educate.

ēducō, -ere, ēduxī, ēductum, lead out, draw out.

efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectum, bring about.

effugiō, -ere, effūgī, —, escape.

egēnus, -a, -um, needy.

egeō, -ēre, eguī, —, be needy, be in need of (with *abl.* or *gen.*).

ego, I.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, quit.

ēgregiē, adv., admirably.

ēlābor, -ī, ēlāpus sum, slip out, escape.

ēloquens, ēloquentis, eloquent.

ēloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence.

ēmendō, -āre, correct, amend.

emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum, buy.

ēmollīō, -ire, soften, refine.

eō, ire, ivi or **ii, itum**, go

eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place.
 eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
 epistola, -ae, *f.*, letter.
 eques, equitis, *m.*, horse-soldier;
pl., cavalry.
 equester, equestris, equestre,
 equestrian, cavalry (*adj.*).
 equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry.
 equus, -i, *m.*, horse.
 ergā, *prep.* (with *acc.*), towards (a
 person).
 ēripīō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptum,
 snatch, tear out or away.
 errō, -āre, go astray, be mis-
 taken.
 ērudiō, -ire, train, polish.
 ēruditiō, ēruditiōnis, *f.*, learning.
 ērumpō, -ere, ērūpī, ēruptum,
 break out, sally forth.
 et, *conj.*, and.
 etiam, *conj.*, also.
 etiamsi, *conj.*, although, even if.
 etsi, *conj.*, although, even if.
 ēveniō, -ire, ēvēnī, ēventum,
 turn out, happen.
 ex, ē, *prep.* (with *abl.*), out of, from.
 exanimō, -āre, kill.
 excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessum,
 retire ; ē vitā excēdō, die.
 excrucio, -āre, torment, distress.
 exemplum, -i, *n.*, example.
 exerceō, -ēre, exercise.
 exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army.
 exhauriō, -ire, exhausī, exhaus-
 tum, exhaust.
 exiguus, -a, -um, scanty.
 eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary,
 remarkable.
 exinde, *adv.*, thenceforth.
 expeditus, -a, -um, light-armed.
 expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum,
 drive out.
 experior, -iri, expertus sum, try,
 put to the trial.
 explorātor, explorātoris, *m.*, spy.
 expōnō, -ere, exposuī, expositum,
 put out, land (trans.).
 expugnō, -āre, take by storm.
 expectō, -āre, await.

exstinguō, -ere, exstinxi, ex-
 stinctum, extinguish.
 exstruō, -ere, exstruxī, exstruct-
 um, raise, construct.
 exterus, -a, -um, outside ; ex-
 terior, exterius, outer ; ex-
 trēmus, -a, -um, and extimus,
 -a, -um, last.
 extrā, *adv.*, outside ; *prep.* (with
acc.), outside of.
 exul, exulis, *m.*, exile.
 faber, fabri, *m.*, carpenter.
 fābula, -ae, *f.*, tale, story.
 faciēs, ēī, *f.*, face.
 facilis, -e, easy.
 faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make,
 do, value, esteem.
 factum, -i, *n.*, deed.
 facultās, facultātis, *f.*, opportu-
 nity.
 fāgus, -i, *f.*, beech.
 falsus, -a, -um, false.
 fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, rumour,
 fame.
 familia, -ae, *f.*, household.
 fātur, fāri, *defect.*, speak.
 faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, be
 favourable.
 fēlicior, fēliciōris, happier, more
 fortunate.
 fēlix, fēlicis, happy, fortunate.
 fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
 fera, -ae, *f.*, wild beast.
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear.
 ferōciter, *adv.*, fiercely.
 ferrum, -i, *n.*, iron.
 fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
 festinō, -āre, hasten.
 fidēlis, -e, faithful.
 fidēs, -ei, *f.*, faith, loyalty, alle-
 giance.
 fidō, -ere, fīsus sum, trust.
 filia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
 filius, -i, *m.*, son.
 fingō, -ere, finxi, fīctum, feign.
 finio, -ire, end, finish.
 finis, -is, *m.*, end ; *pl.*, territories.
 finitimus, -a, -um, bordering on,
 near.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, become, be made.

firmō, -āre, strengthen.

flamma, -ae, f., flame.

flectō, -ere, flexi, flexum, bend, sway.

flōreō, -ēre, flōrui, —, flourish.

flōs, flōris, m., flower.

flūmen, flūminis, n., river.

fluviū, -i, m., river.

foedus, foederis, n., treaty.

folium, -i, n., leaf.

fons, fontis, m., fountain.

foris, -is, f., gate.

fortis, -e, brave.

fortiter, adv., bravely.

fortūna, -ae, f., fortune.

forum, -i, n., market-place.

fossa, -ae, f., trench.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

fraus, fraudis, f., fraud, guile, craft.

fretum, -i, n., strait.

frigidus, -a, -um, cold.

frīgus, frīgoris, n., cold.

fructus, -ūs, m., fruit.

frūgī, indecl. adj., of worth.

frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum, fruit-bearing.

frūmentum, -i, n., corn.

fruor, -i, fructus sum, enjoy (with *abl.*).

frustrā, adv., in vain.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum, flee, take to flight.

fugō, -āre, put to flight.

fulgur, fulguris, n., flash of lightning.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour; *perf. part. pass.*, stretched.

fūnestus, -a, -um, baneful.

fungor, -i, functus sum, discharge (with *abl.*).

Gabiī, -ōrum, m. pl., Gabii (a town).

Gādēs, -ium, f. pl., Gades (now Cadiz).

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul (now France)

Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.

Gallus, -i, m. a Gaul.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice.

gaudium, -i, n., joy.

gener, generi, m., son-in-law.

genū, -ūs, n., kneecap.

Germānus, -a, -um, German.

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, wage.

gladius, -i, m., sword.

glans, glandis, f., acorn.

glaucus, -a, -um, grey.

glōrior, -āri, boast.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, boastful.

gracilis, -e, slender.

gradior, -i, gressus sum, step.

gradus, -ūs, m., step.

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.

grandinat, -āre, it hails.

grātiā, -ae, f., favour; **grātiā** (with *gen.*), on account of, for the sake of.

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing.

gravis, -e, heavy, severe.

graviter, adv., heavily, deeply.

grex, gregis, m., flock.

gubernātor, gubernātōris, m., pilot.

habeō, -ēre, have, hold, consider; **oratiōnem habeō**, make a speech.

habitō, -āre, inhabit.

Hannibal, Hannibalis, m., Hannibal (a Carthaginian general).

hasta, -ae, f., spear.

Helvētia, -ae, f., Switzerland.

hērēs, hērēdis, c., heir, heiress.

herī (here), adv., yesterday.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters.

hic (hic), haec, hōc, this.

hic, adv., here.

hiemō, -āre, pass the winter, winter.

hiems, hiemis, f., winter.

Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.

hodiē, adv., to-day.

- homō, hominis, c.,** man, person.
honōrō, -āre, honour.
hōra, -ae, f., hour.
Horātius, -ī, m., Horace (a Roman poet).
hortor, -ārī, exhort.
hortus, -ī, m., garden.
hostis, -is, c., enemy, foe; *pl.* enemy (collective).
hūc, adv., hither.
hūmānus, -a, -um, human.
humilis, -e, low.
idem, eadem, idem, the same.
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable.
ignāvia, -ae, f., cowardice.
ignāvus, -a, -um, indolent, cowardly.
ignis, -is, m., fire.
ignōrō, -āre, not to know, be unaware.
ille, illa, illud, that (yonder).
imber, imbris, m., shower.
immemor, immemoris, unmindful.
immineō, -ēre, ---, ---, overhang.
immolō, -āre, sacrifice.
immortālis, -e, immortal.
impedimenta, -ōrum, n. pl., baggage.
imperium, -ī, n., rule, empire.
imperō, -āre, command, give orders (with *dat.*).
impetus, -ūs, m., attack; **impetum faciō,** charge (military phrase).
impiger, impigra, impigrum, active.
improbis, -a, -um, dishonourable.
imprōvisō, see dē imprōvisō.
impulsus, -ūs, m., impulse, initiative.
impūne, adv., with impunity.
in, prep. (with abl.), in, on; (with *acc.*) into, upon, against.
incendium, -ī, n., fire.
incendō, -ere, incendi, incensum, burn (trans.).
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.
incitō, -āre, drive forward, excite.
incola, -ae, c., inhabitant.
incolō, -ere, incolui, incultum, dwell.
incolumis, -e, unhurt, safe and sound.
indicō, -āre, to point out.
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy.
indulgeō, -ēre, indulsī, indultum, be indulgent, indulge (with *dat.*).
inermis, -e, unarmed.
infelix, infelīcis, unfortunate, unhappy.
inferior, inferius, lower; **infimus or imus, -a, -um,** lowest.
inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, bring in; **bellum inferō,** make war upon.
infidēlis, -e, unfaithful.
infrā, adv., and prep. (with acc.), below.
ingenium, -ī, n., ability, disposition, genius.
ingens, ingentis, immense.
ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum, set foot in.
inimicitia, -ae, f., hostility, enmity.
inimicus, -a, -um, hostile; **inimicus, -ī, m.,** enemy.
iniquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unfavourable, disadvantageous.
initium, -ī, n., beginning.
iniūria, -ae, f., injury, act of violence.
inopia, -ae, f., scarcity.
inops, inopis, helpless.
inquam, inquit, defect., say.
insciens, inscientis, unwitting, unknowing.
insequor, -ī, insecutus sum, follow, pursue.
insons, insontis, innocent.
instruō, -ere, instruxī, instructum, draw up.

- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island.
insum, **in**esse, **infui**, be in.
integratiō, **integratiōnis**, *f.*, renewal.
intelligō, -ere, **intellexi**, **intellectum**, understand.
inter, *prep.* (with *acc.*), between, among; **inter sē**, among themselves, one from another.
intercludō, -ere, **interclūsi**, **interclūsum**, cut off.
interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.
intereā, **interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile.
interficiō, -ere, **interfēcī**, **interfectum**, kill.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.
interior, **interius**, inner; **intimus**, -a, -um, inmost.
interrogō, -āre, question, interrogate.
intersum, **interfui**, **interesse**, be in the midst; **interest**, *impers.*, it is the business (of), it is of importance (to).
intrā, *adv.*, and *prep.* (with *acc.*), within.
intrō, -āre, enter.
intus, *adv.*, within.
inūtilis, -e, unserviceable.
invādō, -ere, **invāsī**, **invāsum**, invade, seize.
inveniō, -īre, **invēnī**, **inventum**, find.
invidēō, -ēre, **invidī**, **invisum**, to envy, be envious (with *dat.*).
invitus, -a, -um, unwilling.
ipse, -a, -um, self.
ira, -ae, *f.*, anger.
irascor, -ī, **irātus sum**, be angry.
irrupō, -ere, **irrupī**, **irruptum**, break into.
is, **ea**, **id**, that; he, she, it.
iste, -a, -ud, that (of yours).
ita, *adv.*, so.
Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.
iter, **itineris**, *n.*, journey, march.
iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time.
iaceō, -ēre, lie, lie dead.
iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactum**, throw.
iactō, -āre, throw, hurl.
iam, *adv.*, now, by this time.
iubeō, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussum**, bid.
iūdex, **iūdicis**, *m.*, judge (properly, juryman).
iugum, -ī, *n.*, yoke.
iumentum, -ī, *n.*, baggage-animal.
iungō, -ere, **iunxi** **iunctum**, join.
iussum, -ī, *n.*, order, command.
iūnior, **iūniōris**, younger.
iuvat, -āre, **iūvit**, it delights.
iuvenis, -is, *m.*, young man.
iuxtā, *adv.*, close; *prep.* (with *acc.*), close by.
Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus (a Roman commander).
labor, **labōris**, *m.*, labour.
labōrō, -āre, to labour, take pains.
lac, **lactis**, *n.*, milk.
lacer, **lacera**, **lacerum**, torn.
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.
laevus, -a, -um, left, on the left hand; **laeva**, -ae, *f.* (sc. *manus*), left hand.
lapis, **lapidis**, *m.*, stone.
lateō, -ēre, **latuī**, —, hide.
Latinus, -a, -um, Latin.
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide.
laudō, -āre, praise.
laus, **lāudis**, *f.*, praise.
lēgatiō, **lēgatiōnis**, *f.*, embassy.
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, ambassador, lieutenant.
legiō, **legiōnis**, *f.*, legion.
legō, -ere, **lēgī**, **lectum**, read.
leō, **leōnis**, *m.*, lion.
lex, **lēgis**, *f.*, law.
liber, **libri**, *m.*, book.
liber, **libera**, **liberum**, free.
liberālis, -e, liberal.
liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, children.
liberō, -āre, free.
libertās, **libertātis**, *f.*, liberty.
libet, -ēre, it pleases.

licet, -ēre, it is permitted ; **licet**,
conj., although.

lilium, -i, *n.*, lily.

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

littera, -ae, *f.*, letter, character ;
pl., literature, letters.

litus, **litoris**, *n.*, shore.

locus, -i, *m.*, place.

longē, *adv.*, far ; **longius**, farther,
further, too far.

longus, -a, -um, long ; **nāvis**
longa, man-of-war.

loquax, **loquācis**, talkative, lo-
quacious.

loquor, -i, **locūtus sum**, speak,
talk.

lūdō, -ere, **lūsi**, **lūsum**, play.

lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon.

lustrō, -āre, visit.

lūsus, -ūs, *m.*, game.

Lutētia, -ae, *f.*, a town, now
Paris.

magis, *adv.*, rather.

magister, **magistrī**, *m.*, master.

magnificus, -a, -um, distin-
guished, magnificent.

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly.

magnus, -a, -um, great, large.

māior, **māiōris**, greater.

māiōrēs, -um, *m.pl.*, ancestors.

male, *adv.*, badly.

maledicus, -a, -um, slanderous.

mālō, **malle**, **mālui**, —, prefer.

malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked.

manēō, -ēre, **mansi**, **mansum**,
remain.

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand.

Marcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus (a Roman
name).

mare, -is, *n.*, sea.

maritus, -i, *m.*, husband.

Mars, **Martis**, *m.*, Mars (the
Roman god of war).

mās, **maris**, *m.*, male.

Massilia, -ae, *f.*, a town, now
Marseilles.

māter, **mātris**, *f.*, mother.

mātūrius, *adv.*, earlier.

maximē, *adv.*, very greatly.

maximus, -a, -um, greatest ;
nātū maximus, eldest.

medicus, -i, *m.*, doctor, physician,
surgeon.

medius, -a, -um, middle.

melior, **melīōris**, better.

memini, *defect.*, remember.

memor, **memoris**, mindful.

mendax, **mendācis**, mendacious,
untruthful.

mensa, -ae, *f.*, table.

mercātor, **mercātōris**, *m.*, mer-
chant.

mereō, -ēre, deserve, merit.

messis, -is, *f.*, harvest.

mētiōr, -īri, **mensus sum**, mea-
sure out.

miles, **militis**, *m.*, soldier.

minae, -ārum, *f.pl.*, threats.

minimus, -a, -um, least, small-
est ; **nātū minimus**, youngest.

minister, **ministri**, *m.*, servant.

minor, **minōris**, less, smaller.

miser, **misera**, **miserum**,
wretched, unhappy.

miseret, -ēre, it moves to pity.

mittō, -ere, **miſi**, **missum**, send.

modus, -i, *m.*, manner.

moenia, -ium, *n.pl.*, walls (of a city).

molestiae, -ārum, *f.pl.*, annoy-
ances.

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome,
burdensome, annoying.

molliō, -īre, mitigate, soothe.

moneō, -ēre, admonish, warn.

mons, **montis**, *m.*, mountain.

monstrō, -āre, show.

morbus, -i, *m.*, disease.

mordeō, -ēre, **momordi**, **morsum**,
bite.

morior, -i, **mortuus sum**, die.

moror, -āri, delay (*trans. and*
intrans.).

mors, **mortis**, *f.*, death.

mortifer, **mortifera**, **mortiferum**,
fatal, mortal.

mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, manner, custom ;
pl., **mōrēs**, manners, morals,
character.

mōtus, -ūs, *m.*, movement, revolt.
moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, move
 (*trans.*); **moveor**, move (*in-*
trans.).

mox, *adv.*, soon.

mulier, **mulieris**, *f.*, woman.

multitūdō, **multitūdinis**, *f.*, mul-
 titude.

multus, -a, -um, many, much.

mundus, -ī, *m.*, world.

mūnio, -īre, fortify.

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.

nanciscor, -ī, **nactus sum**, get.

narrō, -āre, relate, narrate, tell.

nascor, -ī, **nātus sum**, be born.

nāsus, -ī, *m.*, nose.

natō, -āre, swim.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship; **nāvis longa**,
 battle-ship, man-of-war;
nāvēs solvō, set sail.

nē, *conj.*, that . . . not, lest; *adv.*,
 not (in commands, etc.); **nē**
 . . . **quidem**, not even.

-**ne**, *interrogative enclitic particle*.

nec, *conj.*, and . . . not, nor;
nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor,
 or.

necnōn, *conj.*, also.

necō, -āre, kill, slay.

negō, -āre, deny, say . . . not.

nēmō, *acc.* **nēminem**, *dat.* **nēminī**,
 (*gen.* and *abl.* supplied by
nullus), no one.

Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*, Neptune.

nēquam, *indecl.*, worthless.

neque . . . neque, *conj.*, neither
 . . . nor.

neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum**, neither.

nidus, -ī, *m.*, nest.

niger, **nigra**, **nigrum**, black.

nihil, *indecl. n.*, nothing.

ningit, -ere, **ninxit**, it snows.

nisi, *conj.*, unless.

nix, **nivis**, *f.*, snow.

nō, **nāre**, swim.

nōbilis, -e, nobly born.

noceō, -ēre, to do harm, injure
 (with *dat.*).

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, nightly, by
 night.

nōlō, **nolle**, **nōluī**, —, be un-
 willing.

nōmen, **nōminis**, *n.*, name.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nondum, *adv.*, not yet.

nonne, *interrogative*, not?

nonnullus, -a, -um, some.

nōs, we.

noster, **nostra**, **nostrum**, our,
 ours.

nōtus, -a, -um, known, well-
 known.

novus, -a, -um, new.

nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night.

noxius, -a, -um, hurtful.

nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud.

nullus, -a, -um, none, no.

num, *interrogative particle*, in
 questions to which a negative
 answer is expected.

numerō, -āre, count.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number.

numquam, *adv.*, never.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nuntiō, -āre, announce.

nuntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger.

nūper, *adv.*, recently.

nūpperrimē, *adv.*, very recently.

ob, *prep.* (with *acc.*), because of.
obeō, **obīre**, **obiī**, **obitum**, tra-
 verse, die.

obiciō, -ere, **obiēcī**, **obiectum**, set
 in the way.

obliviscor, -ī, **oblītus sum** (with
gen. or *acc.*), forget.

obses, **obsidis**, *c.*, hostage.

obsideō, -ēre, **obsēdī**, **obsessum**,
 besiege.

obstō, -āre, **obstitī**, **obstātum**,
 prevent.

obsum, **obesse**, **obfuī**, be harmful,
 harm.

obtemperō, -āre, obey (with
dat.).

occāsiō, **occāsiōnis**, *f.*, oppor-
 tunity.

occurrō, -ere, occurri, occursum,
fall in with, fall upon (with
dat.).

ōcior, ōciōris, adj., swifter.

ōcissimus, -a, -um, swiftest.

oculus, -i, m., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, hate.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum,
offer.

officium, -i, n., duty.

omniñō, adv., altogether, wholly.

omnis, -e, every, all ; m. pl.,

omnēs, -ium, everyone, every-
body.

onerārius, -a, -um, burden-bear-
ing ; **nāvis onerāria, f.,** mer-
chant-vessel.

onerō, -āre, load.

onus, oneris, n., burden.

oportet, -ēre, it behoves.

opperior, -iri, oppertus sum, wait.

oppidānus, -i, m., townsman.

oppidum, -i, n., town.

**opprimō, -ere, oppressi, oppres-
sum,** overwhelm.

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f.,
siege.

oppugno, -āre, attack, besiege.

optimē, adv., very well, excellent-
ly.

optō, -āre, wish for.

opulentus, -a, -um, opulent,
flourishing.

opus, operis, n., work ; **opus est,**
there is need (with *abl.* of the
thing needed).

ōra, -ae, f., shore.

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f., speech, ora-
tion.

ōrātor, -ōris, m., orator.

orior, -iri, ortus sum, arise.

ornō, -āre, adorn.

ōrō, -āre, beg, beseech.

os, ossis, n., bone.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum,
show.

ōtium, -i, n., ease, rest.

ōvum, -i, n., egg.

pābulor, -āri, forage.

paene, adv., almost.

paenitet, -ēre, it repents.

palam, adv., openly ; **prep. (with
abl.),** in the presence of.

palleō, -ēre, pallui, —, be pale.

palūs, palūdis, f., marsh.

parco, -ere, peperci, parsum, be
sparing, spare (with *dat.*).

parens, parentis, c., parent.

pāreō, -ēre, obey, be obedient
(with *dat.*).

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, bring
forth, gain.

parō, -āre, prepare.

pars, partis, f., part.

partior, -iri, divide.

parumper, adv., for a little while.

parvus, -a, -um, little, small.

passer, passeris, m., sparrow.

passus, -ūs, m., pace.

pastor, pastōris, m., shepherd.

pater, patris, m., father.

patior, -i, passus sum, suffer.

patria, -ae, f., native land, coun-
try.

pauci, -ae, -a, few.

paulātim, adv., gradually.

pauper, pauperis, poor.

pavor, pavōris, m., panic.

pax, pācis, f., peace.

peccō, -āre, sin.

pecūnia, -ae, f., money, sum of
money.

pedes, peditis, m., foot-soldier ;
pl., infantry.

pēior, pēiōris, worse.

pellis, -is, f., skin.

pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, drive.

penes, prep. (with acc.), in the
power of.

per, prep. (with acc.), through.

peragrō, -āre, wander about.

**perducō, -ere, perduxī, perduct-
um,** lead through, construct
(a trench).

pereō, perire, perii, peritum,
perish.

perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous,
perfidious.

periculum, -i, *n.*, danger.
 peritus, -a, -um, experienced, skilful.
 permagnus, -a, -um, very great.
 permittō, -ere, permisi, permisum, entrust.
 perniciosus, -a, -um, pernicious, dangerous.
 persequor, -ī, persecutus sum, follow up, pursue.
 persuadēō, -ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, persuade.
 perterreō, -ēre, strike with panic.
 perturbō, -āre, dismay, frighten.
 perveniō, -īre, pervēni, perventum, arrive.
 pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot; pedem referō, retreat.
 petō, -ere, petivī or petiī, petitum, ask, seek.
 piget, -ēre, it pains.
 pinguis, -e, fat.
 pius, -a, -um, dutiful.
 placeō, -ēre, please, be pleasing (with *dat.*).
 plānitēs, -ēi, *f.*, plain.
 plēnus, -a, -um, full.
 plōrō, -āre, bewail.
 pluit, -ere, pluit, it rains.
 plūrēs, -a, more.
 plūs, plūris, *n.*, more; plūs, *adv.*, more.
 pōculum, -i, *n.*, cup, goblet.
 Poenus, -a, -um, Carthaginian.
 poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet.
 polliceor, -ērī, promise.
 Pompēius, -i, *m.*, Pompeius (a celebrated Roman general).
 pondus, ponderis, *n.*, weight.
 pōne, *adv.*, behind; *prep.* (with *acc.*), behind.
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch.
 pons, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
 populus, -i, *m.*, people.
 porta, ae, *f.*, gate.
 portō, -are, carry.
 portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbour.
 possum, posse, potuī, —, be able.

post, *adv.*, afterwards; *prep.* (with *acc.*), behind.
 posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
 posterior, posteriōris, later.
 posterus, -a, -um, following.
 postquam, *conj.*, after.
 postrēmus, -a, -um, last.
 potens, potentis, powerful.
 potior, -īrī, get possession of, possess (with *abl.*).
 prae, *prep.* (with *abl.*), for, by reason of (after a *negative*).
 praebeō, -ēre, show, furnish, set.
 praeceps, praecipitis, headlong.
 praecipitō, -āre, throw.
 praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty.
 praedō, praedōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate.
 praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectum, set over (with *dat.*).
 praemium, -i, *n.*, reward.
 praesertim, *adv.*, especially.
 praesidium, -i, *n.*, garrison.
 praestans, praestantis, excellent.
 praesum, praesesse, praefuī, be in command of.
 praeter, *prep.* (with *acc.*), beyond.
 praetereō, praeterire, praeteriī, praeteritum, go past.
 praeteritus, -a, -um, past.
 praeveniō, -īre, praevēni, praeventum, get the start of.
 prāvus, -a, -um, corrupt.
 prior, priōris, former.
 primus, -a, -um, first.
 princeps, principis, *c.*, chief.
 pristinus, -a, -um, former.
 priusquam, *conj.*, before.
 probō, -āre, approve.
 probrum, -i, *n.*, reproach.
 procella, -ae, *f.*, storm.
 procul, *adv.*, far; *prep.* (with *abl.*), far from.
 prōdeō, prōdire, prōdiī, prōditum, go forth.
 prōditor, prōditōris, *m.*, betrayer, traitor

- prōdūcō, -ere, prōdūxī, prōductum, protract.**
proelium, -ī, n., battle.
proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum, set out.
profundus, -a, -um, deep.
prōgredior, -ī, prōgressus sum, advance.
prohibeō, -ēre, hinder, forbid.
prōnuntiō, -āre, proclaim.
prōpe, adv., and prep. (w. acc.), near.
propior, propiōris, nearer.
propter, prep. (with acc.), near, on account of.
prōra, -ae, f., prow.
prosperus, -a, -um, prosperous; rēs prosperae, prosperity.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, be beneficial, do good.
prōvidens, prōvidentis, foreseeing.
prōvidus, -a, -um, foreseeing.
prōvincia, -ae, f., province.
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.
prūdēns, prūdētis, prudent, wise.
puđet, -ēre, it shames.
puella, -ae, f., girl.
puer, pueri, m., boy.
pugna, -ae, f., battle.
pugnō, -āre, to fight.
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.
pulchritūdō, pulchritūdinis, f., beauty.
pūniō, -īre, punish.
puppis, -is, f., stern.
putō, -āre, consider, think.
quālis, -e, of what kind, what sort of.
quam, adv., than.
quamquam, conj., although.
quāvis, conj., although.
quandō, adv., when?
quantus, -a, -um, how great? (as great) as.
quārē, adv., why?
quasi, conj. and adv., as if.
quassō, -āre, shatter.
- quatiō, -ere, —, quassum, shake. -que, enclitic conj., and.**
quercus, -ūs, f., oak.
quī, quae, quod, rel., who, which, that; interrog. adj., what?
quī, qua, quod, indef. adj., any.
quīa, conj., because.
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever.
quid, what? see quis.
quidam, quaedam, quiddam and (adj.) quoddam, a certain (person or thing).
quidem, see nē . . . quidem.
quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet and (adj.) quodlibet, any you please.
quīn, conj., that . . . not, (but) that, from (. . . ing); adv., why not?
quis, quae, quid, interrog., who? what?
quis, qua, quid, indef., any one, anything.
quisquam, quidquam or (adj.) quodquam, any.
quisque, quaeque, quidque and (adj.) quodque, each.
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quicquid) and (adj.) quodquod whoever, whatever.
quīvis, quaevis, quidvis and (adj.) quodvis, any you will.
quō, adv., whither?
quod, conj., because.
quominus, conj., that (thereby) . . . not; from (. . . -ing).
quōmodo, adv., how?
quondam, adv., formerly.
quoniam, conj., since.
quoque, adv., also.
quot, indecl., how many?
rāmus, -ī, m., branch.
rāna, -ae, f., frog.
rapax, rapācis, greedy, rapacious.
ratio, ratiōnis, f., reason.
reciperō, -āre, recover.
recipiō, -ere, recēpi, receptum, receive.

- recitō, -āre**, read aloud, recite.
recreō, -āre, refresh.
redeō, redire, rediī, reditum, go back.
redintegrō, -āre, renew.
reditus, -ūs, m., return.
redūcō, -ere, reduxī, reductum, lead back.
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, bear back.
rēfert, rēferre, rettulit, —, it concerns.
reficiō, -ere, refēcī, refectum, repair.
rēgina, -ae, f., queen.
regiō, regiōnis, f., region.
regnō, -āre, reign.
regnum, -i, n., kingdom.
regō, -ere, rexī, rectum, rule, govern.
regredior, -i, regressus sum, return.
relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum, leave, relinquish.
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining.
remedium, -i, n., remedy.
repente, adv., suddenly.
repentinus, -a, -um, sudden.
reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum, find.
reportō, -āre, bring back.
repudiō, -āre, reject.
rēs, -ei, f., thing, affair.
rēs adversae, adversity.
rēs gestae, exploits.
rēs prosperae, prosperity.
rēs publica, f., state, republic.
reservō, -āre, reserve.
respondeō, -ēre, respondi, responsum, reply.
rēte, -is, n., net.
retineō, -ēre, retinui, retentum, retain.
revertor, -i, revertī, reversum, return (*intrans.*).
revocō, -āre, recall, call back.
rex, rēgis, m., king.
Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine.
Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhone.
ripa, -ae, f., bank.
rogō, -āre, ask.
Rōmānus, -i, m., a Roman.
Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus.
rosa, -ae, f., rose.
rubeō, -ēre, rubui, —, blush.
ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.
ruō, -ere, rui, rutum, rush.
rursus, adv., again, back again.
rūs, rūris, n., country (opposed to town).
rusticus, -a, -um, country (*adj.*).
sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred.
sacerdōs, sacerdotis, c., priest, priestess.
saepe, adv., often.
saepissimē, adv., very often.
saepius, adv., more often, oftener.
sagax, sagācis, sagacious, shrewd.
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.
saltō, -āre, dance.
salūs, salutis, f., safety.
salūtāris, -e, salutary, beneficial.
sapiens, sapientis, wise.
sapientia, -ae, f., wisdom.
satis, enough; compar. satius, preferable.
satisfaciō, -ere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, satisfy (with *dat.*).
saxum, -i, n., stone, rock.
scelus, sceleris, n., crime.
sciō, -ire, know.
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write.
scūtum, -i, n., shield.
sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
sed, conj., but.
sedile, -is, n., seat.
segnitiēs, -ei, f., sloth, apathy.
semel, adv., once.
semper, adv., always.
senātus, -ūs, m., senate.
senectūs, senectūtis, f., old age.
senex, senis, m., old man.
senior, seniōris, older.
sententia, -ae, f., opinion.
sepeliō, -ire, sepelivī, sepultum, bury.

- sequor, -ī, secūtus sum**, follow.
sermō, sermōnis, m., discourse, conversation.
servō, -āre, observe.
servus, -ī, m., slave.
sēsē, see sē.
seu . . . seu, conj., whether . . . or, if . . . or if.
sī, conj., if.
sic, adv., so, thus.
sicārius, -ī, m., assassin.
siccus, -a, -um, dry.
signum, -ī, n., sign, standard.
silva, -ae, f., a wood.
similis, -e, like.
sine, prep. (with *abl.*), without.
sinō, -ere, sivi, situm, allow ; *perf. part. pass.*, situated.
sitis, -is, f., thirst.
sive . . . sive, conj., whether . . . or, if . . . or if.
socer, soceri, m., father-in-law.
sōl, sōlis, m., sun.
soleō, -āre, solitus sum, be accustomed.
sollicitō, -āre, work upon, instigate.
sollicitūdō, sollicitūdinis, f., anxiety.
solum, -ī, n., soil.
solum, adv., only.
sōlus, -a, -um, alone.
solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum, loosen, pay.
somnus, -ī, m., sleep.
soror, sorōris, f., sister.
speciēs, -ēi, f., semblance, pretence.
spectō, -āre, to look at, behold, see.
speculor, -āri, reconnoitre.
spēlunca, -ae, f., cave.
spērō, -āre, hope.
spēs, -ei, f., hope.
splendidus, -a, -um, splendid.
spoliō, -āre, pillage.
spondeō, -āre, sponendi, sponsum, promise.
sponsus, -ī, m., betrothed, lover.
statim, adv., at once, immediately.
statiō, statiōnis, f., post.
stō, stāre, steti, statum, stand, remain firm, persist in (with *abl.*).
strepitus, -ūs, m., uproar, din.
studeō, -āre, studui, —, devote oneself to (with *dat.*).
studium, -ī, n., pursuit, study.
stultitia, -ae, f., folly.
stultus, -a, -um, foolish.
stupeō, -āre, stupui, —, be aghast.
sub, prep. (with *abl.*), under, beneath ; (with *acc.*), to the foot of, beneath.
subducō, -ere, subdixi, subductum, haul up on shore, beach.
subeō, subire, subii, subitum, go up to, endure.
subsum, subesse, subui, be under.
subter, adv., and *prep.* (with *acc.*), beneath.
sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātum, endure.
sum, esse, fui, be.
summa, -ae, f., whole, chief responsibility.
summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest.
super, adv., and *prep.* (with *acc.*), above.
superior, superiōris, higher, previous.
superō, -āre, overcome, excel.
superstes, superstitis, surviving.
supersum, superesse, superui, be left.
superus, -a, -um, upper.
suppeditō, -āre, supply, provide.
supplicium, -ī, n., punishment.
suprā, adv., and *prep.* (with *acc.*), above.
suprēmus, -a, -um, highest, last.
suspīcor, -ārī, suspect.

- sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, susten-**
tum, sustain.
suus, -a, um, his, her, its, their
 (own).
taceō, -ēre, be silent.
taedet, -ēre, it disgusts.
tālis, -e, such, of such a kind.
tam, adv., so.
tamen, adv., nevertheless.
tantus, -a, -um, so great.
Tarentum, -i, n., Tarentum (a
 town, now Taranto).
taurus, -i, m., bull.
tellūs, tellūris, f., earth.
tēlum, -i, n., javelin, weapon.
temerārius, -ā, -um, rash.
tempestās, tempestātis, f., weath-
 er, storm.
templum, -i, n., temple.
tempus, temporis, n., time.
teneō, -ēre, tenui, tentum,
 hold.
tener, tenera, tenerum, tender,
 delicate.
tentō, āre, try, tempt.
tenus, prep. (with abl. or gen.),
 as far as.
tergum, -i, n., back.
terra, -ae, f., earth.
terreō, -ēre, terrify.
testis, -is, c., witness.
testūdō, testūdinis, f., tortoise (a
 defence made by interlocking
 shields).
timeō, -ēre, timui, —, fear.
timidus, -a, -um, timid.
timor, timōris, m., fear.
tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātum,
 raise.
tot, indecl., so many.
tōtus, -a, -um, whole.
trabs, trabis, f., beam, timber.
tractō, -āre, handle.
trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum,
 hand over, betray.
trans, prep. (with acc.), across.
transeō, transire, transiī, tran-
situm, go across.
trēs, tria, three.
- tristis, -e, sad.**
trucidō, -āre, butcher.
tū, thou, you.
tueor, -ēri, watch, defend.
tum, adv., then.
tum dēmum, adv., then at length.
turba, -ae, f., crowd.
turpis, -e, base.
turris, -is, f., tower.
tussis, -is, f., cough.
tuus, -a, -um, thy, thine, your,
 yours.
ubi (ubi), adv., where, when.
ullus, -a, -um, any.
ulterior, ulteriōris, farther, re-
 moter.
ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last,
 remotest.
ultrā, adv., beyond ; prep. (with
 acc.), beyond.
umbra, -ae, f., shade.
umquam, adv., ever.
unde, adv., whence.
undique, adv., from all sides, on
 all sides.
ūniversus, -a, -um, universal.
ūnus, -a, -um, one.
urbānus, -a, -um, city, town
 (adj.).
urbs, urbis, f., city.
ut, utī, adv. and conj., (so) that,
 (in order) that, when, as soon
 as.
uter, utra, utrum, which (of
 two) ?
utercumque, utracumque, utrum-
cumque, whichever (of the two).
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet,
 which (of the two) you please.
uterque, utraque, utrumque,
 each (of the two).
utervis, utravīs, utrumvis, which-
 ever (of the two) you will.
ūtilior, ūtiliōris, more useful.
ūtilis, -e, useful.
utinam, adv., O that ! would
 that !
ūtor, -i, ūsus sum, use (with
 abl.).

- utrimque**, *adv.*, on both sides.
utrum, *adv.*, whether (in direct questions not translated).
uxor, *uxōris*, *f.*, wife.
vacō, -āre, have leisure (with *abl.*).
vagor, -ārī, wander.
valeō, -ēre, **valui**, —, to be well or strong.
valētūdō, **valētūdinis**, *f.*, health.
validus, -a, -um, strong.
vallis, -is, *f.*, valley.
vallum, -ī, *n.*, rampart.
vastō, -āre, to lay waste.
vātēs, -is, *c.*, prophet.
-ve, *enclitic conj.*, or.
vectigal, **vectigālis**, *n.*, tax, tribute.
Vēii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Veii (an Italian town).
vel, or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or.
vēnātor, **vēnātōris**, *m.*, hunter.
vendō, -ere, **vendidī**, **venditum**, sell.
venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison, drug.
veneror, -ārī, worship.
venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon.
veniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventum**, come.
ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.
vēr, **vēris**, *n.*, spring.
verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.
vereor, -ērī, fear.
Vergīnius, -ī, *m.*, Verginius (a Roman).
vērīsimilis, -e, probable.
versus, -ūs, *m.*, verse.
vertō, -ere, **vertī**, **versum**, turn (*trans.*).
vērus, -a, -um, true.
vescor, -ī, —, feed on (with *abl.*).
vester, **vestra**, **vestrum**, your, yours.
vestigium, -ī, *n.*, footprint, track, trace.
vestiō, -īre, clothe.
vestis, -is, *f.*, garment.
veterānus, -a, -um, veteran.
vetō, -āre, **vetui**, **vetitum**, forbid.
vetus, **veteris**, old.
via, -ae, *f.*, way, street.
vicinus, -a, -um, neighbouring.
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.
vicus, -ī, village.
videō, -ēre, **vidī**, **vīsum**, see; *pass.*, seem.
vigil, **vigilis**, vigilant, watchful.
vigilō, -āre, to watch.
vinciō, -īre, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, bind.
vincō, -ere, **vicī**, **victum**, conquer.
vinum, -ī, *n.*, wine.
violētia, -ae, *f.*, violence.
violō, -āre, violate.
vir, **virī**, *m.*, man.
virēs, see **vīs**.
virtūs, **virtūtis**, *f.*, virtue, valour.
vīs, *acc. vim*, no *gen.* or *dat.*, *abl.* **vī**, *f.*, force, violence; *pl. virēs*, **virium**, strength.
vīsus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life.
vitium, -ī, *n.*, vice.
vītō, -āre, avoid.
vivō, -ere, **vixī**, **victum**, live.
vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, scarcely.
vocō, -āre, to call.
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, —, be willing, will.
vorō, -āre, devour.
vōs, ye, you (*pl.*).
vox, **vōcis**, *f.*, voice.
vulnerō, -āre, to wound.
vulnus, **vulneris**, *n.*, wound.
vulpēs, -is, *f.*, fox.
Zēnō, **Zēnōnis**, *m.*, Zeno (a philosopher).

II.—ENGLISH-LATIN.

- ability**, ingenium, -i, *n*.
able, be, possum, potui, —, posse.
abound, abundo, *i*.
about (of numbers), circiter (with *acc.*).
above, super, supra (with *acc.*).
absent, be, absum, afui, abesse; desum, defui, deesse.
abstain, abstineo, abstinui, abstentum, 2.
abuse, abutor, abusus sum, 3 (with *abl.*).
accompanied by, cum (with *abl.*).
accompany, comitor, *i*.
account, on — of, causā, gratiā (with *gen.*), propter (with *acc.*).
accuse, accuso, *i*; arguo, argui, argutum, 3.
accustomed, be, soleo, solitus sum, 2.
acorn, glans, glandis, *f*.
across, go, transeo, transii, transitum, transire.
 —, trans (with *acc.*).
act of violence, iniuria, -ae, *f*.
active, alacer, alacris, alacre; impiger, impigra, impigrum.
adapted, aptus, -a, -um.
administer, res administro, *i*.
admirably, egregie.
admit, confiteor, confessus sum, 2.
admonish, moneo, 2.
adorn, orno, *i*.
advance, progredior, progressus sum, 3.
adverse, adversus, -a, -um.
adversity, res adversae.
affair, res, -ei, *f*.
affect, afficio, affeci, affectum, 3.
affirm, affirmo, *i*.
after (*conj.*), postquam.
afterwards, postea.
again, iterum, rursus.
against, contra, in (with *acc.*).
age, aetas, aetatis, *f*.
aghast, be, stupeo, stupui, —, 2.
aid, auxilium, -i, *n*.
all, omnis, -e.
allegiance, fides, -ei, *f*.
allow, sino, sivi, situm, 3.
almost, paene.
alone, solus, -a, -um.
also, etiam, necnon, quoque.
altar, ara, -ae, *f*.
although, *conj.*, cum, etiamsi, etsi, licet, quamquam, quamvis.
altogether, omnino.
always, semper.
ambassador, legatus, -i, *m*.
amend, emendo, *i*.
among, apud, inter (with *acc.*).
 — themselves, inter se.
amplify, amplifico, *i*.
ancestors, maiores, -um, *m. pl.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f*.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um.
and, et, -que (enclitic).
anger, ira, -ae, *f*.
angry, be, irascor, iratus sum, 3.
animal, animal, animalis, *n*.
announce, nuntio, *i*.
annoyances, molestiae, -arum, *f. pl.*
annoying, molestus, -a, -um.
another (of several), alius, -a, -ud; —'s, alienus, -a, -um.
 — time, at, alias.
anxiety, sollicitudo, sollicitudinis, *f*.
any (*adj.*), ullus, -a, -um; qui, qua, quod.
 — you please, quilibet, quaelibet quidlibet and (*adj.*) quodlibet.
 — you will, quivis, quaevis, quidvis and (*adj.*) quodvis.
anyone, anything, quis, quid.
apathy, segnitias, -ei, *f*.
appear, appareo, 2.
appearance, conspectus, -ūs, *m*.
appoint, constituo, constitui, constitutum, 3; creo, *i*.

approach, accedo, accessi, accessum, 3; appropinquo, 1.
approve, approbo, 1; probo, 1.
ardent, acer, acris, acre.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -i, *m*.
arise, corior, coortus sum, 4; orior, ortus sum, 4.
arms, arma, -orum, *n.pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m*.
around, circa, circum (with *acc.*).
arrive, circa, circum (with *acc.*).
arrive, advenio, advēni, adventum, 4; pervenio, pervēni, perventum, 4.
arriving, be on the point of, advento, 1.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f*.
art, ars, artis, *f*.
as, like, ceu.
 — **far as**, tenus (with *abl.* or *gen.*).
 — **if**, quasi.
ascertain, comperio, comperi, compertum, 4.
ask, peto, petivi or petii, petitum, 3; rogo, 1.
assassin, sicarius, -i, *m*.
assemble, convenio, convēni, conventum, 4.
assembly, conventus, -ūs, *m*.
astray, go, erro, 1.
Athens, Athenae, -arum, *f.pl.*
attack (*verb.*), adior, adortus sum, 4; (*subst.*) impetus, -ūs, *m*.
attempt, conor, 1.
authority, auctoritas, auctoritatis, *f*.
avarice, avaritia, -ae, *f*.
avoid, vito, 1.
await, exspecto, 1.
back, tergum, -i, *n*.
 —, **go**, redeo, redii, reditum, redire.
 — **again**, rursus.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
badly, male.
baggage, impedimenta, -orum, *n.pl.*
baggage-animal, iumentum, -i, *n*.
baneful, funestus, -a, -um.

bank, ripa, -ae, *f*.
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
base, turpis, -e.
battering-ram, aries, arietis, *m*.
battle, pugna, -ae, *f*.; proelium, -i, *n*.
 —, **line of**, acies, -ei, *f*.
 — **-ship**, navis longa.
be, sum, fui, esse.
beach, subduco, subduxi, subductum, 3.
beam, trabs, trabis, *f*.
bear, fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
 — **away**, aufero, abstuli, ablatum, auferre.
 — **back**, refero, rettuli, relatum, referre.
 — **down**, defero, detuli, delatum, deferre.
bearing arms, armiger, armigera, armigerum.
beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum.
beauty, pulchritudo, pulchritudinis, *f*.
because, quia, quod.
 — **of**, ob (with *acc.*).
become, fio, factus sum, fieri.
bed, cubile, -is, *n*.
beech, fagus, -i, *f*.
before (*prep.*), ante (with *acc.*); (*conj.*) antequam, priusquam.
before (*adv.*), **beforehand**, antea.
beg, oro, 1.
began, coepi, coeptum, coepisse.
beginning, initium, -i, *n*.
behind (*adv.*), pone; (*prep.*) pone, post (with *acc.*).
behold, conspicio, conspexi, conspectum, 3; specto, 1.
behoves, it, oportet, 2.
believe, credo, credidi, creditum, 3 (with *dat.*).
below (*adv.*), infra; (*prep.*) infra (with *acc.*).
bend, flecto, flexi, flexum, 3.
beneath (*adv.*), subter; (*prep.*) sub (with *acc.* or *abl.*), subter (with *acc.*).

beneficial, be, prosum, profui, prodesse.

—, salutaris, -e.

benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um.

beseech, oro, 1.

beseems, it, decet, 2.

besiege, obsideo, obsedi, obses-sum, 2; oppugno, 1.

bestow praise on, collaudo, 1.

betray, trado, tradidi, traditum, 3.

betray, proditor, proditoris, *m.*

betrothed, sponsus, -i, *m.*

better, melior, melioris.

between, inter (with *acc.*).

bewail, ploro, 1.

beware, caveo, cāvi, cautum, 2.

beyond, *adv.*, ultra; *prep.* (except), praeter (with *acc.*); (situated beyond) ultra (with *acc.*).

bid, iubeo, iussi, iussum, 2.

bind, vincio, vinxi, vinctum, 4.

bird, avis, -is, *f.*

bite, mordeo, momordi, morsum, 2.

bitterly resent, aegre fero.

black, niger, nigra, nigrum.

blame (*subst.*), culpa, -ae, *f.*; (*verb*) culpo, 1.

blush, rubeo, rubui, —, 2.

boar, wild, aper, apri, *m.*

boast, glorior, 1.

boastful, gloriosus, -a, -um.

body, corpus, corporis, *n.*

bold, audax, audacis.

boldly, audacter.

boldness, audacia, -ae, *f.*

bone, os, ossis, *n.*

book, liber, libri, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*

bordering on, finitimus, -a, -um.

born, be, nascor, natus sum, 3.

both, ambo, -ae, -o; **on**—sides, utrimque.

bow, arcus, -ūs, *m.*

boy, puer, pueri, *m.*

branch, ramus, -i, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

break down, dirimo, diremi, diremptum, 3.

—**into**, irrumpo, irrupi, irrump-tum, 3.

—**out**, erumpo, erupi, eruptum, 3.

bribery, ambitus, -ūs, *m.*

bridge, pons, pontis, *m.*

brief, brevis, -e.

briefly, breviter.

bring, adduco, adduxi, adductum, 3; affero, attuli, allatum, afferre.

—**about**, efficio, effeci, effectum, 3.

—**back**, reporto, 1.

—**in**, infero, intuli, illatum, inferre.

—**forth**, pario, peper, partum, 3.

—**together**, confero, contuli, collatum, conferre.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

bronze, aes, aeris, *n.*

brother, frater, fratris, *m.*

build, to, aedifico, 1.

building, aedificium, -i, *n.*

bull, taurus, -i, *m.*

burden, onus, oneris, *n.*

—**-bearing**, onerarius, -a, -um.

burdensome, molestus, -a, -um.

burn (*trans.*), comburo, combussi, combustum, 3; cremo, 1; incendo, incendi, incensum, 3.

bury, sepelio, sepelevi, sepultum, 4.

but, at, autem (to be placed after the first word), sed.

butcher, trucidō, 1.

buy, emo, ēmi, emptum, 3.

by (of agent), a, ab (with *abl.*).

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m.*

calamity, calamitas, calamitatis, *f.*

call, voco, 1; appello, 1.

—**back**, revoco, 1.

—**together**, convoco, 1.

camp, castra, -orum, *n. pl.*

can, possum, potui, —, posse.

- captive**, captivus, -i, *m.*
care, take, curo, *i.*
carpenter, faber, fabri, *m.*
carry, porto, *i.*
— off, abripio, abripui, abreptum, *3.*
— on, administro, *i.*
Carthage, Carthago, Carthaginis, *f.*
Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um.
Catiline, Catilina, -ae, *m.*
Cato, Cato, Catonis, *m.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, equitatus, -ūs; *pl. of* eques, equitis, *m.*; (*adj.*) equester, equestris, equestre.
cave, spelunca, -ae, *f.*
celebrate, celebros, *i.*
certain (sure), certus, -a, -um.
certain (person or thing), quidam, quaedam, quiddam and (*adj.*) quoddam.
chain, catena, -ae, *f.*
chance, casus, ūs, *m.*
character (written), littera, -ae, *f.*; (personal) mores, morum, *m. pl.*
charge (military phrase), impetum facio.
chariot, currus, -ūs, *m.*
charioteer, auriga, -ac, *m.*
chastise, castigo, *i.*
cheer (*verb*), confirmo, *i.*; (*subst.*) clamor, clamoris, *m.*
cheerful, alacer, alacris, alacre.
chief, princeps, principis, *c.*
children, liberi, -orum, *m.*
Cicero, Cicero, Ciceronis, *m.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, civis, -is, *c.*
city (*subst.*), urbs, urbis, *f.*; (*adj.*) urbanus, -a, -um.
close (*adv.*), iuxta; close by (*prep.*), iuxta (with *acc.*).
clothe, vestio, *4.*
cloud, nubes, -is, *f.*
cold (*adj.*), frigidus, -a, -um; (*subst.*) frigus, frigoris, *n.*
collect, cogo, coegi, coactum, *3.*
Colline, Collinus, -a, -um.
come, venio, vēni, ventum, *4.*
command (*verb*), impero, *i.* (with *dat.*); (*subst.*) iussum, -i, *n.*
— of, be in, praesum, praefui, praeesse (with *dat.*).
commit (*crime*), admitto, admisi, admissum, *3.*
comrade, commilito, commilitonis, *m.*
concerning, de (with *abl.*).
concerns, it, rēfert, rēferre, rettulit.
condemn, condemno, *i.*
condition, condicio, condicionis, *f.*
confess, confiteor, confessus sum, *2.*
confident, be, confido, confisus sum, *3.*
conquer, vinco, vici, victum, *3.*
consent, concedo, concessi, concessum, *3.*
consider, habeo, *2.*; puto, *i.*
conspire, coniuro, *i.*
construct, exstruo, exstruxi, exstructum, *3.*; (a trench) perduco, perduxī, perductum, *3.*
consul, consul, consulis, *m.*
consult the interests of, consulo, consului, consultum, *3.* (with *dat.*).
consume, consumo, consumpsi, consumptum, *3.*
contain, contineo, continui, contentum, *2.*
contest, certamen, certaminis, *n.*
control, coerceo, *2.*
conversation, sermo, sermonis, *m.*
Corinth, Corinthus, -i, *f.*
corn, frumentum, -i, *n.*
corpse, cadaver, cadaveris, *n.*
correct, emendo, *i.*
corrupt, pravus, -a, -um.
cough, tussis, -is, *f.*
council, concilium, -i, *n.*; conventus, -ūs, *m.*; hold a — conventum ago.
counsel, consilium, -i, *n.*
count, numero, *i.*

country (native land), patria, -ae, *f.*; (opposed to town) rus, ruris, *n.*; (*adj.*) rusticus, -a, -um.
 course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*; hold on one's —, cursum tenēre.
 cowardice, ignavia, -ae, *f.*
 cowardly, ignavus, -a, -um.
 craft, fraus, fraudis, *f.*
 Crassus, Crassus, -i, *m.*
 create, creo, *i.*
 credible, credibilis, -c.
 creditor, creditor, creditoris, *m.*
 cremate, cremo, *i.*
 crime, scelus, sceleris, *n.*; commit a —, scelus admitto, admisi, admissum, 3.
 crowd, turba, -ae, *f.*
 cruel, crudelis, -e.
 cultivate, colo, colui, cultum, 3.
 cup, poculum, -i, *n.*
 curb, coerceo, 2.
 curved, curvus, -a, -um.
 custom, mos, moris, *m.*
 cut off, intercludo, interclusi, interclusum, 3.
 daily, cottidie.
 dance, salto, *i.*
 danger, periculum, -i, *n.*
 dangerous, perniciosus, -a, -um.
 dare, audeo, ausus sum, 2.
 dash, affligo, afflixi, afflictum, 3.
 daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*
 day, dies, -ei, *m.* or (in *sing.*) *f.*
 dead body, cadaver, cadaveris, *n.*
 dear, carus, -a, -um.
 death, mors, mortis, *f.*
 debt, aes alienum, aeris alieni, *n.*
 declare, declaro, *i.*
 dedicate, dedico, *i.*
 deed, factum, -i, *n.*
 deep, profundus, -a, -um.
 deeply, graviter.
 defend, tueor, 2.
 delay, moror (*trans.* and *intrans.*), *i.*
 deliberate, delibero, *i.*
 delicate, tener, tenera, tenerum.
 delight, delecto, *i.*
 delights, it, iuvat, iūvit, *i.*

deny, nego, *i.*
 depart, discedo, discessi, discessum, 3.
 deplore, deploro, *i.*
 depth, altitudo, altitudinis, *f.*
 descend, descendo, descendi, descendsum, 3.
 desert, desero, deserui, desertum, 3.
 deserve, mereo, 2.
 design, consilium, -i, *n.*
 desire (*subst.*), cupido, cupidinis, *f.*; (*verb*) cupio, cupivi, cupitum, 3; desidero, *i.*
 desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
 despise, contemno, contempsi, contemptum, 3.
 destroy, dirimo, diremi, diremptum, 3; deleo, delevi, deletum, 2.
 devote oneself to, studeo, studui (with *dat.*).
 devour, voro, *i.*
 die, morior, mortuus sum, 3; e vita excedo, excessi, excessum, 3; obeo, obii, obitum, obire.
 difficult, difficilis, -e.
 difficulty, with, vix.
 dignity, dignitas, dignitatis, *f.*
 diligence, diligentia, -ae, *f.*
 din, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
 disadvantageous, iniquus, -a, -um.
 disaster, clades, -is, *f.*
 disband, dimitto, dimisi, dimissum, 3.
 discharge (an office), fungor, functus sum, 3 (with *abl.*).
 disciple, discipulus, -i, *m.*
 discourse, sermo, sermonis, *m.*
 disease, morbus, -i, *m.*
 disgrace, dedecus, dedecoris, *n.*
 disgusts, it, taedet, 2.
 dishonourable, improbus, -a, -um.
 dismay, perturbo, *i.*
 displease, displiceo, 2 (with *dat.*).
 disposition, ingenium, -i, *n.*
 distant, be, disto, —, —, *i.*
 distinguished, magnificus, -a, -um.

- distress**, excrucio, 1.
distribute, distribuo, distribui, distributum, 3.
divide, divido, divisi, divisum, 3 ; partior, 4.
do, facio, feci, factum, 3.
doctor, medicus, -i, *m.*
dog, canis, -is, *c.*
doubt, dubito, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, *f.*
down from, de (with *abl.*).
draw, educo, eduxi, eductum, 3.
 — **up**, instruo, instruxi, instructum, 3.
drink, bibo, bibi, —, 3.
drive, ago, egi, actum, 3 ; pello, pepuli, pulsum, 3.
 — **forward**, incito, 1.
 — **out**, expello, expuli, expulsum, 3.
drug, venenum, -i, *n.*
dry, siccus, -a, -um.
dutiful, pius, -a, -um.
duty, officium, -i, *n.*
 dwell, incolo, incolui, incultum, 3.
each, quisque, quaeque, quidque and (*adj.*) quodque.
 — (of the two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
earlier (*adv.*), maturius.
earth, tellus, telluris, *f.* ; terra, -ae, *f.*
earthwork, agger, aggeris, *m.*
ease, otium, -i, *n.*
easy, facilis, -e.
egg, ovum, -i, *n.*
either . . . or, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.
eldest, natus maximus, -a, -um.
election, comitia, -orum, *n. pl.* ; hold an —, comitia habeo, 2.
eloquence, eloquentia, -ae, *f.*
eloquent, disertus, -a, -um ; eloquens, eloquentis.
elsewhere, alibi.
embassy, legatio, legationis, *f.*
embrace (*verb*), amplector, amplexus sum, 3 ; (*subst.*) complexus, -ūs, *m.*
empire, imperium, -i, *n.*
end (*verb*), finio, 4 ; (*subst.*) finis, -is, *m.*
endure, subeo, subii, subitum, subire ; suffero, sustuli, sublatum, sufferre.
enemy (public), hostis, -is, *c.* ; (private) inimicus, -i, *m.*
energetic, alacer, alacris, alacre.
enjoy, fruor, fructus sum, 3 (with *abl.*).
enmity, inimicitia, -ae, *f.*
enough, satis.
enrol, conscribo, conscripsi, conscriptum, 3.
enter, intro, 1.
entrust, permitto, permisi, permissum, 3.
envious, be, see **envy**.
envy, invideo, invidi, inisum, 2 (with *dat.*).
equestrian, equester, equestris, equestre.
escape, effugio, effūgi, —, 3 ; elabor, elapsus sum, 3.
especially, praesertim.
esteem, diligo, dilexi, dilectum, 3 ; facio, feci, factum, 3 (with *gen.*).
even if, etiamsi, etsi.
ever, umquam.
every, omnis, -e.
everybody, see **everyone**.
everyone, omnes, -ium.
example, exemplum, -i, *n.*
excel, supero, 1.
excellent, praestans, praestantis.
excellently, optime.
excite, incito, 1.
exercise, exerceo, 2.
exhaust, exhaurio, exhausti, exhaustum, 4.
exhort, cohortor, 1 ; hortor, 1.
exile, exul, exulis, *m.*
experienced, peritus, -a, -um.
exploits, res gestae, rerum gestarum, *f.*

- extend**, amplifico, *1*.
extinguish, exstinguo, extinxi, exstinctum, *3*.
extraordinary, eximius, -a, -um.
eye, oculus, -i, *m*.
face, facies, -ei, *f*.
— to face, coram (with *abl.*).
fail, deficio, defeci, defectum, *3*.
faith, fides, -ei, *f*.
faithful, fidelis, -e.
fall, cado, cecidi, casum, *3*; concido, concidi, —, *3*.
— away, deficio, defeci, defectum, *3*.
— in with, occurro, occurri, occursum, *3* (with *dat.*).
false, falsus, -a, -um.
fame, fama, -ae, *f*.
famous, clarus, -a, -um.
far, longe, procul; **too—**, longius; **— from**, procul (with *abl.*).
farther (*adv.*), longius; (*adj.*) ulterior, ulterioris.
farthest, ultimus, -a, -um.
fasten, deligo, *1*.
fat, pinguis, -e.
fatal, mortifer, mortifera, mortiferum.
father, pater, patris, *m*.
father-in-law, socer, soceri, *m*.
fatigue, defatigo, *1*.
favour, gratia, -ae, *f*.
favourable, be, faveo, fāvi, fautum, *2*.
fear (*verb*), timeo, timui, —, *2*; vereor, *2*; (*subst.*) timor, timoris, *m*.
feed on, vescor, — (with *abl.*).
feign, fingo, finxi, fictum, *3*.
few, pauci, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agri, *m*.
fierce, acer, acris, acre.
fiercely, ferociter.
fight, pugno, *1*; **— a pitched battle**, dimico, *1*.
find, invenio, invēni, inventum, *4*; reperio, repperi, repertum, *4*.
finish, conficio, confeci, confectum, *3*; finio, *4*.
fire, ignis, -is, *m*.; incendium, -i, *n*.
first, primus, -a, -um.
fit, aptus, -a, -um.
flame, flamma, -ae, *f*.
flash of lightning, fulgur, fulguris, *n*.
flattery, adulatio, adulationis, *f*.
flee, fugio, fugi, fugitum, *3*.
fleet, classis, -is, *f*.
flesh, caro, carnis, *f*.
flight, fuga, -ae, *f*.; **put to —** fugo, *1*; **take to —**, pedem refero, rettuli, relatum, referre.
flock, grex, gregis, *m*.
flourish, floreo, florui, —, *2*.
flourishing, opulentus, -a, -um.
flow down, defluo, defluxi, defluxum, *3*.
flower, flos, floris, *m*.
foe, hostis, -is, *c*.
follow, sequor, secutus sum, *3*; **— up**, persequor, persecutus sum, *3*; insequor, insecutus, sum, *3*.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
folly, stultitia, -ae, *f*.
food, cibus, -i, *m*.
foolish, stultus, -a, -um.
foot, pes, pedis, *m*.; **to the — of**, sub (with *acc.*).
footprint, vestigium, -i, *n*.
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, *m*.
forage, pabulum, *1*.
forbid, veto, vetui, vetitum, *1*; prohibeo, *2*.
force, vis, *acc.* vim, no *gen.* or *dat.*, *abl.* vi, *f*.
forces, copiae, -arum, *f*.
foreseeing, providens, providentis; providus, -a, -um.
forget, obliviscor, oblitus sum, *3* (with *gen.* or *acc.*).
former, prior, prioris; pristinus, -a, -um.
formerly, quondam.
fortify, munio, *4*.
fortunate, felix, felicitis; **more—**, felicius, felicioris.
fortune, fortuna, -ae, *f*.

- fountain**, fons, fontis, *m.*
fox, vulpes, -is, *f.*
fraud, fraus, fraudis, *f.*
free (*adj.*), liber, libera, liberum ;
 (*verb*) libero, *i.*
friend, amicus, -i, *m.*
friendly, amicus, -a, -um.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, perturbo, *i.*
frog, rana, -ae, *f.*
from, a, ab (with *abl.*) ; e, ex
 (with *abl.*).
fruit, fructus, -ūs, *m.*
— bearing, frugifer, frugifera,
 frugiferum.
full, plenus, -a, -um.
fully, copiose.
furnish, praebeo, *2.*
further, longius.
Gabii, Gabii, -orum, *m. pl.*
Gades, Gades, -ium, *f. pl.*
gain, pario, peperī, partum, *3.*
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
game, lusus, -ūs, *m.*
garden, hortus, -i, *m.*
garland, corona, -ae, *f.*
garment, vestis, -is, *f.*
garrison, praesidium, -i, *n.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.* ; foris, -is,
 f.
Gaul, a, Gallus, -i, *m.*
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*
generation, aetas, aetatis, *f.*
genius, ingenium, -i, *n.*
German, Germanus, -a, -um.
get, nanciscor, nactus sum, *3.*
gift, donum, -i, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, do, dedi, datum, dare.
 — (as a present), dono, *1.*
 — **orders**, impero, *1* (with *dat.*).
go, eo, ivi or ii, itum, ire.
 — **across**, transeo, transii, tran-
 situm, transire.
 — **back**, redeo, redii, reditum,
 redire.
 — **forth**, prodeco, prodii, prodi-
 tum, prodire.
go past, praetereo, praeterii,
 praeteritum, praeterire.
 — **up to**, subeo, subii, subitum,
 subire.
goblet, poculum, -i, *n.*
god, a, deus, -i, *m.*
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*
gold, aurum, -i, *n.*
good (*adj.*), bonus, -a, -um ;
 (*subst.*) bonum, -i, *n.* ; **goods**,
 bona, -orum, *n.*
 —, **do**, prosum, profui, prodesse.
goodwill, benevolentia, -ae, *f.*
goose, anser, anseris, *m.*
govern, rego, rexi, rectum, *3.*
gradually, paulatim.
grandfather, avus, -i, *m.*
great, magnus, -a, -um ; (**as**—)
 as, quantus, -a, -um ; **very**—,
 permagnus, -a, -um ; **how**— ?
 quantus, -a, -um ; **so**—, tan-
 tus, -a, -um.
greater, maior, maioris.
greatest, maximus, -a, -um ;
 (with an abstract substantive)
 summus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
greedy, avidus, -a, -um ; cupi-
 dus, -a, -um ; rapax, rapacis.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
grey, glaucus, -a, -um.
grief, dolor, doloris, *m.*
grieve, dolco, *2.*
guard (*subst.*), custos, custodis,
 m. ; (*verb*) custodio, *4.*
guile, fraus, fraudis, *f.*
hails, it, grandinat, *1.*
halt, consisto, constitui, constit-
 um, *3.*
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
 — **over**, trado, tradidi, tradi-
 tum, *3.*
handle, tracto, *1.*
Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibalis,
 m.
happen, evenio, evēni, eventum, *4.*
happens, it, accidit, accidit, *3* ;
 contingit, contingit, *3.*

happier, *felicior, felicioris.*

happy, *felix, felicitis.*

harbour, *portus, -ūs, m.*

harm, be **harmful**, *obsum, obfui, obesse.*

—, **to do**, *noceo, 2 (with dat.).*

harsh, *asper, aspera, asperum.*

harvest, *messis, -is, f.*

hasten, *contendo, contendere, contentum, 3; festino, 1.*

hate, *odi, odisse.*

haul up on shore, *subduco, subduxi, subductum, 3.*

have, *habeo, 2.*

— **leisure**, *vaco, 1.*

he, she, it, is, ea, id.

head, *caput, capitis, n.*

headlong, *praeceps, praecipitis.*

health, *valetudo, valetudinis, f.*

hear, *audio, 4.*

heart, *cor, cordis, n.*

heat, *ardor, ardoris, m.*

heaven, *caelum, -i, n.*

heavily, *graviter.*

heavy, *gravis, -e.*

height, *altitudo, altitudinis, f.*

heir, *heres, heredis, c.*

help, *auxilium, -i, n.*

helpless, *inops, inopis.*

here, *hic.*

hesitate, *dubito, 1.*

hide, *abdo, abdidi, abditum, 3; lateo, latui, —, 2.*

high, *altus, -a, -um.*

higher, *superior, superioris.*

highest, *summus, -a, -um; supermus, -a, -um.*

hill, *collis, -is, m.*

himself (*reflexive*), *se or sese.*

hinder, *prohibeo, 2.*

his (the possessor being the subject), *suus, -a, -um; otherwise eius.*

hither (*adj.*), *citerior, citerioris; (adv.) huc.*

hold, *teneo, tenui, tentum, 2.*

home, **at**, *domi; home (i.e. homewards), domum.*

honour, *honoro, 1.*

hope (*verb*), *spero, 1; (subst.) spes, -ei, f.*

Horace, *Horatius, -i, m.*

horn, *cornu, -ūs, n.*

horse, *equus, -i, m.*

— **soldier**, *eques, equitis, m.*

hostage, *obses, obsidis, c.*

hostile, *inimicus, -a, -um.*

hostility, *inimicitia, -ae, f.*

hour, *hora, -ae, f.*

house, *domus, -ūs, f. (abl. sing. domo).*

household, *familia, -ae, f.*

how? *quomodo.*

— **great?** *quantus, -a, -um.*

— **many?** *quot, indecl.*

however (to be placed after the first word), *autem.*

human, *humanus, -a, -um.*

hunter, *venator, venatoris, m.*

hurl, *iacto, 1.*

hurtful, *noxius, -a, -um.*

husband, *maritus, -i, m.*

husbandman, *agricola, -ae, m.*

I, *ego.*

if, *si.*

ignorance concerning, keep in, *celo, 1.*

ill, *aeger, aegra, aegrum.*

—, **to be**, *aegroto, 1.*

illustrious, *clarus, -a, -um.*

immediately, *statim.*

immense, *ingens, ingentis.*

immortal, *immortalis, -e.*

importance to, it is of, interest, *interfuit, interesse.*

impulse, *impulsus, -ūs, m.*

impunity, with, *impune.*

in, in (with *abl.*).

—, **be, insum, infui, inesse.**

— **the midst, be, intersum, interfui, interesse.**

increase (*trans.*), *augeo, auxi, auctum, 2.*

indignation, *dolor, doloris, m.*

indolent, *ignavus, -a, -um.*

indulge, be indulgent, indulge, *indulsi, indultum, 2 (with dat.).*

infamy, *dedecus, dedecoris, n.*

- infantry**, *pl.* of *pedes*, *peditis*, *m.*
influence, *auctoritas*, *auctori-*
tatis, *f.*
information, *get*, *certior fio.*
inhabit, *habito*, *1.*
inhabitant, *incola*, -*ae*, -*um*, *c.*
initiative, *impulsus*, -*ūs*, *m.*
injure, *noceo*, 2 (with *dat.*).
injury, *iniuria*, -*ae*, *f.*
inmost, *intimus*, -*a*, -*um*.
inner, *interior*, *interioris*.
innocent, *insons*, *insontis*.
instigate, *solicito*, 1.
interrogate, *interrogo*, 1.
into, *in* (with *acc.*).
invade, *invado*, *invasi*, *invasum*, 3.
iron, *ferrum*, -*i*, *n.*
island, *insula*, -*ae*, *f.*
Italy, *Italia*, -*ae*, *f.*
javelin, *telum*, -*i*, *n.*
join, *iungo*, *iunxi*, *iunctum*, 3.
journey, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*
joy, *gaudium*, -*i*, *n.*
judge, *iudex*, *iudicis*, *m.*
keen, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.
keep, *custodio*, 4 ;—**in a place**,
contineo, *continui*, *contentum*,
2.
key, *clavis*, -*is*, *f.*
kill, *exanimo*, 1 ; *interficio*, *inter-*
feci, *interfectum*, 3 ; *neco*, 1.
kind, of such a, *talis*, -*e*.
—, of what? *qualis*, -*e*.
king, *rex*, *regis*, *m.*
kingdom, *regnum*, -*i*, *n.*
knee, *genu*, -*ūs*, *n.*
know, *scio*, 4 ; **not**—, *ignoro*, 1 ;
nescio, 4.
—, **get to**, *cognosco*, *cognovi*,
cognitum, 3.
knowledge of, without the, *clam*
(with *acc.*).
known, *notus*, -*a*, -*um*.
Labienus, *Labienus*, -*i*, *m.*
labour, *labor*, *laboris*, *m.*; *laboro*, 1.
lacking in, be, *deficio*, *defeci*,
defectum, 3 (with *abl.*).
lair, *cubile*, -*is*, *n.*
lamb, *agnus*, -*i*, *m.*
lament, *deploro*, 1.
land, *expono*, *exposui*, *exposi-*
tum, 3 (*trans.*).
language, *lingua*, -*ae*, *f.*
large, *magnus*, -*a*, -*um*.
last, *extremus*, -*a*, -*um* ; *post-*
remus, -*a*, -*um* ; *ultimus*, -*a*,
-*um*.
later, *posterior*, *posterioris*.
latest-born, *postumus*, -*a*, -*um*.
Latin, *Latinus*, -*a*, -*um*.
launch, *deduco*, *deduxi*, *educt-*
um, 3.
law, *lex*, *legis*, *f.*
lead, *duco*, *dux*, *ductum*, 3.
— **back**, *reduco*, *reduxi*, *reduct-*
um, 3.
— **out**, *educo*, *eduxi*, *eductum*, 3.
leader, *dux*, *ducis*, *m.*
leaf, *folium*, -*i*, *n.*
learn by heart, *edisco*, *edidici*, —, 3.
learned, *doctus*, -*a*, -*um*.
learning, *eruditio*, *eruditionis*, *f.*
least, *minimus*, -*a*, -*um*.
leave, *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relic-*
tum, 3.
left, be, *supersum*, *superfui*, *su-*
peresse.
—, **on the left hand**, *laevus*, -*a*,
-*um* ; **the left hand**, *laeva*, -*ae*,
f. (*sc. manus*).
leg, *crus*, *cruris*, *n.*
legion, *legio*, *legionis*, *f.*
leisure, *have*, *vaco*, 1.
length, at, *demum*, *tum demum*.
less, *minor*, *minoris*.
lest, *ne*.
letter (*character*), *littera*, -*ae*, *f.* ;
(*epistle*) *epistola*, -*ae*, *f.* ;
litterae, -*arum*, *f. pl.*
levy, *delectus*, -*ūs*, *m.*
liberal, *liberalis*, -*e*.
liberty, *libertas*, *libertatis*, *f.*
lie, lie dead, *iaceo*, 2.
lieutenant, *legatus*, -*i*, *m.*
life, *vita*, -*ae*, *f.*
light-armed, *expeditus*, -*a*, -*um*.
lightning, flash of, *fulgur*, *ful-*
guris, *n.*

- like**, *similis*, -e.
 — **as**, *ceu*.
lily, *lilium*, -i, *n*.
line of battle, *acies*, -ei, *f*.
linger, *commoror*, *i*.
lion, *leo*, *leonis*, *m*.
literature, *litterae*, -arum, *f.pl.*
little, *parvus*, -a, -um.
 — **while**, *for a*, *parumper*.
live, *vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, 3.
load, *onero*, *i*.
lofty, *arduus*, -a, -um.
long (*adj.*), *longus*, -a, -um ;
 (*adv.*), *diu*.
 — **as**, *as*, *dum*.
 — **for**, *desidero*, *i*.
look at, *specto*, *i*.
 — **down on**, *despicio*, *despexi*,
despectum, 3.
loosen, *solvo*, *solvi*, *solutum*, 3.
loquacious, *loquax*, *loquacis*.
lord, *dominus*, -i, *m*.
love (*verb*), *amo*, *i* ; (*subst.*) *amor*
amoris, *m*.
lover, *sponsus*, -i, *m*.
low, *humilis*, -e.
lower, *inferior*, *inferioris*.
lowest, *imus*, -a, -um.
loyalty, *fides*, -ei, *f*.
made, *be*, *fio*, *factus sum*, *fieri*.
magnificent, *magnificus*, -a, -um.
make, *facio*, *feci*, *factum*, 3.
 — **war upon**, *bellum infero*,
intuli, *illatum*, *inferre*.
male, *mas*, *maris*, *m*.
man, *vir*, *vir*, *m*. ; (*person*)
homo, *hominis*, *c*. ; **to a man**,
ad unum.
manage, *administro*, *i*.
manner, *modus*, -i, *m*. ; *mos*,
moris, *m*.
man-of-war, *navis longa*.
many, *multi*, -ae, -a.
 — **how** ? *quot*, *indecl.*
march, *iter*, *itineris*, *n*.
Marcus, *Marcus*, -i, *m*.
market-place, *forum*, -i, *n*.
Mars, *Mars*, *Martis*, *m*.
Marseilles, *Massilia*, -ae, *f*.
marsh, *palus*, -udis, *f*.
master, *dominus*, -i, *m*. ; *magis-*
ter, *magistri*, *m*.
meanwhile, *interea*, *interim*.
measure out, *metior*, *mensus*
sum, 4.
meditate, *cogito*, *i*.
mendacious, *mendax*, *mendacis*.
merchant, *mercator*, *mercatoris*,
m.
 — **vessel**, *navis oneraria*.
merit, *mereo*, 2.
messenger, *nuntius*, -i, *m*.
middle, *medius*, -a, -um.
midst, *be in the*, *intersum*, *inter-*
fui, *interesse*.
milk, *lac*, *lactis*, *n*.
mind, *animus*, -i, *m*.
mindful, *memor*, *memoris*.
mine, *meus*, -a, -um.
misheseems, *it*, *dedecet*, 2.
mistaken, *be*, *erro*, *i*.
mitigate, *mollio*, 4.
money, *aes*, *aeris*, *n*. ; *argentum*,
-i, *n*.
 — **sum of money**, *pecunia*, -ae, *f*.
moon, *luna*, -ae, *f*.
morals, *mores*, *morum*, *m*.
more, *plus*, *pluris* (*subst.*) ; *pl.*
plures, *plura* (*adj.* and *subst.*) ;
adv., *plus*.
mortal, *mortifer*, *mortifera*, *mor-*
tiferum.
mother, *mater*, *matris*, *f*.
mountain, *mons*, *montis*, *m*.
move (*trans.*), *moveo*, *mōvi*,
motum, 2 ; *admoveo*, *admōvi*,
admotum, 2 ; *commoveo*, *com-*
mōvi, *commotum*, 2 ; (*in-*
trans.), *moveor*.
much, *multus*, -a, -um.
multitude, *multitudo*, *multi-*
tudinis, *f*.
my, *meus*, -a, -um.
name, *nomen*, *nominis*, *n*.
narrate, *narro*, *i*.
narrowness, *angustiae*, -arum,
f.pl.
native land, *patria*, -ae, *f*.

near (*adj.*), finitimus, -a, -um ;
(*adv.*) prope ; (*prep.*) prope,
propter (with *acc.*).

nearer, citior, citioris ; pro-
pior, propioris.

nearest, proximus, -a, -um.

need, there is, opus est (with *abl.*
of the thing needed) ; **be in** —
of, egeo, egui, — 2 (with *abl.* or
gen.).

needle, acus, -ūs, *f.*

needy, egenus, -a, -um ; **he** —,
egeo, egui, — 2.

neglectful, be, desum, defui,
deesse.

neighbouring, vicinus, -a, -um.

neither, neuter, neutra, neut-
rum ; **neither . . . nor**, nec . . .
nec, neque . . . neque.

Neptune, Neptunus, -i, *m.*

nest, nidus, -i, *m.*

net, rete, -is, *n.*

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

next, proximus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis *f.*

— **by**, noctu.

nightly, nocturnus, -a, -um.

no, none, nullus, -a, -um.

no one, nemo, *acc.* neminem, *dat.*
nemini (*gen.* and *abl.* supplied
by nullus).

nobly-born, nobilis, -e.

nor, nec, neque.

nose, nasus, -i, *m.*

not, non, ne ; (*interrog.*) nonne.

— **and**, nec.

— **even**, ne . . . quidem.

— **yet**, nondum.

nothing, nihil, *indecl.*, *n.*

now, nunc, (by this time) iam.

number, numerus, -i, *m.*

O that ! utinam.

oak, quercus, -ūs, *f.*

obey, obtempero, 1 (with *dat.*) ;
pareo, 2 (with *dat.*).

observe, conspicio, conspexi, con-
spectum, 3 ; servo, 1.

obtain, adipiscor, adeptus sum, 3.
offer, offero, obtuli, oblatum,
offerre.

often, saepe ; **more** —, saepius ;
very —, saepissime.

old, vetus, veteris.

— **age**, senectus, senectutis, *f.*

— **man**, senex, senis, *m.*

older, senior, senioris.

once, semel.

— **at**, statim.

one, unus, -a, -um.

— **from another**, inter se.

— **the** (of two), alter, altera,
alterum ; (of several) alius, -a,
-ud.

only, solum.

open (*trans.*), aperio, aperui,
apertum, 4.

openly, palam.

opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*

opportunity, facultas, facultatis,
f. ; occasio, occasionis, *f.*

opposite (*prep.*), adversum, ad-
versus, contra (with *acc.*).

opulent, opulentus, -a, -um.

or, aut, vel, -ve (enclitic) ; (in
double questions) an ; **either**
. . . or, aut . . . aut, vel . . . vel.

oration, oratio, orationis, *f.*

orator, orator, oratoris, *m.*

order, iussum, -i, *n.*

orders, to give, impero, 1.

other, the (of two), alter, altera,
alterum.

otherwise, aliter.

ought, debeo, 2.

our, ours, noster, nostra, nostrum.

out of, e, ex (with *abl.*).

outer, exterior, exterioris.

outside, exterus, -a, -um.

— **of**, extra (with *acc.*).

overcome, supero, 1.

overhang, immineo, —, —, 2.

overwhelm, opprimo, oppressi,
oppressum, 3.

owe, debeo, 2.

pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*

pain, dolor, doloris, *m.*

pains, it, piget, 2.
 pale, be, palleo, pallui, —, 2.
 panic, pavor, pavoris, *m.*; strike with —, perterreo, 2.
 pardon, venia, -ae, *f.*
 parent, parens, parentis, *c.*
 Paris, Lutetia, -ae, *f.*
 parley, colloquor, collocutus sum, 3.
 part, pars, partis, *f.*
 past, praeteritus, -a, -um.
 —, go, praetereo, praeterii, praeteritum, praeterire.
 pay, solvo, solvi, solutum, 3.
 peace, pax, pacis, *f.*
 people, populus, -i, *m.*
 perfidious, perfidus, -a, -um.
 perish, pereo, perii, peritum, perire.
 permitted, it is, licet, 2.
 pernicious, perniciosus, -a, -um.
 persist in, sto, steti, statum, 1 (with *abl.*).
 person, homo, hominis, *c.*
 persuade, persuadeo, persuasi, persuasum, 2.
 physician, medicus, -i, *m.*
 pillage, diripio, diripui, direptum, 3; spolio, 1.
 pilot, gubernator, gubernatoris, *m.*
 pirate, praedo, praedonis, *m.*
 pitch, pono, posui, positum, 3.
 pity, it moves to, miseret, 2.
 place (*subst.*), locus, -i, *m.*; (*verb*) colloco, 1; pono, posui, positum, 3.
 plain, planities, -ei, *f.*
 plan, consilium, -i, *n.*
 play, ludo, lusi, lusum, 3.
 pleasant, amoenus, -a, -um.
 please, placeo, 2 (with *dat.*).
 —, any you, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet and (*adj.*) quodlibet.
 please, it, delectat, 1; libet, 2.
 pleasing, gratus, -a, -um.
 plentifully, copiose.
 plough, aro, 1.
 poem, carmen, carminis, *n.*

poet, poeta, -ae, *m.*
 point of arriving, be on the, advento, 1.
 — out, indico, 1.
 poison, venenum, -i, *n.*
 polish (in manners, etc.), erudio, 4.
 Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, *m.*
 poor, pauper, pauperis.
 position, take up a, consisto, constitui, constitum, 3.
 possession of, get, potior, 4 (with *abl.*).
 post, statio, stationis, *f.*
 power of, in the, penes (with *acc.*)
 powerful, potens, potentis.
 praise (*verb*), laudo, 1; (*subst.*) laus, laudis, *f.*
 prefer, malo, malui, —, malle.
 preferable, satius.
 prepare, paro, 1; comparo, 1.
 presence of, in the, apud (with *acc.*); coram (with *abl.*); palam (with *abl.*).
 present, be, adsum, adfui, adesse.
 preserve, conservo, 1.
 pretence, species, -ei, *f.*
 prevent, obsto, obstiti, obstatum, 1.
 previous, superior, superioris.
 priest, sacerdos, sacerdotis, *c.*
 prison, carcer, carceris, *m.*
 probable, verisimilis, -e.
 proclaim, pronuntio, 1.
 promise, polliceor, 2; spondeo, spocondi, sponsum, 2.
 property, bona, -orum, *n. pl.*
 prophet, vates, -is, *c.*
 prosperity, res prosperac.
 prosperous, prosperus, -a, -um.
 protract, produco, produxi, productum, 3.
 provide, suppedito, 1.
 province, provincia, -ae, *f.*
 prow, prora, -ae, *f.*
 prudent, prudens, prudentis.
 punish, punio, 4.
 punishment, supplicium, -i, *n.*
 pupil, discipulus, -i, *m.*
 purpose, consilium, -i, *n.*; on — consulto.

- pursue**, insequor, insecutus sum, 3; persequor, persecutus sum, 3.
pursuit, studium, -i, *n*.
put, colloco, 1.
 — **out**, expono, exposui, expositum, 3.
queen, regina, -ae, *f*.
question, interrogo, 1.
quit, egredior, egressus sum, 3.
rains, it, pluit, pluit, 3.
raise, exstruo, exstruxi, exstructum, 3; tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3.
rampart, vallum, -i, *n*.
rapacious, rapax, rapacis.
rash, temerarius, -a, -um.
rather, magis.
read, lego, lēgi, lectum, 3.
 — **aloud**, recito, 1.
reason, ratio, rationis, *f*.; **by** — **of** (after a *negative*), prae (with *abl.*).
recall, revoco, 1.
receive, accipio, accepi, acceptum, 3; recipio, recepi, receptum, 3.
recently, nuper; **very** —, nuperime.
recite, recito, 1.
recognise, cognosco, cognovi, cognitum, 3.
reconnoitre, speculor, 1.
recover, recipero, 1.
red, ruber, rubra, rubrum.
refine, emollio, 4.
refresh, recreo, 1.
region, regio, regionis, *f*.
reign, regno, 1.
reinforcements, auxilia, -orum, *n*.
reject, repudio, 1.
rejoice, gaudeo, gavisus sum, 2.
relate, narro, 1.
relinquish, relinquo, reliqui, relictum, 3.
remain, maneo, mansi, mansum, 2.
 — **firm**, sto, steti, statum, 1.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remarkable, eximius, -a, -um.
remedy, remedium, -i, *n*.
remember, memini, meminisse.
remoter, ulterior, ulterioris.
remotest, ultimus, -a, -um.
renew, redintegro, 1.
renewal, integratio, integrationis, *f*.
renowned, clarus, -a, -um.
repair, reficio, refeci, refectum, 3.
repents, it, paenitet, 2.
reply, respondeo, respondi, responsum, 2.
report, fama, -ae, *f*.
reproach, probrum, -i, *n*.
republic, res publica, rei publicae, *f*.
resent bitterly, aegre fero, tuli, latum, ferre.
reserve, reservo, 1.
responsibility, chief, summa, -ae, *f*.
rest, otium, -i, *n*.
restrain, cohibeo, 2.
retain, retineo, retinui, retentum, 2.
retire, excedo, excessi, excessum, 3.
return (*intrans.*), regredior, regressus sum, 3; revertor, reverti, reversum, 3; (*subst.*) reditus, -ūs, *m*.
revolt, motus, -ūs, *m*.
reward, praemium, -i, *n*.
Rhine, Rhenus, -i, *m*.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -i, *m*.
rich, dives, divitis.
richer, ditior, ditioris.
riches, divitiae, -arum, *f. pl.*
richest, ditissimus, -a, -um.
right, on the right hand, dexter, dextra, dextrum; **the right hand**, dextra, -ae, *f.* (*sc. manus*).
river, flumen, fluminis, *n*.; fluvius, -i, *m*.
robber, praedo, praedonis, *m*.
rock, saxum, -i, *n*.
Roman, a, Romanus, -i, *m*.
Romulus, Romulus, -i, *m*.
rose, rosa, -ae, *f*.
rough, asper, aspera, asperum.

- rule** (*subst.*), imperium, -i, *n.* ; (*verb*) rego, rexi, rectum, 3.
rumour, fama, -ae, *f.*
run, curro, cucurri, cursum, 3.
 — **in different directions**, discuro, discurre or discucurri, discursum, 3.
 — **to and fro**, curso, 1.
rush, ruo, rui, rutum, 3.
sacred, sacer, sacra, sacrum.
sacrifice, immolo, 1.
sad, tristis, -e.
safe and sound, incolumis, -e.
safety, salus, salutis, *f.*
sagacious, sagax, sagacis.
sail, set, naves solvo, solvi, solutionum, 3.
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake of, for the, causā (with *gen.*); gratiā (with *gen.*).
sally forth, erumpo, erupi, eruptionum, 3.
salutary, salutaris, -e.
same place, to the, eodem.
 —, **the**, idem, eadem, idem.
satisfy, satisfacio, satisfeci, satisfactionum, 3 (with *dat.*).
say, aio, *defect.* ; inquam, inquit, *defect.* ; dico, dixi, dictum, 3.
 — **frequently**, dicito, 1.
 — . . . **not**, nego, 1.
scanty, exiguus, -a, -um.
scarcely, vix.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, *f.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seat, sedile, -is, *n.*
second time, a, iterum.
 —, **the** (of two), alter, altera, alterum.
secretly, clam.
see, specto, 1 ; video, vidi, visum, 2.
seek, peto, petivi or petii, petitionum, 3.
seem, videor, visus sum, 2.
seize, invado, invasi, invasum, 3 ; abripio, abripui, abreptum, 3.
self, ipse, -a, -um.
sell, vendo, vendidi, venditum, 3
semblance, species, -ei, *f.*
senate, senatus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mitto, misi, missum, 3.
separate, differo, distuli, dilatatum differre.
servant, minister, ministri, *m.*
set, praebeo, 2.
 — **foot in**, ingredior, ingressus sum, 3.
 — **in the way**, obicio, obieci, obiectum, 3.
 — **out**, proficiscor, profectus sum, 3.
 — **over**, praeficio, praefeci, praefectum, 3 (with *dat.*).
settle, consisto, constitui, constitutionum, 3.
severe, gravis, -e.
shade, umbra, -ae, *f.*
shake, quatio, —, quassum, 3.
shames, it, pudet, 2.
sharp, acutus, -a, -um.
shatter, quasso, 1.
shepherd, pastor, pastoris, *m.*
shield, scutum, -i, *n.*
ship, navis, -is, *f.*
 — **of war**, navis longa.
shore, litus, litoris, *n.* ; ora, -ae, *f.*
short, brevis, -e.
shout (*subst.*), clamor, clamoris, *m.* ; (*verb*) clamo, 1.
 — (together), conclamo, 1.
show, monstro, 1 ; ostendo, ostendi, ostentum, 3 ; praebeo, 2.
shower, imber, imbris, *m.*
shrewd, sagax, sagacis.
shut, claudio, clausi, clausum, 3.
sick, aeger, aegra, aegrum.
side, on this, citra.
 — **of, on this**, cis, citra (with *acc.*).
sides, from all, on all —, undique.
 —, **from both, on both**, utrimque.
siege, oppugnatio, oppugnationis, *f.*
sight, visus, -ūs, *m.* ; conspectus, -ūs, *m.*
 — **of, come in**, conspicio, 1.
sign, signum, -i, *n.*
silent, be, taceo, 2.

- silver**, argentum, -i, *n.*
sin, pecco, 1.
since, cum, quoniam.
sing, canto, 1.
sister, soror, sororis, *f.*
situated, situs, -a, -um.
skilful, peritus, -a, -um.
skilled, doctus, -a, -um.
skin, pellis, -is, *f.*
slanderous, maledicus, -a, -um.
slave, servus, -i, *m.*
slay, neco, 1.
sleep (*verb*), dormio, 4; (*subst.*), somnus, -i, *m.*
slender, gracilis, -e.
slip out, elabor, elapsus sum, 3.
sloth, segnitie, -ei, *f.*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smaller, minor, minoris.
smallest, minimus, -a, -um.
snake, anguis, -is, *m.*
snatch, eripio, eripui, ereptum, 3.
— **up**, corripio, corripui, correptum, 3.
snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
snows, it, ningit, ninxit, 3.
so, adeo, ita, sic, tam.
— **many**, tot, *indecl.*
soften, emollio, 4.
soil, solum, -i, *n.*
soldier, miles, militis, *m.*
—, **fellow-**, commilito, commilitonis, *m.*
some, nonnullus, -a, -um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, and (*adj.*) aliqui, aliquae, aliquod.
— **day**, aliquando.
— **one**, see **some**.
sometimes, interdum.
son, filius, -i, *m.*
son-in-law, gener, generi, *m.*
song, carmen, carminis, *n.*
soon, mox; **as—as**, ut, uti.
soothe, mollio, 4.
sort of, what? qualis, -e.
Spain, Hispania, -ae, *f.*
spare, be **sparing**, parco, pepercui, parsum, 3 (with *dat.*).
sparrow, passer, passeris, *m.*
speak, fatur, 1, *defect.*; loquor, locutus sum, 3.
spear, hasta, -ae, *f.*
speech, oratio, orationis, *f.*;
make a—, orationem habeo.
speed, celeritas, celeritatis, *f.*
spend, consumo, consumpsi, consumptum, 3.
splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.
spring, ver, veris, *n.*
spur, calcar, calcaris, *n.*
spy, explorator, exploratoris, *m.*
stag, cervus, -i, *m.*
stand, sto, steti, statum, 1.
standard, signum, -i, *n.*
start of, get the, praevenio, praevenī, praevenum, 4.
state, civitas, civitatis, *f.*; res publica, rei publicae, *f.*
step (*verb*), gradior, gressus sum, 3; (*subst.*) gradus, -ūs, *m.*
stern, puppis, -is, *f.*
stir (*trans.*), commoveo, commōvi, commotum, 2.
stone, lapis, lapidis, *m.*; saxum, -i, *n.*
storm, take by storm, expugno, 1.
storm (*subst.*), procella, -ae, *f.*; tempestas, tempestatis, *f.*
story, fabula, -ae, *f.*
strait, fretum, -i, *n.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vires, -ium, *f.* (*pl.* of vis).
strengthen, confirmo, 1; firmo, 1.
stretched, fusus, -a, -um.
strong, validus, -a, -um; **be—**; valeo, valui —, 2.
study, studium, -i, *n.*
such, of—a kind, talis, -e.
sudden, repentinus, -a, -um.
suddenly, repente.
suffer, patior, passus sum, 3.
suitable, idoneus, -a, -um.
sum of money, pecunia, -ae, *f.*
summer, aestas, aestatis, *f.*
summon, convoco, 1.
sun, sol, solis, *m.*
supplies, commeatus, -ūs, *m.*

supply, supposito, 1.
 surgeon, medicus, -i, *m*.
 surrender, dedo, dedidi, deditum, 3.
 surround, circumdo, circumdedi, circumdatum, circumdare.
 surviving, superstes, superstitis.
 suspect, suspicor, 1.
 sustain, sustineo, sustinui, sustentum, 2.
 sway, flecto, flexi, flexum, 3.
 sweet, dulcis, -e.
 sweeter, dulciior, dulcioris.
 swift, celer, celeris, celere.
 swifter, ocior, ocioris.
 swiftest, ocissimus, -a, -um.
 swim, nato, 1; no, 1.
 Switzerland, Helvetia, -ae, *f*.
 sword, gladius, -i, *m*.
 table, mensa, -ae, *f*.
 take, capio, cepi, captum, 3.
 — care, curo, 1.
 — pains, laboro, 1.
 tale, fabula, -ae, *f*.
 talk, loquor, locutus sum, 3.
 talkative, loquax, loquacis.
 Tarentum, Tarentum, -i, *n*.
 tax, vectigal, vectigalis, *n*.
 teach, doceo, docui, doctum, 2.
 tear, lacrima, -ae, *f*.
 — away or out, eripio, eripui, ereptum, 3.
 temple, templum, -i, *n*.
 tempt, tento, 1.
 tender, tener, tenera, tenerum.
 terms, condicio, condicionis, *f*.
 terrify, terreo, 2.
 territories, fines, -ium, *m*.
 than, quam.
 that, is, ea, id.
 — (of yours), iste, -a, -ud.
 — (yonder), ille, illa, illud.
 — . . . not, ne, quin.
 —, (so), (in order) —, ut, uti.
 — (thereby) . . . not, quominus.
 then, tum; — at length, tum demum.
 thenceforth, exinde.
 their (own), suus, -a, -um.

they, ei, eae, ea.
 thing, res, rei, *f*.
 think, arbitror, 1; puto, 1.
 thirst, sitis, -is, *f*.
 this, hic, haec, hoc.
 — side of, on, cis, citra (with *acc.*).
 — side, on, citra.
 — time, by, iam.
 thither, eo.
 threats, minae, -arum, *f*.
 three, tres, tria.
 through, per (with *acc.*).
 throw, iacio, ieci, iactum, 3; iacto, 1; praecipito, 1.
 tide, aestus, -ūs, *m*.
 timber, trabs, trabis, *f*.
 time, tempus, temporis, *n*; at another—, alias; for a long—, diu.
 timid, timidus, -a, -um.
 tired, fessus, -a, -um.
 to, ad (with *acc.*); to a man, ad unum.
 to-day, hodie.
 to-morrow, cras.
 together, get, comparo, 1.
 tongue, lingua, -ae, *f*.
 too far, longius.
 tooth, dens, dentis, *m*.
 torment, excrucio, 1.
 torn, lacer, lacera, lacerum.
 tortoise (defence made by interlocking shields), testudo, testudinis, *f*.
 towards, adversum, adversus (with *acc.*); (—a person) erga (with *acc.*).
 tower, turris, -is, *f*.
 town (*subst.*), oppidum, -i, *n*; (*adj.*) urbanus, -a, -um.
 townsman, oppidanus, -i, *m*.
 trace, track, vestigium, -i, *n*.
 train, crudio, 4.
 traitor, proditor, proditoris, *m*.
 transport-ship, navis oneraria.
 traverse, obo, obii, obitum, obire.
 treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um.
 treasury, aerarium, -i, *n*.
 treaty, foedus, foederis, *n*.

- tree**, arbor, arboris, *f.*
trench, fossa, -ae, *f.*
tribute, vectigal, vectigalis, *n.*
troops, copiae, -arum, *f.*
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.
true, verus, -a, -um.
trust, fido, fides sum, 3.
try, experior, expertus sum, 4 ;
 tento, 1.
turn (*trans.*), vertere, verti, versum,
 3.
 — **out**, evenio, evēni, eventum,
 4.
two, duo, -ae, -o.
unarmed, inermis, -e.
unaware, be, ignoro, 1.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
uncivilised, barbarus, -a, -um.
under, sub (with *abl.*).
under, be, subsum, subfui, sub-
 esse.
understand, intellego, intellexi,
 intellectum, 3.
understanding, come to an (with)
 consentio, consensi, consen-
 sum, 4.
unequal, iniquus, -a, -um.
unexpectedly, de improviso.
unfair, iniquus, -a, -um.
unfaithful, infidelis, -e.
unfavourable, iniquus, -a, -um.
unfortunate, infelix, infelicitas.
unhappy, infelix, infelicitas ; miser,
 misera, miserum.
unhurt, incolumis, -e.
universal, universus, -a, -um.
unknowing, insciens, inscientis.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unmindful, immemor, immem-
 oris.
unserviceable, inutilis, -e.
until (*prep.*), ad (with *acc.*) ;
 (*conj.*) donec, dum.
untruthful, mendax, mendacis.
unwilling, invitus, -a, -um.
 —, **be**, nolo, nolui, —, nolle.
unwitting, insciens, inscientis.
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um.
upper, superus (*rarely* super), -a,
 -um.
uproar, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
upon (implying motion), in (with
acc.).
use, utor, usus sum, 3 (with *abl.*).
useful, utilis, -e.
 —, **more**, utilior, utilioris.
vain, in, frustra.
valley, vallis, -is, *f.*
valour, virtus, virtutis, *f.*
value at, facio, feci, factum, 3
 (with *gen.*).
Veii, Veii, -orum, *n. pl.*
Verginius, Verginius, -i, *m.*
verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
veteran, veteranus, -a, -um.
vice, vitium, -i, *n.*
victory, victoria, -ae, *f.*
vigilant, vigil, vigilis.
village, vicus, -i, *m.*
violate, violo, 1.
violence, violentia, -ae, *f.* ; vis,
acc. vim, no *gen. dat., abl. vi, f.*
act of—, iniuria, -ae, *f.*
virtue, virtus, virtutis, *f.*
visit, lustrum, 1.
voice, vox, vocis, *f.*
wage, gero, gessi, gestum, 3.
wait, oppetior, oppertus sum, 4.
walk, ambulo, 1.
wall, murus, -i, *m.*
walls (of a city), moenia, -ium, *n.*
wander, vagor, 1.
 — **about**, peragro, 1.
war, bellum, -i, *n.* ; **make**—upon
 bellum infero.
warn, moneo, 2.
waste, laqueo, vasto, 1.
watch, tueor, 2 ; vigilo, 1.
watchful, vigil, vigilis.
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*
we, nos.
weapon, telum, -i, *n.*
weary, fessus, -a, -um.
weather, tempestas, tempestatis, *f.*
weight, pondus, ponderis, *n.*
well, bene ; **very**—, optime.

- well, to be, valeo, valui, —, 2.**
well-known, notus, -a, -um.
what? quid; what, pray? quid-
nam.
whatever, see whoever.
when, cum, ubi, ut (uti); when?
quando.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
whether . . . or, sive . . . sive,
seu . . . seu; (in double ques-
tions) utrum . . . an.
which, qui, quae, quod; — (of
—two)? uter, utra, utrum.
—(of the two) you please, uter-
libet, utralibet, utrumlibet.
whichever (of the two) you will,
utervis, utravis, utrumvis.
—(of the two), utercumque, utra-
cumque, utrumcumque.
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um.
whither, quo.
who (interrog.), quis, quae, quid;
(interrog. adj. and rel.), qui,
quae, quod.
who, pray? quisnam.
whoever, quisquis, quaequae,
quidquid (quicquid) and (adj.)
quodquod; quicumque, quae-
cumque, quodcumque.
whole (adj.), totus, -a, -um;
(subst.), summa, -ae, f.
wholly, omnino.
why? cur, quare.
— not? quin.
wicked, malus, -a, -um.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, uxoris, f.
wild beast, fera, -ae, f.
— boar, aper, apri, m.
will, be willing, volo, volui,
velle.
wind, ventus, -i, m.
winding, curvus, -a, -um.
wine, vinum, -i, n.
wing (of an army), cornu, -ūs, n.
winter, hiems, hiemis, f.; pass
the —, hiemo, i.
— -quarters, hiberna, -orum, n.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, prudens, prudentis; sapi-
ens, sapientis.
wish for, opto, i,
with, cum (with abl.).
within (adv.), intra, intus;
(prep.) intra (with acc.).
without, sine (with abl.).
witness, testis, -is, c.
woman, femina, -ae, f.; mulier,
mulieris, f.
wood, silva, -ae, f.
word, verbum, -i, n.
work, opus, operis, n.
— upon, sollicito, i.
world, mundus, -i, m.
worse, deterior, deterioris; peior,
peioris.
worship, veneror, i.
worst, deterrimus, -a, -um.
worth, of, frugi, indecl.
worthless, nequam, indecl.
worthy, dignus, -a, -um (with abl.).
—, deem, dignor, i (with abl.).
would that! utinam.
wound (verb), vulnero, i; (subst.)
vulnus, vulneris, n.
wretched, miser, misera, miser-
um.
write, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3.
year, annus, -i, m.
yesterday, here, heri.
yield (trans.), concedo, concessi,
concessum, 3.
yoke, iugum, -i, n.
you (sing.), tu; (pl.) vos.
young man, iuvenis, -is, m.
youngster, iunior, iunioris.
youngest, natu minimus, -a, -um.
your, yours (if one person is
addressed), tuus, -a, -um; (if
several are addressed) vester,
vestra, vestrum.
Zeno, Zeno, Zenonis, m.

APPENDIX.

SOME IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES IN COMMON USE.

310. Filius, *son*, and some other second declension substantives ending in *-ius* have a vocative form in *-i*; *e.g.* **fili**. Sometimes the nominative of words ending in *-ius* is used instead of the vocative, but there is no form ending in *-ie*.

311. Deus (m.), *a god*, is thus declined : —

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> deus	deī or dī
<i>Acc.</i> deum	deōs
<i>Gen.</i> deī	deōrum or (in poetry) deum
<i>Dat.</i> deō	deīs, diīs, or dīs
<i>Abl.</i> deō	deīs, diīs, or dīs

Obs.—The voc. sing. of **deus** is the same as the nominative.

312. The following are irregular :—

Bōs (c.), *ox* or *cow*. **Sūs** (c.), *boar* or *sow*.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> bōs	bovēs	<i>N. V.</i> sūs	suēs
<i>Acc.</i> bovem	bovēs	<i>Acc.</i> suem	suēs
<i>Gen.</i> bovis	boum	<i>Gen.</i> suis	suum
<i>Dat.</i> bovī	būbus or bōbus	<i>Dat.</i> suī	suibus or sūbus
<i>Abl.</i> bove	būbus or bōbus	<i>Abl.</i> sue	suibus or sūbus

313. Domus (f.), *house*, belongs to the fourth declension, but has some second declension forms.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N. V.</i> domus	domūs
<i>Acc.</i> domum	domūs domos
<i>Gen.</i> domūs	domuum domōrum
<i>Dat.</i> domuī	domibus
<i>Abl.</i> domō	domibus

Rhyme—**Domō** for ablative we see,
Domōs, domōrum commonly ;
 Bear locative **domī** in mind ;
 The rest like **gradus** is declined,

314. Rēs publica (f.), *commonwealth*, is sometimes written as one word (**respublica**), but each part is declined just as when the whole is written as two words : *Acc.* **rempublicam**, *Gen. Dat.* **reipublicae**, *Abl.* **rēpublicā**. The same applies to **iūs iūrandum** (n.), *oath* (*Gen.* **iūrisiūrandi**, etc.).

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF VERBS.

SHORTER FORMS OF TENSES FORMED FROM PERFECT BASES
ENDING IN V.

315. Most verbs of which the perfect base end in **v** have also shorter form of their perfect tenses without the **v**; *e.g.*—

	First Conjugation.		Fourth Conjugation.	
	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.	Longer Form.	Shorter Form.
Indic. Perf.	amāvisti	amasti	audīvisti	audiisti
" "	-----	-----	audivit	audiit
" "	amāvistis	amastis	audīvistis	audiistis
" "	amāvērunt	amārunt	audīvērunt	audiērunt
" "	-----	-----	audīvēre	audiēre
" Plupf.	amāveram	amāram	audiveram	audieram
" Fut.-Perf.	amāverō	amārō	audiverō	audierō
Subj. Perf.	amāverim	amārim	audiverim	audierim
" Plupf.	amāvissem	amassem	audivissem	audiissem
				audissem
Inf. Perf.	amāvisse	amasse	audivisse	audiisse
				audisse

ALTERNATIVE FORMS OF TENSES COMPOUNDED WITH **SUM**.

316. In the pluperfect subjunctive passive **forem, forēs**, etc., may be substituted for **essem, essēs**, etc.; *e.g. amātus forem, I should be loved.*

317. The tenses formed from the perfect base of **sum** (**fui, fueram**, etc.) are sometimes used with the perfect participle passive; *e.g. amātus fui, I have been loved (but am so no longer)*; **parātus fui, I was ready (but am so no longer)**. In tenses other than the perfect indicative such forms of **sum** combined with the perfect participle may be respectively equivalent to the ordinary passive forms, viz. **amātus fueram** to **amātus eram**, **amātus fuerō** to **amātus erō**, etc.; or they may have a special meaning if the sense admits it (*e.g. parātus fueram, I had been ready*).

318. VERBS WITH FORMS BELONGING TO TWO CONJUGATIONS.

Orior, I rise (4th conj.), has in pres. indic. **oreris, oritur, orimur**, and in imperf. subj. **orerētur, orerentur**, both in the simple verb and in the compounds, the fourth conjugation forms of these parts being rarely found.

Potior, I get possession (4th conj.), similarly has in pres. indic. **potitur**, and in imperf. subj. **poterētur, poterēmur, poterentur**.

COMPOUND VERBS.

319. The prefix to a compound verb is most often a preposition or one of the inseparable particles mentioned in § 320.

Sometimes composition causes no change either in the preposition or in the verb, *e.g.* **contrā-dicō**, *I gain-say*; but the one or the other, or both, may undergo certain modifications. Thus—

(i) The final consonant in **ad**, **ob**, **sub** is frequently assimilated to the first letter (if a consonant) of the verb; *e.g.* **afferō** (= **ad** + **ferō**), **oppōnō** (= **ob** + **pōnō**), **summōveō** (= **sub** + **moveō**).

(ii) **Com-** (the usual form of **cum** in composition) and **in** are assimilated to **l** or **r** when the simple verb begins with either of those letters; *e.g.* **corrumpō** (= **com-** + **rumpō**), **irrupō** (= **in** + **rumpō**). They are respectively written **com-** and **im-** before **m**, **b**, or **p**, *e.g.* **impellō**; **com-** becomes **con-** before most other letters, *e.g.* **conferō**, **contulī**.

(iii) **A**, **ab** assumes several forms: **ā-**, **ab-**, **au-**, **abs-**, **as-**; *e.g.* **āmittō**, **abdō**, **auferō**, **abstrahō**, **asportō**.

(iv) **E** is used in composition before consonants only, **ex** is used before consonants and vowels; *e.g.* **ēdō**, **expellō**, **exeō**.

(v) **Ad**, **com-**, and **trans** sometimes lose the consonants at the end, as in **aspirō**, **coeō**, **trāiciō** (see p. 257, footnote).

320. The chief inseparable particles prefixed to verbs are :—
dis-, *asunder*, as in **dis-cutiō** (= **dis-** + **quatiō**), *shatter*; **dif-ferō**
 (**dif-**, **dī-**) „ (= **dis-** + **ferō**), *bear asunder*; **dī-vellō**, *rend*.
ne- *not*, „ **ne-sciō**, *know not*.
red- (**re-**), *back*, „ **red-dō**, *give back*; **red-eō**, *go back*; **re-pōnō**, *replace*.

TABLE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

321. As already explained (§ 137) verbs of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, with certain exceptions, respectively follow **amō**, **moneō** and **audiō** in the formation of their perfect and supine bases. The following list (pp. 247-260) contains all common verbs of these conjugations in which the perfect and supine bases are irregularly formed, and also all common verbs of the 3rd conjugation, except—

(a) Inceptive verbs¹ formed from simple verbs which are in use, the perfect and supine of these (if they exist) being the same as the perfect and supine of the simple verb;

(b) Compound verbs which contain the simple verb unchanged in form, but drop the reduplication (if any, see foot-note on p. 247) in the perfect, as compounds usually do, *e.g.*—

Simple verb :	dūc-ō	-ere	dux-i	duct-um	<i>lead</i>
Compound verb :	addūc-ō	-ere	abdux-i	abduct-um	<i>lead away</i>
Simple verb :	pell-ō	-ere	pepul-i	puls-um	<i>drive</i>
Compound verb :	impell-ō	-ere	impul-i	impuls-um	<i>drive on</i>

¹ Inceptive verbs denote the beginning or increase of action, and end in **-asco**, **-esco**, or **-isco**; *e.g.* **labasco**, *I begin to totter*; **mitesco**, *I grow mild*.

§ 322.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.*

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supíne.	
d-ō (§ 260)	-are	ded-ī	dat-um	<i>give</i>
Compounds be- long to 3rd conj. (§ 324, A.), except				
circumd-ō (§ 260)	-are	circumded-ī	circumdat-um	<i>put round</i>
st-ō	-āre	stet-ī	stat-um	<i>stand</i>
Compounds (few having sup.) as				
praest-ō	-āre	praestit-ī	{ praestāt-um praestit-um }	<i>excel</i>
Except				
circumst-ō	-āre	circumstet-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

iuv-ō (§ 333)	-āre	iūv-ī	iūt-um	<i>help, delight</i>
lav-ō	-āre	lāv-ī	{ lavāt-um laut-us lōt-us }	<i>wash</i>

C.—Perfect formed by **S**: *none*.D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (**A**).

This is the way in which the perfect base of **amō** and of other verbs of the first conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

pōt-ō	-āre	pōtāv-ī	{ pōt-um or pōtāt-um }	<i>drink</i>
--------------	-------------	----------------	-----------------------------------	--------------

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

crep-ō	-āre	crepu-ī	crepit-um	<i>rattle</i>
cub-ō	-āre	cubu-ī	cubit-um	<i>lie down</i>
dom-ō	-āre	domu-ī	domit-um	<i>tame</i>
ēnic-ō	-āre	ēnicu-ī	ēnect-um	<i>wear to death</i>
fric-ō	-āre	fricu-ī	{ frict-um or fricāt-um }	<i>rub</i>
plic-ō	-āre	{ plicāv-ī plicu-ī }	{ plicāt-um plicit-um }	<i>fold</i>
sec-ō	-āre	secu-ī	sect-um	<i>cut</i>

* The syllable prefixed by reduplication consists of the initial consonant of the verb and a short vowel.

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
son-ō (§ 333)	-āre	sonu-ī	sonit-um	<i>sound</i>
ton-ō	-āre	tonu-ī	tonit-um	<i>thunder</i>
vet-ō	-āre	vetu-ī	vetit-um	<i>forbid</i>
mic-ō	-āre	mieu-ī	—	<i>vibrate</i>

So comp., except

dīmic-ō -āre dīmicāv-ī dīmicāt-um *fight*

F.—Perfect base identical with present base: *none*.

§ 323.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

mord-eō	-ēre	momord-ī	mors-um	<i>bite</i>
pend-eō	-ēre	pepend-ī	—	<i>be suspended</i>
spond-eō	-ēre	spopond-ī	spons-um	<i>promise</i>
tond-eō	-ēre	totond-ī	tons-um	<i>clip</i>

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

cav-eō	-ēre	cāv-ī	caut-um	<i>beware of</i>
fav-eō	-ēre	fāv-ī	faut-um	<i>be favourable</i>
fov-eō	-ēre	fōv-ī	fōt-um	<i>cherish</i>
mov-eō	-ēre	mōv-ī	mōt-um	<i>set in motion</i>
vov-eō	-ēre	vōv-ī	vōt-um	<i>vow</i>
sed-eō	-ēre	sēd-ī	sess-um	<i>sit</i>

Compounds as

possid-eō -ēre **possēd-ī** **possess-um** *possess*

Except

circumsed-eō -ēre circumsēd-ī circumsess-um *besiege*

supersed-eō -ēre supersēd-ī supersess-um *forbear*

vid-eō -ēre **vid-ī** **vis-um** *see*

pav-eō -ēre **pāv-ī** — *tremble*

C.—Perfect formed by S

alg-eō	-ēre	als-ī	—	<i>feel cold</i>
fulg-eō	-ēre	fuls-ī	—	<i>gleam</i>
indulg-eō	-ēre	induls-ī	—	<i>be indulgent</i>
urg-eō	-ēre	urs-ī	—	<i>press</i>
frig-eō	-ēre	frix-ī	—	<i>be cold</i>
lūc-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	—	<i>shine</i>
torqu-eō	-ēre	tors-ī	tort-um	<i>twist</i>
aug-eō	-ēre	aux-ī	auct-um	<i>augment</i>
lūg-eō	-ēre	lux-ī	luct-um	<i>mourn for</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ard-eō	-ēre	ars-ī	ars-um	<i>be on fire</i>
haer-eō	-ēre	haes-ī	haes-um	<i>stick</i>
iub-eō	-ēre	iuss-ī	iuss-um	<i>command</i>
man-eō	-ēre	mans-ī	mans-um	<i>remain</i>
mulc-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	muls-um	<i>caress</i>
mulg-eō	-ēre	muls-ī	{ mulet-um muls-um }	<i>milk</i>
rīd-eō	-ēre	rīs-ī	rīs-um	<i>laugh</i>
suād-eō (§ 5)	-ēre	suās-ī	suās-um	<i>recommend</i>
terg-eō	-ēre	ters-ī	ters-um	<i>wipe</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

abol-eō	-ēre	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	<i>abolish</i>
ci-eō	-ēre	civ-ī	cit-um	<i>arouse</i>
dēl-eō	-ēre	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	<i>abolish</i>
fl-eō	-ēre	flēv-ī	flēt-um	<i>weep</i>
n-eō	-ēre	nēv-ī	nēt-um	<i>spin</i>
compl-eō	-ēre	complēv-ī	complēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
expl-eō	-ēre	explēv-ī	explēt-um	<i>fill up</i>
impl-eō	-ēre	implēv-ī	implēt-um	<i>fill</i>
repl-eō	-ēre	replēv-ī	replēt-um	<i>refill</i>
suppl-eō	-ēre	supplēv-ī	supplēt-um	<i>fill up</i>

E.—Perfect formed by U.

This is the way in which the perfect base of *moneō* and of other verbs of the second conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is wanting in many verbs of this conjugation, and is irregular in—

doc-eō	-ēre	docu-ī	doct-um	<i>teach</i>
misc-eō	-ēre	miscu-ī	mixt-um	<i>mix</i>
ten-eō	-ēre	tenu-ī	tent-um	<i>hold</i>
Comp. as retin-eō	-ēre	retinu-ī	retent-um	<i>hold back</i>
torr-eō	-ēre	torru-ī	tost-um	<i>scorch</i>
cens-eō	-ēre	censu-ī	cens-um	<i>count</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

prand-eō	-ēre	prand-ī	prans-um	<i>lunch</i>
ferv-eō	-ēre	ferv-ī (or ferbu-ī)		<i>be boiling</i>
strid-eō	-ēre	strid-ī		<i>creak</i>

§ 324. THIRD CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
can-ō	-ere	cecīn-ī	cant-um	<i>sing</i>
Compounds as praeoin-ō (§ 324, E)				
Compounds of dō, except circumd-ō (§ 322, A), as ēd-ō *				
	-ere	ēdid-ī	ēdit-um	<i>give out</i>
Including :				
crēd-ō	-ere	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	<i>trust</i>
perd-ō	-ere	perdid-ī	perdit-um	<i>destroy</i>
vend-ō	-ere	vendid-ī	vendit-um	<i>sell</i>
pung-ō	-ere	pupug-ī	punct-um	<i>prick</i>
Compounds as compung-ō (§ 324, C)				
sist-ō	-ere	stit-ī	stat-um	<i>make to stand</i>
Comp. as consist-ō	-ere	constit-ī	constit-um	<i>stand still</i>
Except				
circumsist-ō	-ere	circumstet-ī	—	<i>stand around</i>
tang-ō	-ere	tetig-ī	tact-um	<i>touch</i>
Comp. as atting-ō	-ere	attig-ī	attact-um	<i>touch</i>
tend-ō	-ere	tetend-ī	tent-um	<i>stretch</i>
cad-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	cās-um	<i>fall</i>
Comp. as concid-ō	-ere	concid-ī	—	<i>fall</i>
Supine stem in				
occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occās-um	<i>fall, set</i>
recid-ō	-ere	reccid-ī	recās-um	<i>fall back</i>
caed-ō	-ere	cecid-ī	caes-um	<i>cut</i>
Comp. as occid-ō	-ere	occid-ī	occis-um	<i>kill</i>
curr-ō	-ere	cucurr-ī	curs-um	<i>run</i>
Compounds as				
accurr-ō	-ere	{ accucurr-ī or accurr-ī }	accurs-um	<i>run to</i>
fall-ō	-ere	fefell-ī	fals-um	<i>deceive</i>
Comp.:refell-ō	-ere	refell-ī	—	<i>disprove</i>

* Some of these are compounds of dō, *I give*, others of a verb -dō, *I put*, of which the simple form is not in use. No distinction is here attempted, as it is in many cases impossible to ascertain from which simple verb the compound is formed.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
pell-ō	-ere	pepul-ī	puls-um	<i>drive</i>
pend-ō	-ere	pepend-ī	pens-um	<i>weigh out, pay</i>
tund-ō	-ere	tutud-ī	{ tuns-um tūs-um }	<i>beat</i>
disc-ō	-ere	didic-ī	—	<i>learn</i>
Comp. as addisc-ō	-ere	addidic-ī	—	<i>learn besides</i>
parc-ō	-ere	peperc-ī	pars-ūrus	<i>be sparing</i>
posc-ō	-ere	poposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
Comp. as dēposc-ō	-ere	dēpoposc-ī	—	<i>demand</i>
B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.				
ag-ō	-ere	ēg-ī	act-um	<i>drive</i>
Comp. as abig-ō	-ere	abēg-ī	abact-um	<i>drive away</i>
Except circumag-ō	-ere	circumēg-ī	circumact-um	<i>drive around</i>
cōg-ō	-ere	coēg-ī	coact-um	<i>drive together, compel</i>
dēg-ō	-ere	dēg-ī	—	<i>pass (time)</i>
perag-ō	-ere	perēg-ī	peract-um	<i>accomplish</i>
em-ō	-ere	ēm-ī	empt-um	<i>buy</i>
Comp. as adim-ō	-ere	adēm-ī	adempt-um	<i>take away</i>
Except coem-ō	-ere	coēm-ī	coempt-um	<i>buy up</i>
See also § 324, C.				
frang-ō	-ere	frēg-ī	fract-um	<i>break</i>
Compounds as				
confring-ō	-ere	confrēg-ī	confract-um	<i>break</i>
leg-ō	-ere	lēg-ī	lect-um	<i>pick, read</i>
Comp. as collig-ō	-ere	collēg-ī	collect-um	<i>collect</i>
But e remains in				
perleg-ō	-ere	perlēg-ī	perlect-um	<i>read through</i>
releg-ō	-ere	relēg-ī	relect-um	<i>again go over</i>
Perf. differs in				
dilig-ō	}	}	}	(§ 324, C.)
intellig-ō				
negleg-ō				
linqu-ō	-ere	liqu-ī	—	<i>leave</i>
Comp. as relinqu-ō	-ere	reliqu-ī	relict-um	<i>leave</i>
pang-ō	-ere	pēg-ī or pepig-ī	pact-um	<i>fasten</i>
Comp. : comping-ō	-ere	compēg-ī	compact-um	<i>join together</i>
rump-ō	-ere	rūp-ī	rupt-um	<i>break</i>
vinc-ō	-ere	vīc-ī	vict-um	<i>conquer</i>
ed-ō	-ere	ēd-ī	ēs-um	<i>eat</i>
fund-ō	-ere	fūd-ī	fūs-um	<i>pour</i>

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect.	Supine.	
carp-ō	-ere	carps-ī	carpt-um	<i>pluck</i>
Comp. as dēcerp-ō	-ere	dēcerps-ī	dēcerpt-um	<i>pluck off</i>
Four compounds of em-ō (§ 324, B.) :				
cōm-ō	-ere	comps-ī	compt-um	<i>deck</i>
dēm-ō	-ere	demps-ī	dempt-um	<i>take off</i>
prōm-ō	-ere	promps-ī	prompt-um	<i>bring out</i>
sūm-ō	-ere	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	<i>take up</i>
ger-ō	-ere	gess-ī	gest-um	<i>carry</i>
nūb-ō	-ere	nups-ī	nupt-um	<i>put on the bridal veil, i.e. be married</i>
rēp-ō	-ere	reps-ī	rept-um	<i>creep</i>
scalp-ō	-ere	scalps-ī	scalpt-um	<i>carve</i>
scrib-ō	-ere	scrips-ī	script-um	<i>write</i>
sculp-ō	-ere	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	<i>carve</i>
serp-ō	-ere	serps-ī	serpt-um	<i>crawl</i>
temn-ō	-ere	temps-ī	tempt-um	<i>despise</i>
ūr-ō	-ere	uss-ī	ust-um	<i>burn, inflame</i>
Comp. : combūr-ō	-ere	combuss-ī	combust-um	<i>burn up</i>
cing-ō	-ere	cinx-ī	cinct-um	<i>gird</i>
coqu-ō	-ere	cox-ī	coct-um	<i>cook</i>
dic-ō (§ 332)	-ere	dix-ī	dict-um	<i>say</i>
duc-ō (§ 332)	-ere	dux-ī	duct-um	<i>lead</i>
fig-ō	-ere	finx-ī	fict-um	<i>form</i>
affig-ō	-ere	affix-ī	affict-um	<i>strike against</i>
config-ō	-ere	conflix-ī	conflict-um	<i>contend</i>
infig-ō	-ere	infix-ī	inflict-um	<i>strike on</i>
iung-ō	-ere	iunx-ī	iunct-um	<i>join</i>
Three compounds of leg-ō (§ 324, B.) :				
dilig-ō	-ere	dillex-ī	dilect-um	<i>love</i>
intelleg-ō	-ere	intellex-ī	intellect-um	<i>understand</i>
negleg-ō	-ere	neglex-ī	neglect-um	<i>neglect</i>
ping-ō	-ere	pinx-ī	pict-um	<i>paint</i>
plang-ō	-ere	planx-ī	planct-um	<i>beat</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine	
Compounds of pung-ō				
(§ 324, A), as				
compung-ō	-ere	compunx-ī	compunct-um	<i>sting</i>
reg-ō	-ere	rex-ī	rect-um	<i>rule</i>
Comp. as corrig-ō	-ere	correx-ī	correct-um	<i>correct</i>
Except perg-ō	-ere	perrex-ī	perrect-um	<i>continue</i>
surg-ō	-ere	surrex-ī	surrect-um	<i>rise</i>
distingu-ō	-ere	distinx-ī	distinct-um	<i>distinguish</i>
extingu-ō	-ere	extinx-ī	extinct-um	<i>extinguish</i>
restingu-ō	-ere	restinx-ī	restring-um	<i>extinguish</i>
string-ō	-ere	strinx-ī	strict-um	<i>strip</i>
stru-ō	-ere	strux-ī	struct-um	<i>pile</i>
sūg-ō	-ere	sux-ī	suct-um	<i>suck</i>
teg-ō	-ere	tex-ī	tect-um	<i>cover</i>
ting-ō or tingu-ō	-ere	tinx-ī	tinct-um	<i>steep</i>
trah-ō	-ere	trax-ī	tract-um	<i>draw</i>
ung-ō or ungu-ō	-ere	unx-ī	unct-um	<i>anoint</i>
veh-ō	-ere	vex-ī	vect-um	<i>carry</i>
viv-ō	-ere	vix-ī	vict-um	<i>live</i>
cōd-ō	-ere	cess-ī	cess-um	<i>yield</i>
claud-ō	-ere	claus-ī	claus-um	<i>shut</i>
Comp. as conclud-ō	-ere	conclūs-ī	conclūs-um	<i>confine</i>
dīvid-ō	-ere	dīvīs-ī	dīvīs-um	<i>divide</i>
laed-ō	-ere	laes-ī	laes-um	<i>hurt</i>
Comp. as collid-ō	-ere	collis-ī	collis-um	<i>clash</i>
lūd-ō	-ere	lūs-ī	lūs-um	<i>play</i>
merg-ō	-ere	mers-ī	mers-um	<i>dip</i>
mitt-ō	-ere	mis-ī	miss-um	<i>send</i>
plaud-ō	-ere	plaus-ī	plaus-um	<i>clap</i>
Comp. : explōd-ō	-ere	explōs-ī	explōs-um	<i>hiss off</i>
prem-ō	-ere	press-ī	press-um	<i>press</i>
Compounds as				
comprim-ō	-ere	compress-ī	compress-um	<i>restrain</i>
rād-ō	-ere	rās-ī	rās-um	<i>scrape</i>
rōd-ō	-ere	rōs-ī	rōs-um	<i>gnaw</i>
sparg-ō	-ere	spars-ī	spars-um	<i>scatter</i>
Comp. as asperg-ō	-ere	aspers-ī	aspers-um	<i>sprinkle</i>
trūd-ō	-ere	trūs-ī	trūs-um	<i>thrust</i>
vād-ō	-ere	—	—	<i>go</i>
Comp. as ēvād-ō	-ere	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	<i>go forth</i>

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	Supine.	
fig-ō	-ere	fix-ī	fix-um	<i>fix</i>
flect-ō	-ere	flex-ī	flex-um	<i>bend</i>
flu-ō	-ere	flux-ī	flux-um	<i>flow</i>
nect-ō	-ere	nex-ī	nex-um	<i>bind</i>
ning-it or ningu-it	-ere	ninx-it	—	<i>snow</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel.

cern-ō	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>discern</i>
lin-ō	-ere	lēv-ī	lit-um	<i>besmear</i>
N. B.—Comp. :				
oblin-ō	-ere	oblēv-ī	oblit-um	<i>besmear</i>
pet-ō	-ere	petiv-ī or peti-ī	petit-um	<i>seek</i>
quaer-ō	-ere	quaesiv-ī	quaesit-um	<i>seek</i>
Comp. as exquir-ō	-ere	exquisiv-ī	exquisit-um	<i>seek out</i>
ser-ō	-ere	sēv-ī	sat-um	<i>sow</i>
Comp. as inser-ō	-ere	insēv-ī	insit-um	<i>ingraft</i>
sin-ō	-ere	siv-ī	sit-um	<i>allow</i>
spern-ō	-ere	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	<i>despise</i>
stern-ō	-ere	strāv-ī	strāt-um	<i>spread</i>
ter-ō	-ere	triv-ī	trit-um	<i>rub</i>
arcess-ō or accers-ō	-ere	arcessiv-ī	arcessit-um	<i>send for</i>
capess-ō	-ere	capessiv-ī	capessit-um	<i>take in hand</i>
laccess-ō	-ere	laccessiv-ī	laccessit-um	<i>provoke</i>
incess-ō	-ere	incessiv-ī	—	<i>assault</i>

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 321) in form :—

adolesc-ō (§ 177)	-ere	adolēv-ī	adult-um	<i>grow up</i>
cresc-ō (§ 177)	-ere	crēv-ī	crēt-um	<i>grow</i>
nosc-ō	-ere	nōv-ī	nōt-um	<i>get to know</i>
Comp. (noscō has lost an initial g) :				
agnosc-ō	-ere	agnōv-ī	agnit-um	<i>recognise</i>
cognosc-ō	-ere	cognōv-ī	cognit-um	<i>ascertain</i>
ignosc-ō	-ere	ignōv-ī	ignōt-um	<i>overlook</i>
obsolesc-ō	-ere	obsolēv-ī	obsolēt-um	<i>decay</i>
pasc-ō	-ere	pāv-ī	past-um	<i>pasture</i>
quiesc-ō	-ere	quiēv-ī	quiēt-um	<i>rest</i>
scisc-ō	-ere	sciv-ī	scit-um	<i>enact</i>
suesc-ō (§ 5)	-ere	suēv-ī	suēt-um	<i>become accus-tomed</i>

E.—Perfect formed by **Ū**.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
al-ō	-ere	alu-ī	alt-um	<i>nourish</i>
Compounds of can-ō (§ 324, A.)				
as praecin-ō	-ere	praecinu-ī	praecent-um	<i>sing before</i>
col-ō	-ere	colu-ī	cult-um	<i>cultivate</i>
accumb-ō	-ere	accubu-ī	accubit-um	<i>recline at table</i>
incumb-ō	-ere	incubu-ī	incubit-um	<i>lean</i>
ocumb-ō	-ere	ocubu-ī	ocubit-um	<i>sink</i>
prōcumb-ō	-ere	prōcubu-ī	prōcubit-um	<i>bend down</i>
reocumb-ō	-ere	reocubu-ī	recubit-um	<i>recline</i>
succumb-ō	-ere	succubu-ī	succubit-um	<i>submit</i>
consul-ō	-ere	consulu-ī	consult-um	<i>consult</i>
frem-ō	-ere	fremu-ī	fremit-um	<i>roar</i>
gem-ō	-ere	gemu-ī	gemit-um	<i>groan</i>
gign-ō	-ere	genu-ī	genit-um	<i>produce</i>
occul-ō	-ere	occulu-ī	occult-um	<i>hide</i>
pōn-ō	-ere	posu-ī	posit-um	<i>place</i>
ser-ō	-ere	—	sert-um	<i>join</i>
Comp. as conser-ō	-ere	conseru-ī	consert-um	<i>join</i>
tex-ō	-ere	texu-ī	text-um	<i>weave</i>
vom-ō	-ere	vomu-ī	vomit-um	<i>vomit</i>
met-ō	-ere	(messem fēc-ī)	mess-um	<i>reap</i>
compesc-ō	-ere	compescu-ī	—	<i>check</i>
strep-ō	-ere	strepu-ī	—	<i>resound</i>
trem-ō	-ere	tremu-ī	—	<i>tremble</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

acu-ō	-ere	acu-ī	acūt-um	<i>sharpen</i>
argu-ō	-ere	argu-ī	argūt-um	<i>accuse</i>
dilu-ō	-ere	dilu-ī	dilūt-um	<i>wash out</i>
exu-ō	-ere	exu-ī	exūt-um	<i>strip off</i>
imbu-ō	-ere	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	<i>steep</i>
indu-ō	-ere	indu-ī	indūt-um	<i>put on</i>
minu-ō	-ere	minu-ī	minūt-um	<i>lessen</i>
abnu-ō	-ere	abnu-ī	abnūt-um	<i>refuse</i>
annu-ō	-ere	annu-ī	annūt-um	<i>assent</i>
pollu-ō	-ere	pollu-ī	pollūt-um	<i>defile</i>
statu-ō	-ere	statu-ī	statūt-um	<i>settle</i>
Compounds as				
constitu-ō	-ere	constitu-ī	constitūt-um	<i>settle</i>

Present Indic.	Infinitive	Perfect	Supine	
su-ō	-ere	su-ī	sūt-um	<i>stitch</i>
tribu-ō	-ere	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	<i>assign</i>
ru-ō	-ere	ru-ī	rūt-um	<i>rush down</i>
Comp. as diru-ō	-ere	diru-ī	dirut-um	<i>demolish</i>
metu-ō	-ere	metu-ī	---	<i>fear</i>
congru-ō	-ere	congru-ī	---	<i>agree</i>
lu-ō	-ere	lu-ī	---	<i>pay</i>
plu-it	-ere	plu-it (or plūv it)	---	<i>rain</i>
solv-ō	-ere	solv-ī	solūt-um	<i>loose</i>
volv-ō	-ere	volv-ī	volūt-um	<i>roll</i>
facess-ō	-ere	facess-ī	facessit-um	<i>accomplish</i>
accend-ō	-ere	accend-ī	accens-um	<i>kindle</i>
incend-ō	-ere	incend-ī	incens-um	<i>set on fire</i>
succend-ō	-ere	succend-ī	succens-um	<i>kindle below</i>
dēfend-ō	-ere	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	<i>defend</i>
offend-ō	-ere	offend-ī	offens-um	<i>stumble</i>
mand-ō	-ere	mand-ī	mans-um	<i>chew</i>
pand-ō	-ere	pand-ī	pass-um	<i>spread open</i>
prehend-ō	-ere	prehend-ī	prehens-um	<i>seize</i>
scand-ō	-ere	scand-ī	scans-um	<i>climb</i>
Comp. as ascend-ō	-ere	ascend-ī	ascens-um	<i>climb up</i>
sid-ō	-ere	sid-ī	---	<i>settle down</i>
Comp. as consid-ō	-ere	consid-ī	consess-um	<i>settle down</i>
vell-ō	-ere	vell-ī	vuls-um	<i>pluck</i>
verr-ō	-ere	verr-ī	vers-um	<i>sweep</i>
vert-ō	-ere	vert-ī	vers-um	<i>turn</i>
bib-ō	-ere	bib-ī	---	<i>drink</i>
excūd-ō	-ere	excūd-ī	excūs-um	<i>hammer out</i>
strid-ō	-ere	strid-ī	---	<i>creak</i>
vīs-ō	-ere	vīs-ī	---	<i>visit</i>

In the following the perfect base is identical with the verbal stem :—

find-ō	-ere	fid-ī	fiss-um	<i>cleave</i>
scind-ō	-ere	scid-ī	sciss-um	<i>rend</i>
percell-ō	-ere	percul-ī	perculs-um	<i>overturn</i>

§ 325. THIRD CONJUGATION, WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication.

par-iō	-ere	peper-ī	part-um	<i>produce</i>
Compounds (4th conj.) : comper-iō and reper-iō (§ 326, F.)				

B.—Perfect formed by vowel-lengthening.

Present Indic.	Inf.	Perfect.	Supine.	
cap-iō	-ere	cēp-i	capt-um	<i>take</i>
Comp. as accip-iō	-ere	accēp-i	accept-um	<i>receive</i>
fac-iō (§§ 259, 332)	-ere	fēc-i	fact-um	<i>make, do</i>
Comp. (§ 259) as satisfac-iō	-ere	satisfēc-i	satisfact-um	
„ with preps. as affic-iō	-ere	affēc-i	affect-um	<i>affect</i>
fug-iō	-ere	fūg-i	fugit-um	<i>flee</i>
iac-iō	-ere	iēc-i	iact-um	<i>throw</i>
Comp. as abic-iō *	-ere	abiēc-i	abieci-um	<i>throw away</i>
fod-iō	-ere	fōdi	foss-um	<i>dig</i>

C.—Perfect formed by S.

allic-iō	-ere	allex-i	allect-um	<i>attract</i>
illic-iō	-ere	illex-i	illect-um	<i>entice</i>
pellic-iō	-ere	pellex-i	pellect-um	<i>entice</i>
spec-iō { (in old Lat. only) }	-ere	spex-i	—	<i>look</i>
Comp. as aspic-iō	-ere	aspex-i	aspect-um	<i>look at</i>
quat-iō	-ere	—	quass-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>
Comp. as concut-iō	-ere	concuss-i	concuss-um	<i>shake, agitate</i>

D.—Perfect formed by V preceded by long vowel (I).

cup-iō	-ere	cupiv-i	cupit-um	<i>desire</i>
sap-iō	-ere	sapiv-i	—	<i>have taste, know</i>

E.—Perfect formed by U.

ēlic-iō	-ere	ēlicu-i	ēlicit-um	<i>lure forth</i>
rap-iō	-ere	rapu-i	rapt-um	<i>seize</i>
Comp. as abrip-iō	-ere	abripu-i	abrept-um	<i>carry off</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

coep-iō { (pres. not classical) }	-ere	coep-i (§ 271)	coept-um	<i>begin</i>
---	------	-----------------------	-----------------	--------------

* In compounds of **iaciō** the consonantal **i** is omitted in tenses formed from the present base, but the syllable of the prefix preceding the **i** is counted long (§ 4) just as if the consonantal **i** were written.

§ 326.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

A.—Perfect formed by reduplication: *none*.

B.—Perfect formed by vowel lengthening.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	Supine.	
ven-iō	-ire	vēn-ī	vent-um	<i>come</i>

C.—Perfect formed by **S**.

farc-iō	-ire	fars-ī	fart-um	<i>stuff</i>
Comp. as referc-iō	-ire	refers-ī	refert-um	<i>stuff</i>
fulc-iō	-ire	fuls-ī	fult-um	<i>prop</i>
haur-iō	-ire	haus-ī	haust-um	<i>drain</i>
saep-iō	-ire	saeps-ī	saept-um	<i>fence in</i>
sanc-iō	-ire	sanx-ī	{ sanct-um or sancit-um }	<i>ratify</i>
sarc-iō	-ire	sars-ī	sart-um	<i>patch</i>
vinc-iō	-ire	vinx-ī	vinct-um	<i>bind</i>
sent-iō	-ire	sens-ī	sens-um	<i>feel</i>

D.—Perfect formed by **V** preceded by long vowel (I).

This is the way in which the perfect base of **audiō** and of other verbs of the fourth conjugation not included in this list is formed. The supine is irregular in—

sepel-iō	-ire	sepeliv-ī	sepult-um	<i>bury</i>
-----------------	------	------------------	------------------	-------------

E.—Perfect formed by **U**.

amic-iō	-ire	{ amicu-ī amix-ī }	amict-um	<i>clothe</i>
aper-iō	-ire	aperu-ī	apert-um	<i>uncover, open</i>
oper-iō	-ire	operu-ī	opert-um	<i>cover</i>
sal-iō	-ire	salu-ī	salt-um	<i>leap</i>
Comp. as dēsil-iō	-ire	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	<i>leap down</i>

F.—Perfect base identical with present base.

comper-iō	-ire	comper-ī	compert-um	<i>ascertain</i>
reper-iō	-ire	repper-ī	repert-um	<i>find</i>

DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 327. FIRST CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **hortor** (§ 148).

§ 328. SECOND CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **vereor** (§ 149), except—

Present Indic.	Infín.	Perfect.	
r-eor	- ērī	rat-us sum	<i>think</i>
fat-eor	- ērī	fass-us sum	<i>acknowledge</i>
Compounds as			
confit-eor	- ērī	confess-us sum	<i>confess</i>
aud-eō (§ 241)	- ēre	aus-us sum	<i>dare</i>
gaud-eō (§ 241)	- ēre	gāvis-us sum	<i>rejoice</i>

§ 329. THIRD CONJUGATION.

fru-or (§ 333)	- ī	fruct-us sum	<i>enjoy oneself</i>
fung-or	- ī	funct-us sum	<i>busy oneself</i>
loqu-or	- ī	locūt-us sum	<i>speak</i>
quer-or	- ī	quest-us sum	<i>complain</i>
sequ-or	- ī	secūt-us sum	<i>follow</i>
amplect-or	- ī	amplex-us sum	<i>embrace</i>
complect-or	- ī	complex-us sum	<i>embrace</i>
lāb-or	- ī	laps-us sum	<i>slide</i>
nīt-or	- ī	{ nīs-us sum, I endeavoured nīx-us sum, I leaned }	<i>endeavour, lean</i>
ūt-or	- ī	fīs-us sum	<i>make use</i>
fid-ō (§ 241)	- ere	fīs-us sum	<i>trust</i>

The present base of the following is inceptive (§ 321) in form :—

apisc-or	- ī	apt-us sum	<i>obtain</i>
Comp. : adipisc-or	- ī	adept-us sum	<i>obtain</i>
comminisc-or	- ī	comment-us sum	<i>devise</i>
expergisc-or	- ī	experrect-us sum	<i>awake oneself</i>
īrasc-or	- ī	īrāt-us sum	<i>get angry</i>
nancisc-or	- ī	nact-us sum	<i>obtain</i>
nasc-or	- ī	nāt-us sum	<i>be born</i>
oblivisc-or	- ī	oblīt-us sum	<i>forget</i>
pacisc-or	- ī	pact-us sum	<i>bargain</i>
proficisc-or	- ī	profect-us sum	<i>set out</i>
ulcisc-or	- ī	ult-us sum	<i>take vengeance</i>
			<i>on, avenge</i>
dēfetisc-or	- ī	dēfess-us sum	<i>grow weary</i>

330. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH THE SHORT-I FORMS OF THE FOURTH.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Perfect.	
mor-ior (§ 333)	-ī	mortu-us sum	<i>die</i>
grad-ior	-ī	gress-us sum	<i>step</i>
Compounds as			
aggred-ior	-ī	aggress-us sum	<i>attack</i>
pat-ior	-ī	pass-us sum	<i>suffer</i>
Comp. : perpet-ior	-ī	perpass-us sum	<i>endure</i>

331. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All form their supine base like **partior** (§ 151), except-

exper-ior	-īrī	expert-us sum	<i>try</i>
opper-ior	-īrī	{ oppert-us opperit-us } sum	<i>wait</i>
or-ior (§§ 318, 333)	-īrī	ort-us sum	<i>rise</i>
assent-ior	-īrī	assens-us sum	<i>agree</i>
mēt-ior	-īrī	mens-us sum	<i>measure</i>
ord-ior	-īrī	ors-us sum	<i>begin</i>

IRREGULARITIES.

332. IMPERATIVE PRESENT WITHOUT FINAL VOWEL.

In the second person singular of the present imperative active, the three following verbs—**dīcō**, *say* ; **dūcō**, *lead* ; **faciō**, *make, do*—have respectively **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, the final -e being dropped. This applies to the compounds of **dīcō** and **dūcō**, and to compounds of **faciō** which retain **a** in the present base ; other compounds are regular, *e.g.* **afficiō**, *affect*, has imperative **affice**.

333. FUTURE PARTICIPLES NOT FORMED FROM SUPINE BASES.

Present Indic.	Infin.	Supine.	Future Participle.	
iuv-ō	-āre	iūt-um	iuvātūr-us	<i>delight</i>
son-ō	-āre	sonit-um	sonātūr-us	<i>sound</i>
		Perf. Part.		
fru-or	-ī	fruct-us	fruitūr-us	<i>enjoy oneself</i>
mor-ior	-ī	mortu-us	moritūr-us	<i>die</i>
or-ior	-īrī	ort-us	oritūr-us	<i>rise</i>

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the sections.

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

- Ablative case, 23 ; instrumental, 24 ; of place where, 27, 201, 202 ; of agent, 45 ; of time when, 64 ; instead of *quam*, 76 ; of description, 109 ; of manner, 112 ; absolute, 209-212 ; of price, 296.
- Accusative case, 19 ; of time throughout which, 80 ; double, 73, 188 ; one retained with pass. verb, 225 ; of extent of space, 297.
- Adjectives, of first class, 36 ; substantival use of, 46 ; of second class, 67-71 ; comparative, declension of, 70, 71 ; irregular, 81, 82 ; comparison of, 84, 85, 87-92 : derived from adverbs, comparison of, 95 ; specifying certain parts, 96 ; possessive, 102-104.
- Adverbs, 272-279 ; comparison of, 281-284.
- Alphabet, 2.
- Antecedent, 117.
- Apodosis, 182.
- Article, translation of the, 13, *Obs.*
- Base of substantives of first declension, 21 ; second declension, 32 ; third declension, 51, 54 ; of verbs, present, 8, 134, 135 ; perfect, 134-136 ; supine, 134-136.
- Cases, *see* Nominative, etc.
- Causal clauses, 226, 228, 229.
- Comparative adjectives, declension of, 70, 71.
- Comparative degree, 84, 85 ; expressed by *magis*, 89.
- Comparison of adjectives, 84, 85, 87-92 ; of adverbs, 281-284.
- Complement of copulative verbs, 265.
- Compound verbs, 319.
- Concessive clauses, 231-234.
- Conditional sentences, 182-184, 187, 189, 190, 192.
- Conjugations, *see* Verbs.
- Conjunctions, 307-309.
- Consecutive clauses, 203.
- Dative case, 22 ; with adjectives, 40 ; with words denoting nearness or approach, 105 ; with compounds of *sum*, 249 ; predicative, 298.
- Definite article, 13, *Obs.*
- Degrees of comparison, 84, 85.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 106-108, 110-111.
- Dependent questions, 155-163.
- Dependent statements, 167-174.
- Deponent verbs, 148-151, 236-240 ; perfect participles of, 245.
- Diphthongs, 5.
- Double questions, 206 ; dependent, 207.
- Doubt, expressions of, 208.

- Exhortations and commands, subjunctive in, 130; negative, 131; imperative in, 132, 133.
- Fearing, verbs of, 235.
- Final clauses, 198.
- Future, rendered by English present, 187, 221.
- Future-perfect, rendered by English present, 187, 221.
- Gender, of first declension, 14; of second declension, 30; of third declension, 50; of fourth declension, 78; of fifth declension, 79.
- Genitive case, 20; possessive, 20; with adjectives, 77; partitive, 97; with certain verbs, 286; of value, 294; of price, 296; of quality, 302.
- Gerund, 175-177.
- Gerundive, 213-217; gerundive construction, 214-217.
- Hindering, verbs of, 247.
- Hoping, verbs of, 194.
- Imparissyllabic substantives, 52.
- Imperative, 133; present without final vowel, 332.
- Impersonal use of passive of intransitive verbs, 227.
- Impersonal verbs, 266-270.
- Inceptive verbs, 321, footnote.
- Indefinite article, 13, *Obs.*
- Indefinite pronouns, 119-128.
- Indicative in conditional sentences, 184, 187; in temporal clauses, 220, 223, *N.*, 224, 250-252, 261, 264; causal, 226; concessive, 232, 233.
- Infinitive, 165, 166; present expressed in English by present-perfect, 185, 269; future, 243.
- Interrogative pronouns, 118.
- Locative case, 55.
- Moods, *see* Indicative, etc.
- Nominative case, 17.
- Number, 15.
- Numerals, 287-295.
- "Of" in "the city of," "the town of," etc., 199.
- Order of words, p. 160, II. (6); verb, 19, *N.*; genitive, 20, *N.*; indirect object, 22, *N.*; ablative, 24, *N.*; adverb, 28; adjective, 38, *N.*
- Parissyllabic substantives, 52.
- Participle, perfect passive, 48; future, 164, 180; present, 178, 179; irregular future, 333.
- Perfect indicative, meaning of, 160, *Obs.*
- Person, second, 9.
- Personal pronouns, 97-101.
- Place whither, 196; whence, 197; where, 201, 202.
- Predicate, completion of the, 26.
- Prepositions, 299-301, 303-306.
- Preventing, verbs of, 247.
- Price, genitive and ablative of, 296.
- Principal parts of verbs, 137, 321-331.
- Promising, verbs of, 243.
- Pronouns, personal, 97-101; reflexive, 99; demonstrative, 106-108, 110, 111; relative, 113-117; interrogative, 118; indefinite, 119-128.
- Pronunciation, 5.
- Protasis, 182.
- Purpose (*see also* Final Clauses), 262.
- Quality, genitive of, 302.
- Quantity, of vowels, 3, 5, *Obs.*; of syllables, 4, 5, *Obs.*
- Questions, direct, 152-154; dependent, 155-164; double, 206; dependent double, 207, 208.
- Reduplication, 322, footnote.
- Reflexive pronouns, 99.
- Relative pronouns, 113-117; agreement of, 117.
- Semi-deponent verbs, 241.
- Sequence of tenses, 161.
- Shorter forms of perfect tenses, 315.
- Subject, composite, 101.

- Subjunctive, in wishes, 130 ; in exhortations and commands, 131 ; in conditional sentences, 189, 190, 192 ; in final clauses, 198 ; in consecutive clauses, 203 ; after *quin*, 208 ; in temporal clauses, 223 ; causal, 228, 229 ; in concessive clauses, 234 ; after *dum*, 252 ; deliberative or dubitative, 263 ; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 264.
- Substantives, of first declension, 13 ; of second declension, 30-32 ; of third declension, 49-66 ; of fourth declension, 78 ; of fifth declension, 79.
- Superlative degree, 84, 85 ; in *-rimus*, 87 ; expressed by *maxime*, 89.
- Supine, accusative, 262.
- Temporal clauses, 219-222, 250-252, 261, 264.
- Town whither, 196 ; whence, 197 ; where, 55.
- Value, genitive of, 294.
- Verbs, principal parts of, 137, 321-331 ; regular conjugations : active, 139-142 ; passive, 143-146 ; *cipio*, 147 ; deponent, 148-151, 236-240 ; semi-deponent, 241 ; impersonal, 266-270 ; defective, 271 ; compound, 319 ; inceptive, 321, footnote.
- Vocative case, 18.
- Wishes, expression of, 130, 131.

II.—LATIN WORDS.

- A*, ab, 45, *Obs.* 1.
- Abutor*, with abl., 244.
- Acer*, 69.
- Acus*, 78, *Obs.*
- Aio*, 271.
- Aliquis*, 121, 127, 128.
- Alius*, 81.
- Alter*, 81.
- Ambo*, 82.
- Amo*, 139, 143.
- Animal*, 61.
- Anser*, 62.
- Antiquus*, compared, 89.
- Arcus*, 78, *Obs.*
- Artus*, 78, *Obs.*
- Asper*, 41.
- Audio*, 142, 146.
- Aut*, 253.
- Avis*, 58, N.
- Bonus*, 36 ; compared, 92.
- Bos*, 312.
- Canis*, 65.
- Cipio*, 147.
- Caput*, 63.
- Causa*, with genitive of gerund, 177 ; with gerundive construction, 217.
- Civis*, 58, N.
- Clavis*, 58.
- Conor*, with infinitive, 242.
- Cor*, 63.
- Cubile*, 61.
- Cum* (conjunction), 222, 223, 229, 234.
- Cum* (preposition), with pronouns, 305.
- Dens*, 59.
- Deus*, 311.
- Dic*, 332.
- Difficilis*, superlative of, 90.
- Dignor*, with ablative, 244.
- Dignus*, with ablative, 74.
- dis-*, 320.
- Dissimilis*, superlative of, 90 ; with genitive or dative, 93.
- Dives*, compared, 92.
- Do*, 260.
- Dominus*, 30.
- Domum*, 196.
- Domus*, 313.
- Duc*, 332.
- Dum*, 250-252.
- Duo*, 82.
- Egenus*, compared, 88.
- Ego*, 97.
- Eo*, 257 ; compounds of, 258.
- Etiamsi*, 234.
- Etsi*, 232, 234.
- Fac*, 332.
- Facilis*, superlative of, 90.
- Fari*, 271.
- Felix*, 69.
- fer*, adjectives in, 41.

- Fero*, 255 ; compounds of, 256.
Filius, 310.
Fio, 259 ; compounds of, 260.
Flos, 62.
Forem in pluperfect subjunctive, 316.
Frater, 62.
Frugi, compared, 91.
Fruor, with ablative, 244.
Fui with perfect participle passive, 317.
Fungor, with ablative, 244.
Gener, 31.
Genu, 78.
-ger, adjectives in, 41.
Gracilis, superlative of, 90.
Gradus, 78.
Gratia, with genitive of gerund, 177 ; with gerundive construction, 217.
Hic, 106, 107.
Hortor, 148.
Hostis, 57.
Humilis, superlative of, 90.
I, consonant and vowel, 5, N. 2.
-i, ablative singular ending in, 58.
Idem, 110, N., III.
Ignis, 58, N.
Ille, 106, 107.
-im, accusative singular ending in, 58.
Imber, 60.
Indignus, with ablative, 74.
Inquam, 271.
Interest, 270.
Ipse, 110, III.
Ipsissimus, 110, N.
Is, 110, III.
-is, accusative plural ending in, 57, *Obs.*
Iste, 106, 107.
Iubeo, with infinitive, 242.
Iunior, 94.
Ius iurandum, 314.
Iuvenis, 65.
Lac, 63.
Lacus, 78, *Obs.*
Lacer, 41.
Leo, 62.
Lex, 62.
Liber, 41.
Liberi, 31.
Longior, 71.
Loquor, 150.
Magister, 30.
Magnus, compared, 92.
Malo, 254.
Malus, compared, 92.
Mare, 61.
Mas, 56.
Mater, 62.
Messis, 58.
Meus, 102, 103.
Miles, 62.
Milia, declined, 291.
Moneo, 140, 144.
Multus, compared, 92.
Navis, 58.
Ne (final), 198 ; with verbs of fearing, 235.
Ne-, 320.
-ne, 153, 154, 158.
Nequam, compared, 91.
Neuter, 81.
Niger, 36.
Nisi, 183.
Nix, 56.
Noli, in negative exhortations and commands, 132.
Nolo, 254.
Nomen, 63.
Nonne, 153, 158.
Nos, 97.
Noster, 102.
Nubes, 57.
Nullus, 81.
Num, 153, 158.
Ocio, 94.
Opus est, 230.
Orior, 318.
Os, 66.
Partior, 151.
Parvus, compared, 92.
Pater, 62.
Pauper, 71.
Pinguis, compared, 89.
Plus, 92, N.
Porta, 13.
Possum, 246.
Postquam, 261.
Potior, 318 ; with ablative, 244.
Princeps, 62.
Providus, compared, 88.
Prudens, 69.
Puer, 30.
Puppis, 58.
Quam, 75.
Quamquam, 233.
Quamvis, 234.
Quercus, 78, *Obs.*
Qui (indefinite), 119.
Qui (interrogative), 118.
Qui (relative), 113, 114.
Quia, 226, 228, 229.
Quicumque, 113, 115.
Quidam, 121, 123, 128.
Quilibet, 120, 124.
Quin, 208, 247.
Quis (indefinite), 119, 128.
Quis (interrogative), 118.
Quisnam, 118.

- Quisquam*, 122, 125, 128.
Quisque, 120, 126, 128.
Quisquis, 113, 116.
Quivis, 102, 124.
Quod, 226, 228.
Quominus, 247.
Quoniam, 226, 228.
Quum, see *Cum* (conjunction).
Re-, red-, 320.
Refert, 270.
Regnum, 30.
Rego, 141, 145.
Res, 79, *Obs.* 1.
Res publica, 314.
Rete, 61.
Rus, 196.
s, becomes *r*, 62, 63.
Satis, compared, 91.
Se, sese, 99; in dependent statement or dependent question, 193.
Senex, 65.
Senior, 94.
Si, 182; *si . . . non*, 183.
Similis, superlative of, 90; with genitive or dative, 93.
Sitis, 58, *N.*
Socer, 31.
Solus, 81.
Sum, 138; compounds of, 248, 249.
Suus, 102, 104; in dependent statement or dependent question, 193.
Tener, 36.
Totus, 81.
Tres, 82.
Tristis, 69.
Tu, 97.
Turris, 58.
Tussis, 58, *N.*
Tuus, 102.
Ubi, temporal, 224.
-ubus, dat. and abl. pl., 78, *Obs.*
Ullus, 81.
Unus, 81.
Ut, 198; in consecutive clauses, 203; temporal, 224; with verbs of fearing, 235.
Ut . . . non, in consecutive clauses, 203.
Uter, 81; compounds of, 81, *N.* 2.
Utinam, 130.
Utor, with abl., 244.
Vates, 65.
Vel, 253.
Vereor, 149.
Vescor, with ablative, 244.
Vester, 102.
Veto, with infinitive, 242.
Vetus, compared, 88.
Vir, 30.
Vis, 56.
Volo, 254.
Vos, 97.
x, for *cs* or *gs*, 62, *Obs.*

REGULAR VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

FROM THE PRESENT BASE.

				{ <i>ăm-ō, -ās, -ăt; -ămūs, -ătis, -ant</i> <i>môn-ēō, -ēs, -ēt; -ēmūs, -ētis, -ent</i> <i>rég-ō, -is, -it; -imūs, -itis, -unt</i> <i>aud-īō, -is, -it; -imūs, -itis, -iunt</i>	
	Imperf. Pres. Indic.			{ <i>ăm-ă</i> <i>môn-ē</i> <i>rég-ē</i> <i>aud-īē</i>	{ <i>-bam, -bās, -băt</i> <i>-bămūs, -bătis, -bant</i>
	Future.			{ <i>ăm-ă</i> <i>môn-ē</i> <i>rég</i> <i>aud-ī</i>	{ <i>-bō, -bīs, -bīt</i> <i>-bīmūs, -bītis, -bunt</i> <i>-am, -ēs, -ēt</i> <i>-ēmūs, -ētis, -ent</i>
	Imperf. Pres. Subj.			{ <i>ăm-em, -ēs, -ēt; -ēmūs, -ētis, -ent</i> <i>môn-ē</i> <i>rég</i> <i>aud-ī</i>	{ <i>-am, -ās, -ăt</i> <i>-ămūs, -ătis, -ant</i>
	Imperf.			{ <i>ăm-ă</i> <i>môn-ē</i> <i>rég-ē</i> <i>aud-ī</i>	{ <i>-rem, -rēs, -rēt</i> <i>-rēmūs, -rētis, -rent</i>
Imperat.				{ <i>ăm-ă, -ătē; -ătō, -ătôtē, -antō</i> <i>môn-ē, -ētē; -ētō, -ētôtē, -entō</i> <i>rég-ē, -itē; -ītō, -ītôtē, -untō</i> <i>aud-ī, -itē; -itō, -itôtē, -iuntō</i>	
INFIN., etc.		Pres. Part.	Pres. Inf.	Gerund.	
		{ <i>ăm</i> <i>môn</i> <i>rég</i> <i>aud</i>	{ <i>-ans</i> <i>-ens</i> <i>-ens</i> <i>-iens</i>	{ <i>-ărē</i> <i>-erē</i> <i>-erē</i> <i>-irē</i>	{ <i>-andum</i> <i>-endum</i> <i>-endum</i> <i>-iendum</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

FROM THE PRESENT BASE.

-ör, -äris, -ätür; -ämür, -ämini, -antür	}	Imperf.
-öör, -öris, -ötür; -öümür, -öimini, -entür		
-ör, -öris, -itür; -imür, -imini, -untür		
-löör, -lris, -litür; -lmür, -lmini, -yuntür		
-bär, -bäris (-bärö), -bätür	}	Imperf.
-bämür, -bämini, -bantür		
-bör, -böris (-bөрө), -bitür	}	Future.
-bimür, -bimini, -buntür		
-är, -öris (-өрө), -ötür		
-ömür, -ömini, -entür		
-ör, -öris (-өрө), -ötür; -ömür, -ömini, -entür	}	Pres.
-är, -äris (-ärö), -ätür		
-ämür, -ämini, -antür		
-rör, -röris (-rөрө), -retür	}	Imperf.
-römür, -römini, -rentür		
-ärö, -ämini; -ätör, -antör	}	Imperat.
-өрө, -ömini; -ötör, -entör		
-өрө, -imini; -itör, -untör		
-irö, -imini; -itör, -yuntör		
Gerundive.	Pres. Inf.	
-andüs	-äri	}
-endüs	-öri	
-endüs	-i	
-yendüs	-iri	
		Imprf., etc.

FROM THE PERFECT BASE.

	-i, -isti, -it	IND.
	-īmūs, -istis, -erunt (-ērē)	Perf.
ām-āv	-ēram, -ērās, -ērāt	Plpf.
	-ērāmūs, -ērātis, -ērant	
mōn-ū	-ērō, -ēris, -ērīt	Fut.
	-ērīmūs, -ērītis, -ērint	Perf.
rex	-ērim, -ēris, -ērīt	SUBJ.
	-ērīmūs, -ērītis, -ērint	Perf.
aud-iv	-issem, -isses, -issēt	Plpf.
	-issēmūs, -issētis, -issent	
	-issē	Perf. INF.

FROM THE SUPINE BASE.

ām-āt	} {	-ārūs esse	Fut. INF.
mōn-it		-ārūs	Fut. PARTIC.
aud-it		-um. -ū	SUPINE.

FROM THE SUPINE BASE.

	-ūs sum, ēs, est	} IND. Perf.
	-ī sūmūs, estis, sunt	
	-ūs eram, ēras, ērāt	} Plpf.
ām-āt	-ī ērāmūs, ērātis, ērant	
mōn-īt	-ūs erō, ēris, ērit	} Fut.- Perf.
	-ī ērimūs, ēritis, ērunt	
rect	-ūs sim, sis, sūt	} SUBJ. Perf.
	-ī simūs, sitis, sint	
aud-īt	-ūs ess-ēm -ēs, -ēt	} Plpf.
	-ī ess-ēmūs, -ētis, -ent	
	-ūs (essē) Perf.	} PART.&INF
	-um iri Fut. INF	

लाल बहादुर शास्त्री राष्ट्रीय प्रशासन अकादमी

L.B.S. National Academy of Administration

मसूरी

MUSSOORIE

पुस्तकालय

LIBRARY

110063

अवाप्ति संख्या

Accession No.

~~19291~~

वर्ग संख्या

Class No.

470.045

पुस्तक संख्या

Book No.

May 2nd ed